MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 49

Ortnit and Wolfdietrich

Ortnit · Wolfdietrich

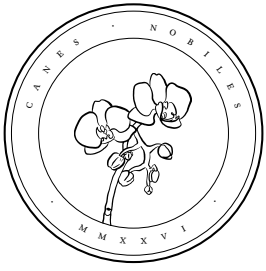
Ortnit and Wolfdietrich

The Dragon's Prey and His Avenger

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

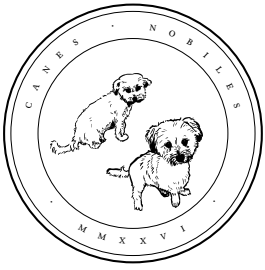


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 49 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Ortnit und die Wolfdietriche,
herausgegeben von Arthur Amelung und Oskar Jänicke,
Deutsches Heldenbuch III (Berlin: Weidmann, 1871)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The strophes are numbered as Amelung numbers them, and the number stands in the outer margin; the heads are his aventiure numerals. Wolfdietrich is printed to strophe 606, where its text breaks off, without the close Amelung adds from the Dresden Heldenbuch.

CONTENTS

ORTNIT

I · The Council at Garda 9
II · The Dwarf Under the Linden 29
III · The Voyage to Suders 71
IV · The Taking of Suders 93
V · The Maid of Muntabur 110
VI · The Dragon's Eggs 150
VII · Ortnit's Death 163
VIII · The Widow of Garda 178

WOLFDIETRICH

I · The Hermit's Child 187
II · The Wolf's Child 197
III · Among the Wolves 205
IV · Berchtung Accused 223
V · The Letter Read 235
VI · Saben Spared 251
VII · The Queen Cast Out 262
VIII · The Battle with the Brothers 279
IX · The Siege of Lilienporte 296
X · Wolfdietrich Rides Out 305
XI · Rough Else 320
XII · The Robbers in the Wood 337
XIII · Liebgart's Lament 343
XIV · The Countess in the Wood 352
XV · The Horse's Guard 360
XVI · The Worm's Den 365

ANONYMOUS

Ortnit

Ortnit I

I · THE COUNCIL AT GARDA

King Ortnit of Lombardy, mighty but unmarried, is urged by his council to take a wife and asks where he may find one fit for him. His uncle King Ilias of Russia names the daughter of the heathen King Machorel of Muntabur, whose wooers all lose their heads. Ortnit vows to win her, and his lords pledge ships and men: Helmnot of Tuscany, Gerwart of Troy, and the heathen Zacharis of Sicily, who will fit out the keels at Messina. Ortnit empties his treasure tower in gifts, and the army is to sail in May.

Ez wart ein buoch funden ze Suders in der stat, 1
There was a book found at Suders in the city,

daz het geschrift wunder, dar an lac manic blat.
that had of-writing wonders, there on lay many-a leaf.

die heiden durch ir erge die heten daz begraben.
the heathens through their malice they had it buried.

nu sul wir von dem buoche guote kurzwîle haben.
now shall we from the book good pastime have.

Swer in freuden welle und in kurzwîle wesen, 2
Whoever in joys would and in pastime be,

der lâze im von dem buoche singen unde lesen
he let to-himself from the book sing and read

von einem künicrîche, daz hât Lamparten namen.
of a kingdom, that has Lombardy name.

daz endarf vor allen krônen sich des namen niht enschamen.
that need before all crowns itself of-the name not be-ashamed.

3 Ez wuohs in Lamparten ein gewalteger künic rîch,
There grew in Lombardy a mighty king rich,

dem was bî den zîten dehein künec gelîch
to-him was by the times no king like

über elliu lant ze Walhen. daz bezeichente daz,
over all lands in Italy. that betokened that,

die wîle und daz er lebte daz er gewalticlîchen saz.
the while and that he lived that he mightily sat.

4 Si muosten alle fürhten den künec und ouch sîn her.
They must all fear the king and also his host.

diu lant het er betwungen von dem birge unz an daz mer:
the lands had he subdued from the mountains until to the sea:

den zins si im muosten bringen. die bî im sâzen dô,
the tribute they to-him must bring. who by him sat then,

die muosten alle fürhten sîn gebot und ouch sîn drô.
they must all fear his command and also his threat.

5 Durch küniclîche wirde gap man im den prîs.
For kingly worth gave one to-him the prize.

geheizen was er Ortnît, ze sturme was er wîs.
called was he Ortnit, in assault was he wise.

Brissen unde Berne was im undertân.
Brescia and Verona was to-him subject.

im diente ûf Garte tegelich zwên und sibenzic dienstman.
to-him served on Garda daily two and seventy ministerials.

6 Nâch rehter küniges wirde in sîner jugende er ranc.
After right king's worth in his youth he strove.

im hulfen ouch die sîne, daz er diu lant betwanc.
to-him helped also the his-own, that he the lands subdued.

zwelf manne sterke het der wundernküene man.
twelve men's strength had the wondrous-bold man.

im diente mit gewalte Rôme unde Laterân.
to-him served with power Rome and Lateran.

Alsô der degen edele gebanket het den lîp, 7
When the thane noble entertained had the body,

dô rieten im die sîne, daz er im næme ein wîp,
then advised to-him the his-own, that he for-himself took a woman,

diu im ze habene zæme und frouwe möhte sîn
who to-him to have befitted and lady might be

und ouch mit êren hieze über Lamparten ein künigîn.
and also with honors be-called over Lombardy a queen.

Dô sprach der künic edele 'nu râtet, mâge unt man, 8
Then spoke the king noble 'now counsel, kinsmen and men,

als ichs in mînem lande aller tiuriste hân,
as I-them in my land all dearest have,

wâ ich ein frouwen vinde, diu mir genôzsam sî,
where I a lady find, who to-me equal be,

daz ich von ir geslehte der schame belîbe frî?'
that I from her lineage of-the shame remain free?'

Dô sâzens an dem râte wol ze fünf tagen 9
Then sat-they at the counsel well to five days

und enkunden für die wârheit dem künege niht gesagen,
and could for the truth to-the king not say,

wâ si ein frouwen funden, dier mit êren möhte nemen,
where they a lady found, whom-he with honors might take,

daz si sich ir râtes hernâch niht dorften schemen.
that they themselves of-their counsel hereafter not needed be-ashamed.

10 Dô sprach der margrâve Helmnôt von Tuscân
Then spoke the margrave Helmnot of Tuscany

‘swaz künege uns sint gesezzen, die sint dir undertân.
‘whatever kings us are settled, they are to-thee subject.

wir kunnen ninder vinden dishalp mers übr elliu lant,
we can nowhere find this-side of-the-sea over all lands,

dâ ist kein künec sô rîche, er müeze dienen dîner hant’.
there is no king so rich, he must serve thy hand’.

11 Dô sprach von den Riuzen der künic Ŷljas,
Then spoke of the Russians the king Ilias,

wan er dâ nâch Ortnîden der tiweriste was
for he there after Ortnit the dearest was

‘ich weiz eine frouwen schœne und wol geborn,
‘I know a lady fair and well born,

der gebat nie man, er hiete daz houbet sîn verlorn.
whom wooed never man, he had the head his lost.

12 Dô sprach der künic Ortnît ‘nu sage mir fürbaz,
Then spoke the king Ortnit ‘now tell me further,

Ŷljas lieber œheim, wâ von mac wesen daz?
Ilias dear uncle, where from may be that?

wer ist ir geslehte? wer mac diu frouwe sîn?
what is her lineage? who may the lady be?

mac si mit êren heizen über Lamparten künigîn?’
may she with honors be-called over Lombardy queen?’

13 ‘Ir vater wil ich dir nennen, der heizet Machorel,
‘Her father will I to-thee name, he is-called Machorel,

geborn von Muntabûre: sîn lîp hât môren vel.
born of Muntabur: his body has Moor’s skin.

im dienet heiden mêre, dan dir kristenheit.
to-him serve heathens more, than to-thee Christendom.

ze Jerusalêm der hêrre die küneges krône treit.
at Jerusalem the lord the king's crown wears.

Suders in Sürîe daz ist sîn houbetstat. 14
Suders in Syria that is his capital.

swer in botscheften der frouwen ie gebat,
whoever in messages the lady ever wooed,

der muoste den lîp verliesen durch die künigîn.
he must the life lose for the queen.

waz wil du mêr ze frâgen? si wirt nimmer dîn.
what wilt thou more to ask? she becomes never thine.

Si liuht ûz allen frouwen, als daz schœne golt 15
She shines out-of all ladies, as the fair gold

tuot neben krankem blîe: daz du gelouben solt.
does beside weak lead: that thou believe shalt.

si liuht ûz allen wîben reht als diu rôse tuot.
she shines out-of all women right as the rose does.

ez wart nie kint sô schœne, man seit si sî ouch guot.'
there was never child so fair, one says she be also good.'

Dô sprach von Lamparten der künic Ortnît 16
Then spoke of Lombardy the king Ortnit

'nu bringet mich des inne, ob ir mir wæge sît.
'now bring me of-it aware, whether you to-me favorable be.

ich wil mich getrœsten des künicrîches mîn,
I will myself renounce the kingdom mine,

ich muoz den lîp verliesen, mir enwerd diu künigîn.'
I must the life lose, to-me unless-become the queen.'

17 Dô sprach der künec von Riuzen ‘nu sî ez gote gekleit,
Then spoke the king of Russia ‘now be it to-God lamented,

daz ich dir disiu mære hiute hân geseit,
that I to-thee these tidings today have said,

diu nâch dînem tôde dir ûf erstanden sint.
which after thy death to-thee up risen are.

ich widerriete ez gerne: du bist mîner swester kint.’
I would-dissuade it gladly: thou art my sister’s child.’

18 ‘Swer mir daz widerrætet, dem wirde ich nimmer holt.
‘Whoever to-me that dissuades, to-him become I never favorable.

ich hân geheien lange silber unde golt:
I have hoarded long silver and gold:

den hort wil ich nu bieten, ich gewinne ein kreftic her.
the treasure will I now offer, I win a strong host.

ez ergê mir swie got welle, ich muoz nâch ir hin über mer.’
it befall to-me as God will, I must after her thither over sea.’

19 ‘Kumst du ze Muntabûre, sô sich die zinnen an.
‘(If)-comest thou to Muntabur, so look the battlements at.

zwei und sibenzic houbet hât er gestecket dran
two and seventy heads has he stuck thereon

die er durch der frouwen willen hât boten abe geslagen.
which he for the lady’s sake has messengers off struck.

daz ich ir ie gedâhte, daz wil ich gote klagen!’
that I of-her ever thought, that will I to-God lament!’

20 Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘wie ist im sô liep sîn kint,
Then spoke the Lombard ‘how is to-him so dear his child,

daz mir sô grôze jâmer dâ von nu künftic sint?
that to-me so great sorrows there from now coming are?

er sol nâch sînem rehte geloublîchen tuon,
he shall according-to his right believably do,

gebe si einem manne: sô hât er tohter unde suon.'
(if)-gives her to-a man: so has he daughter and son.'

'Daz ist im wol gerâten, des hât er keinen muot, 21
'That is to-him well counseled, of-that has he no mind,

und wil dich des berihten war umbe ers niht entuot.
and will thee of-it inform where for he-it not does.

er hât im für gesetzet des er sich solde schemen:
he has to-himself before set of-which he himself should be-ashamed:

swenn im die muoter stirbet, sô wil er die tohter nemen.
whenever to-him the mother dies, so will he the daughter take.

Er sæhe gerne tôten der frouwen muoter lîp, 22
He would-see gladly dead the lady's mother's body,

durch daz sîn schœne tohter wurd sîn liebez wîp.'
because that his fair daughter became his dear woman.'

'daz sol im got verbieten' sprach der künec Ortnît.
'that shall to-him God forbid' spoke the king Ortnit.

'ich geruowe nimmer, unz si mir nâhen lît.'
'I rest never, until she to-me near lies.'

Dô sprach aber von Riuzen der künic Ŷljas 23
Then spoke again of Russia the king Ilias

'sît du dîn gemüete dar an gewendet hâs,
'since thou thy heart there on turned hast,

vil manegem Lamparten wirt diu reise ein suontac,
very to-many-a Lombard becomes the journey a day-of-judgment,

iedoch wil ich dir helfen sô ich aller beste mac.'
yet will I thee help as I all best can.'

24 ‘Swer mir der reise hilfet, dem bin ich immer holt.
‘Whoever me in-the journey helps, to-him am I ever favorable.

im sî ouch mit geteilet mîn silber und mîn golt,
to-him be also with shared my silver and my gold,

lant unde bürge dar zuo liute unt guot.
land and castles there to people and goods.

ich wil im immer danken, swer ez williclîchen tuot.
I will to-him ever thank, whoever it willingly does.

25 Dem bin ich immer wæge die wîle unde ich lebe.
To-him am I ever favorable the while that I live.

daz mir got die sælde und daz gelücke gebe,
that to-me God the bliss and the fortune give,

daz ich den heiden irre sîner unreinekeit,
that I the heathen confound of-his uncleanness,

und ouch die meit schœne bring her in die kristenheit!
and also the maid fair bring hither into the Christendom!

26 Vil liebe schargenöze, wir müezen ûf den sê.
Very dear comrades, we must onto the sea.

got uns der sælden gunne, daz ez uns wol ergê.
God us of-the blisses grant, that it to-us well befall.

swelch kristenman erstirbet, dem wil ich geben trôst:
whatever Christian-man dies, to-him will I give comfort:

dem ist ouch immer mêre sîn reiniu sêle erlôst.
to-him is also ever more his pure soul redeemed.

27 Nu lât iuch niht verdriezen, vart williclîchen dar.
Now let you not grieve, go willingly thither.

wir müezen danne fliezen mit ritterlîcher schar.
we must then sail with knightly troop.

swer mir nu helfen welle, der bedenke sich enzît:
whoever me now help will, he consider himself in-time:

mit frœlîchem muote' sprach der künic Ortnît
with joyful spirit' spoke the king Ortnit

'Sul wir die heiden tœten, die ninder kristen sint.' 28
'Shall we the heathens kill, who nowhere Christians are.'

dô sprach Ŷljas von Riuzen 'du bist mîner swester kint.
then spoke Ilias of Russia 'thou art my sister's child.

von rehte sol ich wâgen bî dir lîp unt leben.
by right shall I venture by thee body and life.

ich wil dir fünf tûsent ritter und ouch mich selben geben.'
I will to-thee five thousand knights and also me self give.'

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'du hâst in kurzer frist 29
Then spoke the Lombard 'thou hast in short time

mir daz wol erzeiget, des du mir schuldic bist.
to-me that well shown, which thou to-me owing art.

getriuwer friunde hilfe diu ist vil wünniclîch,
faithful friends' help that is very delightful,

und sent mich got her widere, ich mêre dir dîn künicrîch.'
if sends me God hither back, I increase to-thee thy kingdom.'

Dô sprach ûf Garte der burcgrâve Engelwân 30
Then spoke on Garda the burgrave Engelwan

'du hâst ûf dirre bürge zwên und sibenzic man,
'thou hast on this castle two and seventy men,

den bistu zeinem vogete gesetzet und geborn,
to-them art-thou to-a protector appointed and born,

und klagent si daz sêre, solt du dâ werden vlorn'.
and lament they that sorely, (if)-shalt thou there become lost'.

31 Mit zorne sprach sîn bruoder der küene Helmnôt
With wrath spoke his brother the bold Helmnot

‘du enweist war umb du rîtest nâch frouwen in den tôt.
‘thou not-knowest where for thou ridest after ladies into the death.

du soltest wol billîche bî dînem lande sîn:
thou shouldst well rightly by thy land be:

eins rîchen fürsten tohter wær dir wol künigîn.’
a rich prince’s daughter were to-thee well queen.’

32 Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘du maht mirz niht erwern.
Then spoke the Lombard ‘thou mayst me-it not forbid.

fürhtest du des lîbes, sô solt du mir niht swern.
(if)-fearest thou for-the life, so shalt thou to-me not swear.

du hâst doch ie gehœret’ sprach der künec Ortnît
thou hast yet ever heard’ spoke the king Ortnit

‘daz biderbes mannes erbe in allen landen lît’.
‘that worthy man’s inheritance in all lands lies’.

33 Dô sprach der truhsæze, ir vater Hiutegêr,
Then spoke the steward, their father Hiuteger,

‘wir wizzen dînen ernest und irren dich niht mêr.
‘we know thy earnest and hinder thee not more.

dir gebent ûf dirre bürge zwên und sibenzic dienstman
to-thee give on this castle two and seventy ministerials

ieslîcher hundert ritter, wilt du sis niht erlân.’
each hundred knights, (if)-wilt thou them-of-it not release.’

Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘daz ist ein friundes rât. 34
Then spoke the Lombard ‘that is a friend’s counsel.

sît disiu burc ze Garte sô manegen ritter hât
since this castle at Garda so many-a knight has

(vor aller mîner hilfe wârns ie mîn êrster strît),
(before all my help were-they ever my first battle),

si suln der marke hüeten’ sprach der künic Ortnît.
they shall the march guard’ spoke the king Ortnit.

‘Fürsten, grâven, frîen und edele dienstman, 35
‘Princes, counts, freemen and noble ministerials,

swaz ich der âne Garte in mînem lande hân,
whatever I of-them except Garda in my land have,

die mich williclîchen dirre vart gewern,
who me willingly in-this journey grant,

wir suln uns ellenden: des mac ich niht enbern’.
we shall ourselves go-abroad: that may I not forgo’.

Dô sprach der margrâve Helmnôt von Tuscân 36
Then spoke the margrave Helmnot of Tuscany

‘sô nim von mir ze stiure fünf tûsent küener man:
‘so take from me as aid five thousand bold men:

die wil ich mit dir senten, hêrr, über den wilden sê.
them will I with thee send, lord, over the wild sea.

sol ich selbe mit dir fliezen, sô wirt ir lîhte mê.’
(if)-shall I self with thee sail, so becomes of-them perhaps more.’

‘Got lôn dir dîner gâbe’ sprach der künec Ortnît, 37
‘God reward thee for-thy gift’ spoke the king Ortnit,

‘du hâst mich gestiuret ûf lobelîchen strît.
‘thou hast me aided for praiseworthy battle.

du hâst mich wol getrœstet ungebeten und ungemant:
thou hast me well comforted unasked and unbidden:

ich bevilh dir ûf dîn triuwe beidiu liute unt lant.
I commend thee on thy faith both people and land.

38 Rîcher fürste reiner, dâst wol ze dir bewart.
Rich prince pure, that-is well with thee kept.

swenn ich von lande rite mit lieber hervart,
whenever I from land ride with dear army-journey,

Garte und al mîn êre sol dir bevolhen sîn.
Garda and all my honor shall to-thee commended be.

ich bevilh dir ouch mîn muoter, hêrre, ûf die triuwe dîn.'
I commend thee also my mother, lord, on the faith thine.'

39 Dô sprach von Troyen der herzoge Gêrwart
Then spoke of Troy the duke Gerwart

'ich wil dich, hêrre, stiuren zuo dîner hervart:
'I will thee, lord, aid for thy army-journey:

nim fünf tûsent helde, lâ dirs endanke sîn,
take five thousand heroes, let thee-it unthanked be,

und wilt, ich vliuze ouch selbe mit dir nâch der künigîn.'
if wilt-thou, I sail also self with thee after the queen.'

40 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'des wil ich muoten niht.
Then spoke the Lombard 'of-that will I desire not.

du hâst mich wol gestiuret, swaz et mir geschiht,
thou hast me well aided, whatever just to-me happens,

daz du mir hâst geheizen sô manegen stolzen degen:
that thou to-me hast promised so many-a proud thane:

du solt hie heime selbe des hergebirges phlegen.'
thou shalt here at-home self of-the mountain-pass take-care.'

Dô sprach der von Cecilje, der heiden Zacharîs 41
Then spoke he of Sicily, the heathen Zacharis

'ich sitze in dîme gedinge, du bist mîn oberstez rîs.
'I sit in thy protection, thou art my highest branch.

des du ander liute vlêgest, daz tuon ich ungebeten.
what thou other people beseechest, that do I unasked.

ich wil dich hôhe stiuren, swenn du ûf den sê wilt treten.
I will thee highly aid, whenever thou onto the sea wilt step.

Swenne du wilt fliezen ûf den sê vome staden, 42
Whenever thou wilt sail onto the sea from-the shore,

ich wil dir zwelf kiele vol rîcher spîse laden
I will to-thee twelve keels full-of rich provision load

und mit dem besten wîne, den man künegen ie getruoc.
and with the best wine, that one to-kings ever bore.

nu sitz ûf swenn du wellest, ich gibe dir driu jâr genuoc.
now sit up whenever thou wilt, I give to-thee three years enough.

Ich wil dich hôhe stiuren, rîcher künec Ortnît: 43
I will thee highly aid, rich king Ortnit:

zweinzic tûsent helden phelle und samît,
twenty thousand heroes silk and samite,

rîchiu tuoch von golde wol gewefelt und geweben,
rich cloths of gold well woven and wrought,

des wil ich dir den vollen und zweinzic tûsent helden geben.'
of-that will I to-thee the full and twenty thousand heroes give.'

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich wil füeren über sê 44
Then spoke the Lombard 'I will lead over sea

drîzic tûsent helde und dannoch liute mê.
thirty thousand heroes and yet people more.

dar an solt du gedenken: ich wil mit freuden varn.
there on shalt thou think: I will with joys go.

die ich hie heime lâze, die müeze got bewarn.
whom I here at-home leave, them may God guard.

45 Ir sult dar an gedenken, ir helde, sît gemant,
You shall there on think, you heroes, be reminded,

ich wil deheinen füeren, od er habe sturmgewant,
I will none lead, or he have battle-gear,

er sî ouch ein edel ritter oder ritters genôz:
he be also a noble knight or knight's peer:

mir envolgt deheiner, ist im ein vinger blôz.'
me follows none, (if)-is to-him a finger bare.'

46 Dô sprach der künec von Riuzen 'ich füer dir über sê
Then spoke the king of Russia 'I lead to-thee over sea

fünf tûsent sneller helde, lieht als ein snê
five thousand swift heroes, bright as a snow

in liehten stâlringen: ninder man si blecken siht.
in bright steel-rings: nowhere one them bare sees.

swar ich mînen vanen neige, dâ von koment si niht.'
wherever I my banner bow, there from come they not.'

47 Dô sprach der margrâve Helmnôt von Tuscân
Then spoke the margrave Helmnot of Tuscany

'ich wil dir enphelhen manec hôhez kastelân.
'I will to-thee commend many-a high castilian.

fünf tûsent sneller helde, daz ist mîn êrster gruoz:
five thousand swift heroes, that is my first greeting:

so geswîche mir dîn triuwe, ob in inder blecke ein fuoz,
so fail me thy faith, if of-them anywhere bare-show a foot,

Er sî mit stâlringen bedecket und bewart.' 48
He be with steel-rings covered and guarded.'

dô sprach aber von Troyen der herzoge Gêrwart
then spoke again of Troy the duke Gerwart

'Nutschîr und Bônavente daz ist mir undertân:
'Nutschir and Bonavente that is to-me subject:

dar ûz wil ich dir senden ouch fünf tûsent man
there out-of will I to-thee send also five thousand men

In liehten stâlringen, edel und wol geborn, 49
In bright steel-rings, noble and well born,

als ich dirs in mînem lande aller beste hân erkorn'.
as I to-thee-them in my land all best have chosen'.

'ir habt mich gestiuret' sprach der künec Ortnît
'you have me aided' spoke the king Ortnit

'mit fünfzehen tûsent helden ûf der argen heiden strît.
'with fifteen thousand heroes for the wicked heathens' battle.

Vind ich noch hundert tûsent, den wil ich geben solt. 50
(If)-find I yet hundred thousand, to-them will I give pay.

swer hinder mir belîbet, dem wirde ich nimmer holt.'
whoever behind me remains, to-him become I never favorable.'

dô sach man manegen dringen durch gâbe und ouch durch guot,
then saw one many-a-one throng for gift and also for goods,

dar dranc ouch sumelîcher durch sînen hôhen muot.
thither thronged also some-one for his high spirit.

Si wâren alle willic dem rîchen künege hêr. 51
They were all willing to-the rich king lordly.

des gesach ir sumelîcher Lamparten nimmer mêr.
of-that saw of-them some-one Lombardy never more.

ros unde ringe wurden dâ gegeben:
horses and rings were there given:

durch des guotes willen wâgten si daz leben.
for the goods' sake ventured they the life.

52 Vil manege knappen junge enphiengen von im swert.
Very many squires young received from him swords.

'wol mich' sprach der Lamparte 'daz iemen guotes gert.
'well me' spoke the Lombard 'that anyone goods desires.

ez stêt ein turn ze Garte, dar inne lît mîn hort,
there stands a tower at Garda, there in lies my treasure,

der ist gefult mit schatze von bodem unz an den bort.'
it is filled with treasure from bottom until to the brim.'

53 Doch gab er alsô lange, unz des guotes niht beleip.
Yet gave he so long, until of-the goods nothing remained.

die sîner kamere phlâgen die schuofen daz man schreip
who of-his chamber took-care they caused that one wrote

drîzic tûsent schilte und als manegez ritters dach:
thirty thousand shields and as many-a knight's roof:

die wâren ouch bereitet, daz des niht dâ gebrach.
they were also prepared, that of-it nothing there lacked.

54 'Œheim unde hêrre' sprach der künec Ŷljas,
'Nephew and lord' spoke the king Ilias,

'sint du von starkem guote die grôzen kraft hâs
'since thou from strong goods the great host hast

und ouch sô rîche wirde, nu kius dir einen man,
and also so rich worth, now choose to-thee a man,

der dir gerâten kunne: an wen wilt du dich lân?'
who to-thee counsel can: on whom wilt thou thyself rely?'

Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘ich bin dîner swester kint. 55
Then spoke the Lombard ‘I am thy sister’s child.
sît daz die fürsten alle in unserm gwalte sint,
since that the princes all in our power are,
ich wil dich ze vater kiesen: du bist der vater mîn.
I will thee as father choose: thou art the father mine.
die liute und ouch mich selben enphilhe ich ûf die triuwe dîn.’
the people and also me self commend I on the faith thine.’

‘Ich sage dir’ sprach der Riuze ‘und verstu ûf daz mer, 56
‘I tell thee’ spoke the Russian ‘if goest-thou onto the sea,
du maht vil wol ertrinken, du und al dîn her:
thou mayst very well drown, thou and all thy host:
der segelwint ist bœse, ez ist noch niht varens zît.’
the sail-wind is bad, it is yet not of-going time.’
‘ich var, als du gebiutest’ sprach der künic Ortnît.
‘I go, as thou commandest’ spoke the king Ortnit.

‘Swenn uns der meie erschînet, gegen den liehten tagen, 57
‘Whenever to-us the May appears, toward the bright days,
sô bite des dîne friunde, daz si ir helden sagen,
so bid of-that thy friends, that they to-their heroes say,
daz si sich bereiten, swie ez in dar nâch ergê,
that they themselves prepare, however it to-them there after befall,
daz wir mit vogelsange varn ûf den wilden sê.’
that we with birdsong go onto the wild sea.’

Dô sprach von Lamparten der künic Ortnît 58
Then spoke of Lombardy the king Ortnit
‘sint elliu mîn freude und wünne an iu lît,
‘since all my joy and delight on you lies,

sô leistet iuwer triuwe, die ir mir habt gegeben.
so perform your faith, which you to-me have given.
daz wil ich verdienen, und sol ich lange leben.'
that will I earn, if shall I long live.'

59 Diu triuwe wart geleistet, si lobten im alsô
The faith was performed, they vowed to-him so
daz siz vil gerne tæten. des wart der künic frô.
that they-it very gladly did. of-that became the king glad.
dem künege wart der winder und die kurzen tage lanc
to-the king became the winter and the short days long
dâ von daz in diu minne und der meide schœne twanc.
there from that him the love and the maid's beauty constrained.

60 Si wâren frô der vlêge, swes er si wolde biten.
They were glad of-the entreaty, of-whatever he them would ask.
urloup si dô nâmen, von Garte si dô riten.
leave they then took, from Garda they then rode.
mit minneclîchem muote er in allen urloup gap.
with loving spirit he to-them all leave gave.
des volgte tugent und êre dem künege in sîn grap.
of-that followed virtue and honor the king into his grave.

61 Dô si alle von im schieden unz an den einen man,
When they all from him parted until to the one man,
den heiden von Pülle, den wolde er ninder lân,
the heathen of Apulia, him would he nowhere let-go,
und ouch den künec von Riuzen (die zwêne het er erwelt,
and also the king of Russia (the two had he chosen,
die wârn in sînem lande ze den besten ûz gezelt),
they were in his land as the best out counted),

Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘got lâze mich geleben, 62
Then spoke the Lombard ‘God let me live,
daz ich dir des gedanke, daz du mir hâst gegeben,
that I thee for-that thank, which thou to-me hast given,
tugentrîcher heiden, des ich dich nie gebat.
virtue-rich heathen, what I thee never asked.
und woldest kristen werden, ich hiet dich an bruoder stat.’
if wouldst Christian become, I had thee in brother’s stead.’

‘Enruoch bin ich ein heiden, und ist mîn triuwe guot, 63
‘Not-care am I a heathen, and is my faith good,
ob ich dir mêr gediene dan dir ein kristen tuot.
whether I to-thee more serve than to-thee a Christian does.
mîn triuwe ist unzebrochen, swâz dir an die sorge gât.
my faith is unbroken, whatever to-thee to the care goes.
ich diene dir als gerne, als der touf enphangen hât.’
I serve thee as gladly, as he-who baptism received has.’

Dô sprach Ŷljas von Riuzen ‘ez nâhent gegen den tagen. 64
Then spoke Ilias of Russia ‘it nears toward the days.
du solt im wol getrûwen, bit dir den heiden sagen,
thou shalt to-him well trust, bid to-thee the heathen say,
wâ du die kiele vindest, die er dir geben wil.
where thou the keels findest, which he to-thee give will.
daz du dich dar nâch rihtest, bit dir geben ein zil.’
that thou thyself there after preparest, bid to-thee give a term.’

Dô sprach der wîse heiden ‘wâ möhte ez anders sîn, 65
Then spoke the wise heathen ‘where might it otherwise be,
dâ er die kiele funde, ezn geschehe in Messîn,
where he the keels found, unless-it happen in Messina,

in mînem künicrîche und in mîner besten habe,
in my kingdom and in my best harbor,
dâ alle marnære sitzent ûf unt abe?'
where all mariners sit up and down?'

66 Dô sprach der Pülleschære 'nu lâz mich, hêrre, varn,
Then spoke the Apulian 'now let me, lord, go,
sol ich dîne kiele berihten und ouch dar zuo bewarn,
(if)-shall I thy keels prepare and also there to guard,
daz du si alsô vindest, als ich gelobet hân.'
that thou them so findest, as I promised have.'
dô sprach der Lamparte 'wie wol ich dir des gan!'
then spoke the Lombard 'how well I to-thee of-it grant!'

67 'Ich wil ouch gegen Riuzen' sprach der künic Ŷljas.
'I will also toward Russia' spoke the king Ilias.
'ez nâhent vaste dem jâre, daz ich dâ heime was.
'it nears fast to-the year, that I there at-home was.
ich sæhe gern dâ heime mîn wîp und ouch mîn kint.
I would-see gladly there at-home my woman and also my child.
ich muoz die helde schouwen, die dir geheizen sint.'
I must the heroes behold, who to-thee promised are.'

68 'Got gesegen iuch beide' sprach der künec Ortnît,
'God bless you both' spoke the king Ortnit,
'und lâze iuch des geniezen, daz ir getriuwe sît,
'and let you of-it profit, that you faithful be,
daz ir sô gerne leistet mîn bete und mîn gebot.
that you so gladly perform my request and my command.
ich getar iuch niht mê irren: nu gesegen iuch got.'
I dare you not more hinder: now bless you God.'

Sus gap er in beiden urloup âne danc. 69
Thus gave he to-them both leave without will.

niwan von sagenden dingen der meide schœne in twanc.
only from told things the maid's beauty him constrained.

im het ouch ir minne vil nâch benomen den sin.
to-him had also her love very nearly taken the mind.

Ortnîdes âventiure ist iezuo einiu hin.
Ortnit's adventure is now one gone.

Ortnit II

II · THE DWARF UNDER THE LINDEN

Against his mother's warning Ortnit rides out alone for adventure, wearing a ring she gives him. Under a linden by Lake Garda he finds what looks like a sleeping child, wrestles it, and pins the dwarf Alberich, who buys his life with armor, the sword Rose, and a helmet. Tricked out of the ring, Ortnit has to promise not to be angry before he gets it back; Alberich then reveals that he is Ortnit's father. He brings the armor, and after three days of riding in search of a fight Ortnit comes to Garda, tells the burgrave that he is a heathen who has slain their lord, and fells him before he is recognized and welcomed by his mother.

Mit zühten sprach sîn muoter, daz minneclîche wîp 70
With courtesies spoke his mother, the lovely woman

'du wilt in grôze sorge bringen dînen lîp.
'thou wilt into great care bring thy body.

du soldest billîche haben dîner friunde rât.
thou shouldst rightly have thy friends' counsel.

ez ergêt vil selten ebene, swaz man âne rât begât.'
it goes very seldom evenly, whatever one without counsel undertakes.'

71 ‘Muoter unde frouwe’ sprach der künec Ortnît,
‘Mother and lady’ spoke the king Ortnit,

‘du solt mir niht weren den willen noch den strît.
‘thou shalt to-me not forbid the will nor the battle.

swaz du mir gebiutest, frouwe, daz geschiht:
whatever thou me commandest, lady, that happens:

hiet aber ich tûsent muoter, durch die belîbe ich niht.’
had however I thousand mothers, for them remain I not.’

72 ‘Ich solz niht widerrâten’ sprach diu künigîn,
‘I shall-it not dissuade’ spoke the queen,

‘vater unde hêrre, man unde kindelîn,
‘father and lord, husband and little-child,

sît dichs sô sêre lustet, sô wil ich dirz niht wern.
since thee-it so sorely pleases, so will I thee-it not forbid.

nu müeze dir gelücke und sælde got dar beschern.’
now may to-thee fortune and bliss God there grant.’

73 Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘mir ist ein troum bekant.
Then spoke the Lombard ‘to-me is a dream known.

vil lieber kamerære, nu brinc mir mîn sturmgewant.’
very dear chamberlain, now bring me my battle-gear.’

dô sprach mit klagenden worten daz minniclîche wîp
then spoke with lamenting words the lovely woman

‘sun, du geruowest nimmer, dune verliesest dînen lîp.’
‘son, thou restest never, unless-thou losest thy body.’

74 Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘frowe unde muoter mîn,
Then spoke the Lombard ‘lady and mother mine,

ein man mac ouch nimmer ân ungelücke sîn.
a man may also never without misfortune be.

dem ich mich bevilhe, der muoz mich bewarn.
to-whom I myself commend, he must me guard.

ich hân geruowet lange, ich wil aber irre varn.
I have rested long, I will however astray go.

Ich hân nâch âventiure nu lange niht geriten. 75
I have after adventure now long not ridden.

muoter unde frouwe, du solt mir guotes biten,
mother and lady, thou shalt for-me good ask,

wan ich dich nie erzurnde: des ich geloubic bin.
for I thee never angered: of-that I sure am.

und werest du mir die reise, sô wil ich doch dâ hin.'
if forbiddest thou to-me the journey, so will I yet there thither.'

Dô sprach diu frouwe in zühten 'du bist mîn liebez kint, 76
Then spoke the lady in courtesies 'thou art my dear child,

sît alle mîne mâge an dich gedigen sint
since all my kinsmen on thee come-down are

und ouch an mînen bruoder, dînen œheim Ŷljas,
and also on my brother, thy uncle Ilias,

den künec von wilden Riuzen, der dir ie getriuwe was.'
the king of wild Russia, who to-thee ever faithful was.'

'Bringt mir mîne ringe' sô sprach der helt balt, 77
'Bring me my rings' so spoke the hero bold,

'ich muoz nâch âventiure rîten in den walt.
'I must after adventure ride into the wood.

mir ist mîn muot sô ringe, mir gelinget lîhte wol.
to-me is my spirit so light, to-me succeeds perhaps well.

der biderbe an allen dingen sîn heil versuochen sol.'
the worthy-one in all things his fortune try shall.'

78 Dô sprach sîn liebiu muoter ‘du wilt in sorgen leben.
Then spoke his dear mother ‘thou wilt in cares live.

und suochest âventiure, ich wil dir mîn stiure geben,
if seekest adventure, I will to-thee my aid give,

daz du mir immer mêre muost deste holder sîn.
that thou to-me ever more must the-more more-favorable be.

swenn du von mir rîtest, sô gibe ich dir daz vingerlîn.’
whenever thou from me ridest, so give I to-thee the little-ring.’

79 ‘Muoter unde frouwe, ich swer dir einen eit,
‘Mother and lady, I swear to-thee an oath,

daz ich ez niemen gibe, ist ez dir anders leit.’
that I it to-no-one give, (if)-is it to-thee otherwise loath.’

‘sun unde hêrre, nu habe dir daz golt:
‘son and lord, now have for-thyself the gold:

und gîst duz aber iemen, ich wird dir nimmer holt.’
if givest thou-it however anyone, I become to-thee never favorable.’

80 Alsô der Lamparte daz vingerlîn ersach,
When the Lombard the little-ring saw,

er schouwetz flîziclîchen, er lachete unde sprach
he beheld-it diligently, he laughed and spoke

‘nu weste ich harte gerne, vil liebiu muoter mîn,
‘now would-know I very gladly, very dear mother mine,

wâ von sô liep dir wære ditz kleine vingerlîn?’
where from so dear to-thee were this small little-ring?’

81 ‘Daz vingerlîn ist rîche, und dunct dich nihtes wert.
‘The little-ring is rich, and seems to-thee nothing worth.

du suochest âventiure: sît des dîn herze gert,
thou seekest adventure: since of-it thy heart desires,

wil du in die wilde rîten, sô lâz ez von dir niht.
(if)-wilt thou into the wild ride, so let it from thee not.

du vindest âventiure, von dem steine daz geschiht.
thou findest adventure, from the stone that happens.

Du solt mir daz gelouben, ditz selbe vingerlîn, 82
Thou shalt me that believe, this same little-ring,

daz du daz niht engæbest, ob diu rîche wæren dîn.
that thou it not wouldst-give, if the kingdoms were thine.

daz golt hât nutzes kleine, der stein ist aber sô starc:
the gold has of-use little, the stone is however so strong:

ez frumt dir an disem jâre über fünfzic tûsent marc.
it profits thee in this year over fifty thousand marks.

Sô du von Garte rîtest, sô kêr zer lenken hant 83
When thou from Garda ridest, so turn to-the left hand

über ronen und über gebirge neben der steinwant,
over fallen-trees and over mountains beside the rock-wall,

und warte wâ ein linde under dem gebirge stê
and watch where a linden under the mountains stand

und ûz der steinwende ein küeler brunne gê.
and out-of the rock-wall a cool spring go.

Diu linde diu ist grüene, dar undr ein anger breit. 84
The linden it is green, there under a meadow broad.

fünf hundert rittern schône diu linde schate treit.
five hundred for-knights fairly the linden shade bears.

kumstu under die linden, sô muost du mir des jehen.
(if)-comest-thou under the linden, so must thou to-me of-it avow.

solt du âventiure vinden, daz muoz aldâ geschehen.'
(if)-shalt thou adventure find, that must there happen.'

85 Dô neic der Lamparte der lieben muoter sîn.
Then bowed the Lombard to-the dear mother his.

si sprach 'du solt niht bergen, sun, daz vingerlîn.
she spoke 'thou shalt not hide, son, the little-ring.

swar du wellest rîten, sô lâz ez blecken bar.
wherever thou wilt ride, so let it gleam bare.

solt du âventiure vinden, die wîset ez dich dar.'
(if)-shalt thou adventure find, that shows it thee thither.'

86 Dô reit der Lamparte vil unverzeiter dan
Then rode the Lombard very undaunted thence

von der burc ze Garte ân alle sîne man.
from the castle at Garda without all his men.

daz was den getriuwen und den biderben leit,
that was to-the faithful and to-the worthy loath,

daz er des niene wolde, daz iemen mit im reit.
that he of-it never would, that anyone with him rode.

87 Dô meit er daz gevilde als in sîn muoter bat,
Then shunned he the open-field as him his mother bade,

und kêrte in die wilde âne strâze und âne phat.
and turned into the wild without road and without path.

dô habte er gegen der sunne daz vingerl und die hant.
then held he toward the sun the little-ring and the hand.

er reit grôz ungeverte ze tal die steinwant.
he rode great wilderness to dale the rock-wall.

88 Dô kom er in ein ouwe neben dem Gartesê.
Then came he into a meadow beside the Garda-lake.

dâ sprungen ûf der heide bluomen und der klê.
there sprang on the heath flowers and the clover.

die vogele schône sungen, dô hôrte er süezen dôz.
the birds fairly sang, then heard he sweet sound.

die naht het er gewachet, des ritens in verdrôz.
the night had he waked, of-the riding him wearied.

Diu sunne gegen dem morgen durch diu wolken schein. 89
The sun toward the morning through the clouds shone.

do beschouwete er vil dicke daz golt und den stein.
then beheld he very often the gold and the stone.

dô vant er über anger daz grüene gras geweten:
then found he over meadow the green grass trodden:

er sach mit kleinen füezen ein smalez phat getreten.
he saw with small feet a narrow path trodden.

Dem selben phade er volgte under die steinwant, 90
The same path he followed under the rock-wall,

dâ er den küelen brunnen und ouch die linden vant.
where he the cool spring and also the linden found.

er sach die grüenen heide und ouch der linden ast.
he saw the green heath and also the linden's branch.

si het ouch ûf ir rîse vil manegen werden gast.
it had also on its twigs very many-a worthy guest.

Die vogele dar ûf sungen vil lûte wider strît. 91
The birds there on sang very loudly against rivalry.

'ich wæn ich rîte rehte' sprach der künec Ortnît.
'I think I ride rightly' spoke the king Ortnit.

do erbeizte er von dem rosse und zôch ez an der hant.
then dismounted he from the horse and drew it by the hand.

dô freute sich sîn herze, dâ er die linden vant.
then rejoiced himself his heart, when he the linden found.

92 Die linden schowet er lange, er lachete unde sprach
The linden beheld he long, he laughed and spoke

‘daz wizze got von himele, du bist ein schœnez dach.
‘that know God of heaven, thou art a fair roof.

ez gie von einem boume nie sô süezer wint.’
there went from a tree never so sweet wind.’

dô luogte er under d’este: er sach ein kleinez kint,
then peered he under the-branches: he saw a little child,

93 Daz het sich gedrucket nider ûf daz gras.
That had itself pressed down onto the grass.

done weste der Lamparte leider wer ez was.
then-not knew the Lombard alas who it was.

ez truoc an sînem lîbe die aller besten wât,
it bore on its body the very best raiment,

die jungez oder altez in der werlde inder hât.
that young or old in the world anywhere has.

94 Mit edelem gesteine was gezieret sîn gewant.
With noble gemstones was adorned its clothing.

dô er daz kint aleine under der linden vant,
when he the child alone under the linden found,

‘ouwê wâ ist dîn muoter?’ sprach künic Ortnît
‘alas where is thy mother?’ spoke king Ortnit

‘dîn lîp vil unberuochet under disem boume lît.
‘thy body very uncared-for under this tree lies.

95 Du hâst an dînem lîbe vil ritterlîchiu kleit.
Thou hast on thy body very knightly clothes.

ich getar dich niht geschrecken. wie bin ich sô gar verzeit?
I dare thee not startle. how am I so wholly fearful?

durch dîn kindes schœne tar ich dir niht getuon.
for thy child's beauty dare I to-thee not do.

daz wolte got von himele, und wærest du mîn suon!
that would God of heaven, if wert thou my son!

Du bist in kindes mâze, des vierden jâres alt. 96
Thou art in child's measure, of-the fourth year old.

ob ich dich mit mir fuorte, waz hulf mich der gewalt?
if I thee with me led, what helped me the might?

ich hiet sîn lützel êre, sît niemen hüetet dîn.
I had of-it little honor, since no-one guards thee.

ouwê wâ ist dîn muoter, vil liebez kindelîn?'
alas where is thy mother, very dear little-child?'

Von golde und ouch von sîden was sîn gewæte gar. 97
Of gold and also of silk was its raiment wholly.

dô stuont er unde schouwet den lîp und ouch daz hâr.
then stood he and beheld the body and also the hair.

in dûhte harte schœne daz kint und ouch sîn dach.
him seemed very fair the child and also its roof.

ez kom von einem steine, daz er in ligen sach,
it came from a stone, that he him lying saw,

In einem vingerlîne, daz fuorte er an der hant. 98
In a little-ring, that wore he on the hand.

er stuont in manegem muote dâ er ez ligende vant.
he stood in many-a mind when he it lying found.

er sprach 'dîn grôziu schœne und dîn wât ist alsô guot:
he spoke 'thy great beauty and thy raiment is so good:

swie ich dich eine vinde, du bist niht unbehuot.
however I thee alone find, thou art not unguarded.

99 Ich bin nâch âventiure geriten dise naht.
I am after adventure ridden this night.
nu hât mich got der guote under dise linden brâht.
now has me God the good under this linden brought.
sît ich nâch âventiure her geriten bin
since I after adventure hither ridden am
und ich niht anders vinde, sô muost du mit mir hin.'
and I not other find, so must thou with me away.'

100 Sîn ros daz hafte er vaste an ein der linden zwî.
His horse that tied he fast to one of-the linden's branches.
er sprach 'ich wil versuochen ob iemen bî dir sî.
he spoke 'I will try whether anyone by thee be.
wenne wil du wachen?' der Lamparte rief.
when wilt thou wake?' the Lombard called.
der kleine brâhte in inne daz er niht vaste slief.
the little-one brought him aware that he not fast slept.

101 Er wolde in zuo dem rosse in kindes wîse tragen.
He would him to the horse in child's way carry.
des wart im zuo der brüste ein grôzer slac geslagen:
of-that was to-him on the breast a great blow struck:
der kleine dô den grôzen mit der viuste sluoc.
the little-one then the great-one with the fist struck.
dô half im des sîn sterke, daz er in niht entruoc.
then helped him in-that his strength, that he him not carried-off.

102 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'swer sîne vinde spart
Then spoke the Lombard 'whoever his foes spares
und sîne friunde erzürnet, der hât sich niht wol bewart;
and his friends angers, he has himself not well guarded;

der mac lîhte an beiden vil grôzen schaden nemen.
he may perhaps from both very great harm take.

smæher vinde und kleiner wunden sol sich nieman enschemen.
of-mean foes and small wounds shall himself no-one be-ashamed.

Wie bist als ungefüege?' sprach der künec Ortnît. 103
How art-thou so monstrous?' spoke the king Ortnit.

'wâ von kumt dir diu sterke, diu an dînem lîbe lît?
'where from comes to-thee the strength, that in thy body lies?

du wilt mir entrinnen lîht âne mînen danc.'
thou wilt me escape easily without my consent.'

sich segent der grôze dicke, do er mit dem kleinen ranc.
himself crossed the great-one often, when he with the little-one wrestled.

Der grôze was erzürnet, der kleine der was frô. 104
The great-one was angered, the little-one he was glad.

der eine lachete lûte, dem andern was ninder sô.
the one laughed loudly, to-the other was nowise so.

doch zôch an der lenge des grôzen sterke hin.
yet drew in the length the great-one's strength on.

do betrouc den kleinen sêre sîn hôchvart und sîn sin.
then deceived the little-one sorely his arrogance and his mind.

Von sînem grôzen spotte wart im sîn prîs benomen. 105
From his great mockery was to-him his prize taken.

und hiete er niht gelachet, sô hiet ern niht überkomen.
if had he not laughed, so had he-him not overcome.

der grôze nam den kleinen und warf in ûf daz gras.
the great-one took the little-one and threw him onto the grass.

daz kom von den schulden daz ez sîn wille was.
that came from the causes that it his will was.

106 Zwelf manne sterke het der ungefüege man.
Twelve men's strength had the monstrous man.

den kleinen behabte er kûme, daz er im niht entran.
the little-one held he hardly, that he him not escaped.

alsô von dem grôzen der kleine nider lac,
as from the great-one the little-one down lay,

dô greif er zuo dem swerte und wolde im einen slac
then grasped he to the sword and would to-him a blow

107 Haben geslagen mit nîde, der im gienge an sînen lîp.
Have struck with hatred, that to-him went to his body.

'lâ stân' sprach der kleine, 'du möhst gerne slahen ein wîp.
'let stand' spoke the little-one, 'thou mightest gladly strike a woman.

wilt du mich sêre schelten und dar zuo ze tôde erslân,
(if)-wilt thou me sorely revile and there to to death slay,

des hâstu lützel êre: du maht mich gerner vân.'
of-that hast-thou little honor: thou mayst me rather catch.'

108 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'des entuon ich niht.
Then spoke the Lombard 'that do I not.

ich hân sîn immer schande, swâ man dich gevangen siht.
I have of-it ever shame, wherever one thee captive sees.

sô getar ich diser mære von dir niht gesagen.
so dare I of-these tales of thee not tell.

des geloubet ûf mich niemen, daz ich dich habe erslagen.
that believes of me no-one, that I thee have slain.

109 Swâ ich dich nu fuorte mit mir gevangen hin,
Wherever I thee now led with me captive away,

sô spotten mîn die liute, wan ich der grôze bin.
so mock me the people, for I the great-one am.

sô spræchen alle liute “wie übelz Ortnîden stât,
so would-speak all people “how ill-it Ortnit stands,

daz er ein kleines kindlîn durch ruom gevangen hât.”
that he a small little-child for glory captive has.”

Wil dich mîn swert snîden, sô muost du ligen tôt. 110
(If)-will thee my sword cut, so must thou lie dead.

ich kom von einem manne nie in sô grôze nôt.
I came from a man never into so great distress.

du bræhtest mich in schande, liez ich dich lange leben.’
thou wouldst-bring me into shame, should-let I thee long live.’

‘entriuwen’ sprach der kleine, ‘du muost mir fride geben.’
‘in-faith’ spoke the little-one, ‘thou must to-me peace give.’

Dô viel im ze fuoze der vil lützel geschaft: 111
Then fell to-him at foot the very little made-one:

‘lâ mich, künic Ortnît, durch dîne hêrschaft!
‘let me, king Ortnit, for thy lordship!

sô gibe ich dir ze minne ein sô guote sarwât,
so give I to-thee for love a so good armor,

daz niemen in der werlde sô vestes niht enhât.
that no-one in the world so firm anything has.

Funfzic tûsent marc geltes ist diu brünne wert. 112
Fifty thousand marks’ value is the mail-shirt worth.

zuo dem halsperge wil ich dir geben ein swert,
to the hauberk will I to-thee give a sword,

daz alle ringe schrôtet als si nie gewunnen stâl.
that all rings cleaves as-if they never won steel.

jâ wart nie helm sô veste, ez tæte im schaden mâl.
yea was never helmet so firm, it did to-him harm mark.

113 Zuo dem halsperge gehœrt ein beingewant.
To the hauberk belongs a leg-armor.

dâst ninder rinc sô kleiner, in smitt mîn selbes hant.
there-is nowhere ring so small, it-not forged my own hand.

werdent dir die ringe, du solt in wesen holt.
(if)-become to-thee the rings, thou shalt to-them be favorable.

dâ ist niht valsches inne, ez sî allez lûter golt.
there is nothing false within, it be all pure gold.

114 Ich wæne ouch in der werlde iht sô guotes sî.
I think also in the world anything so good be.

ich namz in einem lande, daz heizet Arâbî.
I took-it in a land, that is-called Arabia.

daz golt ist valsches âne und ist lûter sam ein glas.
the gold is of-falsehood without and is clear as a glass.

ich namz an einem berge, der heizet Kaukasas.
I took-it on a mountain, that is-called Caucasus.

115 Zuo den liehten ringen gib ich dir einen schilt
To the bright rings give I to-thee a shield

sô vesten und sô starken, ob du mirs danken wilt,
so firm and so strong, if thou me-for-it thank wilt,

den nie geschôz verwundet noch deheines swertes slac,
which never shot wounded nor any sword's blow,

noch deheines fiures hitze dar durch gewinnen mac.
nor any fire's heat there through win may.

116 Daz swert wil ich dir nennen, des varwe diu ist lieht.
The sword will I to-thee name, whose color it is bright.

swaz du dâ mit gestritest, sô hât ez scharten nieht.
whatever thou there with foughtest, so has it notches not.

diu klinge heizet Rôse, die nenne ich mit namen.
the blade is-called Rose, that name I by name.

swâ man elliu swert erziuhet, du darft dich sîn niht schamen.
wherever one all swords draws, thou needest thyself of-it not be-ashamed.

Zuo allem dem gesmîde gib ich dir ein houbetdach, 117
To all the armor give I to-thee a head-roof,

daz man ob ritters houbet sô schœnez nie gesach.
that one above knight's head so fair never saw.

der man ist immer sælic swer den helm treit.
the man is ever blessed whoever the helmet wears.

man kiuset ouch sîn houbet über ein halbe mîle breit.'
one sees also his head over a half mile broad.'

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'sîtt sô grôze gâbe gîst, 118
Then spoke the Lombard 'since-thou so great gift givest,

sô wil ich dich niht enlâzen, du sagest mir wer du sîst.'
so will I thee not release, thou unless-tell me who thou be.'

dô sprach aber der kleine 'ich bin ein wildez twerc.
then spoke again the little-one 'I am a wild dwarf.

mir dienet in Lamparten manec tal unde berc.'
to-me serves in Lombardy many-a dale and hill.'

'Nu sage mir wie du heizest' sprach der künic rîch. 119
'Now tell me how thou art-called' spoke the king rich.

'wil du mich gerne nennen, sô rüefe ot Alberîch.'
'(if)-wilt thou me gladly name, so call just Alberich.'

dô sprach der Lamparte 'du bist lâzens ungewert.
then spoke the Lombard 'thou art of-release ungranted.

jâ mac dich niht gehelfen dîn brünne und ouch dîn swert,
yea may thee not help thy mail-shirt and also thy sword,

120 Noch swaz du mir geheizest unde ouch maht gegeben.
Nor whatever thou to-me promisest and also mayst give.

daz mac dir niht gehelfen, daz ich dich lâze leben.
that may thee not help, that I thee let live.

ich slah dir under der linden abe daz houbet dîn,
I strike thee under the linden off the head thine,

du helfest mir erwerben ein schœnez magedîn.'
thou unless-help me win a fair maiden.'

121 'Wer ist si, der du muotest?' sprach aber Alberîch.
'Who is she, whom thou desirest?' spoke again Alberich.

'ist si lîbes oder guotes ein küniginne rîch?
'is she of-body or of-goods a queen rich?

mac aber si mit êren heizen wol dîn wîp,
(if)-may however she with honors be-called well thy woman,

so erwirbe ich dir die frouwen, oder habe dir mînen lîp.'
so win I thee the lady, or have for-thyself my body.'

122 'Ir vater hât vil lande jenhalben an dem mer.
'Her father has very-many lands yonder on the sea.

ich getrûwe ir niht gewinnen, ichn suoche si mit her.
I trust her not to-win, unless-I seek her with host.

ir vater ist als unreine, der wil si niemen geben:
her father is so unclean, he will her to-no-one give:

nieman tar ir gemuoten, man enneme im sâ daz leben.
no-one dares her desire, unless-one take from-him at-once the life.

123 Er ist ein künec gewaltic. über al die heidenschaft
He is a king mighty. over all the heathendom

hât er gên allen künegen enhalp meres grôze kraft.
has he against all kings beyond sea great power.

er ist ûf Muntabûre, dâ hât er heimlîch.'
he is on Muntabur, there has he dwelling.'

'vil wol ich in erkenne' sprach aber Alberîch.
'very well I him know' spoke again Alberich.

'Wil du mich noch lâzen' sprach der vil kleine man, 124
'(If)-wilt thou me yet let-go' spoke the very little man,

'sô wil ich dir leisten daz ich dir gelobet hân.'
'so will I to-thee perform what I to-thee promised have.'

dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich wæn des niht ergê.
then spoke the Lombard 'I think that-it not befall.

du wirdest ledic nimmer, dune setzst mir bürgen ê.'
thou becomest free never, unless-thou set to-me sureties before.'

'Du wilt mich hôhe twingen' sprach der kleine knabe, 125
'Thou wilt me highly constrain' spoke the little boy,

'du eischest von mir bürgen, ich wæn si ninder habe.
'thou demandest from me sureties, I think them nowhere have.

du solt gotes gedenken' sprach der vil kleine man,
thou shalt of-God think' spoke the very little man,

'lâ mich, ich wil dir leisten daz ich dir gelobet hân.'
'let me, I will to-thee perform what I to-thee promised have.'

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'hie wirt lâzens niht, 126
Then spoke the Lombard 'here becomes of-release nothing,

unz an die liehten ringe daz die mîn ouge an siht.'
until to the bright rings that them my eye on sees.'

'entriuwen' sprach der kleine 'si werdent nimmer dîn
'in-faith' spoke the little-one 'they become never thine

die wîle ich muoz gevangen in dîner gwalte sîn.'
the while I must captive in thy power be.'

127 ‘Nu rât daz beste uns beiden’ sô sprach der künic rîch.
‘Now counsel the best for-us both’ so spoke the king rich.

‘des wil ich dich bescheiden’ sprach aber Alberîch,
‘of-that will I thee instruct’ spoke again Alberich,

‘lâ mich ûf mîn triuwe, dir mac guot von mir geschehen.’
‘let me on my faith, to-thee may good from me happen.’

‘nein ich’ sprach der Lamparte, ‘ich muoz die ringe ê sehen.’
‘no I’ spoke the Lombard, ‘I must the rings before see.’

128 ‘Lâ mich ûf mîn triuwe, sô gêt dir freuden zuo.
‘Let me on my faith, so goes to-thee of-joys to.

du maht mich gerne lâzen, ich binz ein künec als duo.
thou mayst me gladly let-go, I am-it a king as thou.

mir jehent mîne genôzen daz ich getriuwe sî.
to-me avow my peers that I faithful be.

swie vil du hâst der lande, ich hân mêre dan dîn drî.
however many thou hast of-the lands, I have more than thy three.

129 Du hâst ob der erde gewaltes harte vil,
Thou hast above the earth of-power very much,

sô hân ich dar under alles des ich wil.
so have I there under all of-that I will.

ich gibe wol swem mich lustet silber unde golt:
I give well to-whom me pleases silver and gold:

ein man der wirt gerîchet, wird ich im mit triuwen holt.
a man be is enriched, (if)-become I to-him with faith favorable.

130 Nu lâ mich’ sprach der kleine, ‘ich swer dir einen eit
Now let me’ spoke the little-one, ‘I swear to-thee an oath

und gibe dirs mîn triuwe und mîne sicherheit,
and give to-thee-it my faith and my surety,

daz ich dir niene liuge' sprach aber Alberîch.
that I to-thee never lie' spoke again Alberich.
'ich wâge ez ûf dîn triuwe' sprach dô der künic rîch.
'I venture it on thy faith' spoke then the king rich.

Von im stiez er den kleinen. vor im er schône stuont 131
From him thrust he the little-one. before him he fairly stood
in zühticlîchen vorhten, als die gevangen tuont.
in courteous fears, as the captive do.
dô sprach der Lamparte 'sît du ungevangen stâst,
then spoke the Lombard 'since thou uncaptured standest,
nu hin und brinc mir balde daz du mir gelobet hâst.'
now away and bring me quickly what thou to-me promised hast.'

Mit zühten sprach der kleine 'nu gewer mich einer bete 132
With courtesies spoke the little-one 'now grant me a request
durch aller künege wirde, ê daz ich von dir trete.'
for all kings' worth, before that I from thee step.'
dô sprach der künic Ortnît 'waz mac diu bete sîn?'
then spoke the king Ortnit 'what may the request be?'
mit zühten sprach der kleine 'ez ist niht der schade dîn.'
with courtesies spoke the little-one 'it is not the harm thine.'

'Nu lâz mich doch hœren, swes du gebiten maht.' 133
'Now let me yet hear, what thou ask mayst.'
mit zühten sprach der kleine 'ich hân mirs vor gedâht,
with courtesies spoke the little-one 'I have to-me-it before thought,
ich wil dîn dienest immer und dîn eigen sîn:
I will thy servant ever and thy own be:
durch aller künege wirde gip mir dîn vingerlîn!'
for all kings' worth give me thy little-ring!'

134 Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘entriuwen, ich entar.
Then spoke the Lombard ‘in-faith, I not-dare.

ich gæbe dirz vil gerne, ez ist mir verboten gar.
I would-give thee-it very gladly, it is to-me forbidden wholly.

swes du anders an mich muotest, des wil ich dich gewern.
whatever thou else of me desirest, that will I thee grant.

ich gæbe dirz vil gerne: ich mac sîn niht enbern.’
I would-give thee-it very gladly: I may of-it not do-without.’

135 Dô sprach aber der kleine ‘war zuo ist ez dir guot?
Then spoke again the little-one ‘where to is it to-thee good?

waz sol dir künicrîche, du habest ouch milten muot?
what shall to-thee kingdom, thou unless-have also bountiful spirit?

daz dich sô sêre erbarmet ditz kleine vingerlîn!
that thee so sorely grieves this small little-ring!

bæt ich dich dînes rosses, ez wurde ouch nimmer mîn!’
should-ask I thee for-thy horse, it would-become also never mine!’

136 ‘Ich gæbe dir noch lieber ein burc oder ein lant,
‘I would-give thee yet rather a castle or a land,

daz ich dir iezuo gæbe daz golt ab mîner hant.
than I thee now gave the gold off my hand.

daz aber dîn muot sô sêre nâch disem golde tobt!
that however thy spirit so sorely after this gold rages!

ich gæbe dirz vil gerne: nu hân ab ichz verlobt.
I would-give thee-it very gladly: now have however I-it forsworn.

137 Ez gap mirz mîn muoter, der hân ichz versworn.
It gave me-it my mother, to-her have I-it sworn.

ich fürhte, ob ich dirz gæbe, ich hiete ir hulde verlorn.’
I fear, if I thee-it gave, I had her favor lost.’

‘ouwê’ sprach der kleine, ‘zwiu sol dir dîn grôzer lîp
‘alas’ spoke the little-one, ‘to-what shall to-thee thy great body
und ouch dîn mannes sterke, und fürhtest du ein wîp?
and also thy man’s strength, and fearest thou a woman?

Daz du sô sêre fürhtest eins wîbes gerten slac! 138
That thou so sorely fearest a woman’s rod’s blow!
ich wæn dîn lîp von wunden nimmer genesen mac.’
I think thy body from wounds never survive may.’
‘si hât in guoter wîle nie mit gerten mich geslagen.
‘she has in good while never with rods me struck.
mir ist aber sô liep mîn muoter, daz ich gerne wil vertragen.
to-me is however so dear my mother, that I gladly will bear.

Vil wê tuot mînem herzen, swenn ez si trûren siht. 139
Very woe does to-my heart, whenever it her sad sees.
nu lache oder zürne, ich gibe dirs zwâre niht.’
now laugh or be-angry, I give thee-it truly not.’
‘entriuwen’ sprach der kleine, ‘du maht niht gewern mich!
‘in-faith’ spoke the little-one, ‘thou mayst not grant me!
ich fürhte, ob du mirz gæbest, dîn muoter slüege dich.
I fear, if thou to-me-it gavest, thy mother struck thee.

Ich wæne ez wart nie künege sô liep ein vingerlîn. 140
I think there was never to-a-king so dear a little-ring.
maht du michz doch lâzen schouwen ûf die triuwe mîn?’
mayst thou me-it yet let behold on the faith mine?’
er sprach ‘sît du sô sêre nâch disem golde strebest,
he spoke ‘since thou so sorely after this gold strivest,
nu gip mir des dîn triuwe, daz du mirz wider gebest.’
now give me for-that thy faith, that thou me-it back givest.’

141 Er wolde ins niht erlâzen, er müeste im eide swern.
He would him-of-it not release, he must to-him oaths swear.

er greif im nâch der hende: des torste er im niht wern.
he reached to-him after the hand: that dared he to-him not forbid.

als er im ab der hende daz vingerlîn gebrach,
as he to-him off the hand the little-ring pulled,

zehant verswant der kleine, daz er sîn niht ensach.
forthwith vanished the little-one, that he him not saw.

142 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'sag an, wâ bist du hin?'
Then spoke the Lombard 'say on, where art thou gone?'

mit zorne sprach der kleine 'nu enruoche, wâ ich bin!
with wrath spoke the little-one 'now never-mind, where I am!

du hâst von dîner hende ein vingerlîn gegeben,
thou hast from thy hand a little-ring given,

daz du niht überwindest, und soltu lange leben.
that thou not overcomest, if shalt-thou long live.

143 Dô du mich êrste vienge und mich dîn ouge sach,
When thou me first caughtest and me thy eye saw,

von disem selben steine daz gelücke dir geschach.
from this same stone the fortune to-thee happened.

ich müest dir immer dienen hiets du daz vingerlîn.
I must to-thee ever serve should-have-it thou the little-ring.

nu hebe dich, swar du wellest: ez wirt nie mêre dîn.'
now raise thyself, wherever thou wilt: it becomes never more thine.'

144 Dô sprach von Lamparten der künic Ortnît
Then spoke of Lombardy the king Ortnit

'lât mich des geniezen daz ir ein künic sît,
'let me of-it profit that you a king be,

sît ich ûf iuwer triuwe mich hie gelâzen hân.
since I on your faith myself here let have.

swaz ich noch guotes hiete, daz wære iu undertân.'
whatever I yet of-good had, that were to-you subject.'

Mit zühten sprach der kleine 'du hâst niht wîsen muot. 145
With courtesies spoke the little-one 'thou hast not wise spirit.

swaz dir dîn vater rætet und dîn muoter, daz ist guot.
whatever thee thy father counsels and thy mother, that is good.

wâ sæhe du ûz henden ie geben gewunnez spil?
where sawest thou out-of hands ever give won game?

mir ist der stein sô nutze, daz ich dirz niht geben wil.'
to-me is the stone so useful, that I thee-it not give will.'

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'sô bin ich ungewert. 146
Then spoke the Lombard 'so am I ungranted.

wil du mir aber bringen den halsperc und daz swert?
wilt thou however to-me bring the hauberk and the sword?

daz du mir hâst geheizen, des mache ein teil doch wâr!'
which thou to-me hast promised, of-that make a part yet true!'

'ich kêr mich' sprach der kleine 'an dîn rede niht umb ein hâr.'
'I turn myself' spoke the little-one 'to thy speech not by a hair.'

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'mir ist übele nu geschehen. 147
Then spoke the Lombard 'to-me is ill now happened.

möhte ich dich erloufen od kunde ich dich gesehen,
might I thee overtake or could I thee see,

daz du mir hâst geheizen, daz müesest du mir tragen,
what thou to-me hast promised, that must thou to-me carry,

od du wurdest bî dem beine vaste umb disen stein geslagen.'
or thou becamest by the leg fast against this stone struck.'

148 ‘Zwiu solten dir die ringe?’ sprach aber Alberîch
‘To-what should to-thee the rings?’ spoke again Alberich

‘oder waz sol einem tôren sô hôhez künicrîch?
‘or what shall to-a fool so high kingdom?

ich wil die ringe senden einem der ir baz bedarf.’
I will the rings send to-one who of-them better needs.’

mit ungefüegen steinen er im dô nâch warf.
with monstrous stones he him then after threw.

149 Dô gurte er sînem rosse in zornegem muote baz.
Then girthed he his horse in angry spirit better.

von danne wolte er rîten, in zorne er dar ûf saz.
from thence would he ride, in wrath he there on sat.

in vil grimmen muote reit der künic rîch.
in very grim spirit rode the king rich.

‘hêr, guot man, belîbet!’ sprach aber Alberîch.
‘sir, good man, stay!’ spoke again Alberich.

150 ‘Wem wil du nu lâzen dîn liebez vingerlîn?
‘To-whom wilt thou now leave thy dear little-ring?

od wer sol dir hulde gewinnen umb die muoter dîn?
or who shall to-thee favor win with the mother thine?

du mahtz ungerne vliesen: der stein ist alsô guot.
thou mayest-it unwillingly lose: the stone is so good.

wie mich die slege erbarment, die dir dîn muoter tuot!
how me the blows grieve, that to-thee thy mother does!

151 Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘des muoz ich mich verwegen.
Then spoke the Lombard ‘of-that must I myself resign.

ich bin doch mîner muoter sô nâhen bî gelegen,
I am yet to-my mother so near by lain,

daz ich billîche lîde swaz mir von ir geschiht.
that I rightly suffer whatever to-me from her happens.

wir sîn gefriunt sô guote, si sleht mich ze tôde niht!'
we are befriended so good, she strikes me to death not!'

'Ich wil dich baz getrœsten' sprach dô Alberîch. 152
'I will thee better comfort' spoke then Alberich.

'gip mir des dîn triuwe, gewalteger künic rîch,
'give me for-that thy faith, mighty king rich,

daz du des niht enzürnest, swaz ich von der muoter dîn
that thou of-it not angerest, whatever I of the mother thine

red oder müge gesprechen: sô gibe ich dir daz vingerlîn'.
speak or may say: so give I to-thee the little-ring'.

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich liez dir ê dîn golt. 153
Then spoke the Lombard 'I left thee rather thy gold.

und maht ouch reden sô übele, ich wurd dir nimmer holt.
if mayst also speak so ill, I became to-thee never favorable.

du maht sô sêre strâfen daz tugentrîche wîp:
thou mayst so sorely rebuke the virtue-rich woman:

west ich wâ ich dich funde, ich næm dir dînen lîp.'
knew I where I thee found, I took from-thee thy body.'

Mit zühten sprach der kleine 'ôwol dir, sælic kint, 154
With courtesies spoke the little-one 'oh-well thee, blessed child,

du hâst der triuwen eine, dâ die liute behalten sint.'
thou hast of-the faiths one, where the people kept are.'

dô sprach der Lamparte 'jâ muoz ichz nu vertragen
then spoke the Lombard 'yea must I-it now bear

swaz du von ir sprichest. wenne wilt die wârheit sagen?'
whatever thou of her speakest. when wilt the truth say?'

155 ‘Ich sage von dîner muoter niht wan die wârheit.
‘I say of thy mother nothing but the truth.

du zürnest eine wîle, und wirt dir doch nimmer leit.
thou art-angry a while, and becomes to-thee yet never loath.

ich mach dirz alsô süeze, daz duz wol hœren muost.
I make thee-it so sweet, that thou-it well hear must.

gip mir des dîn triuwe, daz du mir iht entuost’.
give me for-that thy faith, that thou to-me anything not-dost’.

156 Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘ich wil dirs mîn triuwe geben,
Then spoke the Lombard ‘I will to-thee-of-it my faith give,

daz ich dich niht erzürne al die wîl wir leben.
that I thee not anger all the while we live.

ein man mac des wâren reden alsô vil,
a man may of-the true speak so much,

du maht reden alsô lange, daz ichs niht hœren wil’.
thou mayst speak so long, that I-it not hear will’.

157 Mit zühten sprach der kleine ‘ez muoz nu gelobet sîn.
With courtesies spoke the little-one ‘it must now promised be.

ich warte ûf dîne triuwe, sê hin dîn vingerlîn!’
I wait on thy faith, see there thy little-ring!’

dô sprach der Lamparte ‘sô bin ich dir holt.
then spoke the Lombard ‘so am I to-thee favorable.

ich enruoch waz du geklaffest, und wirt mir wider daz golt’.
I not-care what thou babblest, if becomes to-me back the gold’.

158 Der Lamparte listic und ouch der starke was.
The Lombard cunning and also the strong was.

daz golt muost er im bieten: dô warf ern ûf daz gras.
the gold must he to-him offer: then threw he-it onto the grass.

zuo im gesaz er nidere ‘nu sage mir, bœser geist,
to him sat he down ‘now tell me, evil spirit,

ê ich dich tâlanc lâze, du sage mir swaz du weist’.
before I thee today let-go, thou tell me whatever thou knowest’.

Daz golt an sînen vinger der Lamparte stiez. 159
The gold onto his finger the Lombard thrust.

alrêrst sach er den kleinen, von im er in niht liez.
first-of-all saw he the little-one, from him he him not let.

dô sprach der wilde wîse ‘hêr künec, wie sêre ir tobt!
then spoke the wild wise-one ‘sir king, how sorely you rage!

nu hüetet iuwer triuwe! waz habt ir mir gelobt?’
now guard your faith! what have you to-me promised?’

Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘geselle, ich tuon dir niht, 160
Then spoke the Lombard ‘companion, I do to-thee nothing,

und freut sich mîn herze swenn dich mîn ouge an siht.
and rejoices itself my heart whenever thee my eye at sees.

mir ist dîn lîp noch lieber dan daz vingerlîn.
to-me is thy body yet dearer than the little-ring.

sage allez daz du wizzest von der lieben muoter mîn’.
tell all that thou knowest of the dear mother mine’.

‘Sô sage ich dîn muoter vor allem wandel vrî. 161
‘So declare I thy mother of all blemish free.

ich wæn ein wîp sô guote in Lamparten ninder sî.
I think a woman so good in Lombardy nowhere be.

doch hât si ein teil dinges in iren tagen getân:
yet has she a part of-thing in her days done:

sich, wer dîn vater wære? si het zwêne man.’
see, who thy father were? she had two men.’

162 Dô greif er in daz mezzer, dô greif er in daz swert.
Then grasped he at the knife, then grasped he at the sword.

der kleine wære lâzens von im gerne gewert.
the little-one were of-release from him gladly granted.

do erbleichte im sîn varwe, er wart vil dicke rôt.
then paled to-him his color, he became very often red.

er sprach 'nu sage niht mêre und lâ mich âne nôt'.
he spoke 'now say not more and let me without distress'.

163 'Ich fürhte mir niht sêre' sprach der lützel Alberîch.
'I fear for-myself not sorely' spoke the little Alberich.

'nu schône dîner triuwe, biderber künic rîch.
'now spare thy faith, worthy king rich.

sich verkêret harte dicke iwer herze und iuwer muot,
itself turns very often your heart and your spirit,

und sît doch sô getriuwe, daz ir mir niht entuot.
and be yet so faithful, that you to-me nothing do.

164 Ich dunke iuch gar ze kleine und sît über mich ze grôz,
I seem to-you wholly too small and be over me too great,

und sît über alle künege baz danne risen genôz.
and be over all kings better than giants' peer.

unser lide an uns beiden vil ungelîche sint.
our limbs on us both very unlike are.

swie grôz ab ir iuch dunket, sô sît ir doch mîn kint'.
however great however you yourselves seem, so be you yet my child'.

165 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'du hâst iezuo gelogen.
Then spoke the Lombard 'thou hast now lied.

bræche ich niht mîn triuwe und wær niht ungezogen,
should-break I not my faith and were not ill-bred,

mîn herze ist ungefüege und tar doch niht getuon'.
my heart is monstrous and dares yet not do'.

er sprach ûz zornes munde 'und bin ab ichz dîn suon?'
he spoke out-of wrath's mouth 'and am however I-it thy son?'

Mit zühten sprach der kleine 'du bist mîn kindelîn'. 166
With courtesies spoke the little-one 'thou art my little-child'.

'des muoz ûf einer hürde brinnen diu muoter mîn,
'for-that must on a hurdle burn the mother mine,

daz bî ir iemen mêre für mînen vater lac.
that by her anyone more for my father lay.

und vinde ich si ze Garte, si geniuzt sîn nimmer tac'.
if find I her at Garda, she enjoys of-it never day'.

Mit zorne sprach der kleine 'du bist hie âne sin. 167
With wrath spoke the little-one 'thou art here without mind.

du bist dâ von gehôhet, daz ich dîn vater bin.
thou art there from exalted, that I thy father am.

dîn sælde und dîn gelücke ist dir unbekant.
thy bliss and thy fortune is to-thee unknown.

du hâst von mîner lêre beidiu bürge unt lant.
thou hast from my teaching both castles and land.

Dô ich bî dîner muoter alrêrste ie gelac, 168
When I by thy mother first-of-all ever lay,

daz was in grüenem meien umb einen mitten tac.
that was in green May about a mid day.

si weinte harte heize dô ichs alrêrst betwanc.
she wept very hotly when I-her first-of-all overpowered.

du solt mit ir niht zürnen, ez geschach ân iren danc.
thou shalt with her not be-angry, it happened without her consent.

169 Dînen vater und dîn muoter diu hôrte ich sêre biten
Thy father and thy mother them heard I sorely pray

nâch alteclîchem orden in trûriclîchen siten,
after age-old order in sorrowful manners,

daz in got bescherte ein kleinez kindelîn.
that to-them God granted a small little-child.

des bat dîn vater sêre und ouch diu muoter dîn.
for-that prayed thy father sorely and also the mother thine.

170 Swie liep si einander wâren, doch wil ich rehte sagen,
However dear they to-one-another were, yet will I rightly say,

diu frouwe von dem manne moht kindes niht bejagen.
the lady from the man might of-child not win.

doch was si ouch sô gehiure dazs ir keinen mêr erkôs.
yet was she also so gentle that-she of-them no more chose.

si klagten beidiu tiure daz ir lant wurde erbelôs.
they lamented both dearly that their land became heirless.

171 Ich gedâhte in mînem muote "und stirbet nu der man,
I thought in my mind "if dies now the man,

sô wirt zehant verstôzen diu frouwe wol getân:
so is forthwith cast-out the lady well made:

daz lant muoz immer mêre mit unsælden leben".
the land must ever more with misfortunes live".

do gewan ich si ze wîbe: daz sol mir got vergeben.
then took I her as woman: that shall to-me God forgive.

172 An ir schœnem bette si eines tages saz.
On her fair bed she one day sat.

si wunscht nâch liebem kinde, ir ougen wurden naz.
she wished for dear child, her eyes became wet.

in der kemenâte torst niemen bî ir sîn,
in the chamber dared no-one by her be,

durch daz si weinen muoste; dâ liez si niemen în.
for that she weep must; there let she no-one in.

Dô stuont ich vor ir bette und hôrt waz si dô sprach. 173
Then stood I before her bed and heard what she then spoke.

dâ von wart ich ir gwaltic, daz si mich niht ensach.
there from became I of-her powerful, that she me not saw.

swie sêre si sich werte, sô wart si doch mîn wîp:
however sorely she herself defended, so became she yet my woman:

nu nim mich alsô kleinen für zweier künege lîp.
now take me so small for two kings' body.

Ich trûwe mêr betwingen dan du und al dîn her: 174
I trust more to-overpower than thou and all thy host:

sich getar kein künec gesetzen wider dich ze wer'.
itself dares no king set against thee to defense'.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich muoz ez übersehen.
then spoke the Lombard 'I must it overlook.

swaz ich dar umbe tæte, sô wære ez doch geschehen'.
whatever I there for did, so were it yet happened'.

'Nu sitze, künec, ein wîle und behalt dîn vingerlîn, 175
'Now sit, king, a while and keep thy little-ring,

sô wil ich dir leisten daz gelübde mîn.
so will I to-thee perform the vow mine.

ich wil dir ûf mîn triuwe niht gelogener worte sagen:
I will to-thee on my faith no lying words say:

ich wil dir her die ringe ûf dînem schilte tragen.'
I will to-thee hither the rings on thy shield carry.'

176 Als schiere und im der kleine entweich dâ in den berc,
As soon and him the little-one escaped there into the mountain,

dô truoc er von der esse daz wunneclîche werc,
then carried he from the forge the delightful work,

von golde liehter ringe einen niuwen schilt vol,
of gold bright rings a new shield full,

als ez an sînem lîbe ein man ze rehte tragen sol.
as it on his body a man by right carry shall.

177 Lûter als ein brunne und lieht als ein glas
Clear as a spring and bright as a glass

sazte er im die ringe nider ûf daz gras.
set he for-him the rings down onto the grass.

zuo dem halsperge einen vesten helm lieht,
to the hauberk a firm helmet bright,

der was geworht sô veste, kein swert daz sneit sîn nieht.
that was wrought so firm, no sword that cut it at-all.

178 Dô was der Lamparte frô der ringe sîn.
Then was the Lombard glad of-the rings his.

er mohte ir niht geschouwen, sô schœne was ir schîn.
he might them not behold, so fair was their shine.

'ich wæne ez welle ein wunder' sprach er 'hie geschehen,
'I think there will a wonder' spoke he 'here happen,

ich mac vor liehtem glaste der ringe niht gesehen'.
I may for bright gleam of-the rings not see'.

179 Dô schouwete er die ringe, die wâren stâles blôz,
Then beheld he the rings, they were of-steel bare,

vil ungefüege dicke, guldîn, vingers grôz.
very monstrously thick, golden, finger's great.

do er si genuoc geschouwet, dô legte er si an.
when he them enough beheld, then laid he them on.

die ringe stuonden ebene: des freute sich der man.
the rings stood evenly: of-that rejoiced himself the man.

Si wâren gemezzen ze kurz noch ze lanc, 180
They were measured too short nor too long,

ze wîte noch ze enge. frœlîch er drinne spranc.
too wide nor too narrow. joyfully he therein sprang.

der helm was umbespenget: gelîch dem liehte erschein
the helmet was clasped-about: like the light shone

ûz iegelîchem orte ein karfunkelstein.
out-of each corner a carbuncle-stone.

In almitten drinne stuont ein adamant. 181
In all-middle therein stood an adamant.

sîn rieme was ein borte. den helm er ûf gebant.
its strap was a braid. the helmet he on bound.

'got lôn dir dîner gâbe' sprach der künic rîch.
'God reward thee for-thy gift' spoke the king rich.

'sint dir die ringe rehte?' sprach aber Alberîch.
'are to-thee the rings right?' spoke again Alberich.

'Mir wart bî mînen zîten nie wât als rehte brâht.' 182
'To-me was in my times never raiment so rightly brought.'

'ê ich dich ie gesæhe, dô hete ich dirs gedâht.
'before I thee ever saw, then had I thee-it intended.

nu hân ich wol gezieret, Lamparte, dînen lîp.
now have I well adorned, Lombard, thy body.

wil du daz ich dir diene, sô erzürne niht daz wîp.
(if)-wilt thou that I thee serve, so anger not the woman.

183 Ich gibe dir mîn triuwe, und erzürnst die muoter dîn,
I give to-thee my faith, if angerest-thou the mother thine,
sô müeze wir gescheiden immer mêre sîn.'
so may we parted ever more be.'
dô sprach der Lamparte 'gern leiste ich dîn gebot.
then spoke the Lombard 'gladly perform I thy command.
ê daz ich si erzurnde, ich erzurnde lieber got.
before that I her angered, I angered rather God.

184 Got lône mîner muoter, von der ich die gâbe hân!
God reward my mother, from whom I the gift have!
ich wil mich alles dinges an dîne genâde lân.
I will myself in-all things on thy grace rely.
wider dînen willen mîn herze nimmer strebt.
against thy will my heart never strives.
mîn muoter dîn geniuzet die wîle daz si lebt.'
my mother of-thee profits the while that she lives.'

185 Der Lamparte in freuden ze sînem rosse greif.
The Lombard in joys to his horse grasped.
dô wolte im der kleine haben den stegereif.
then would for-him the little-one have the stirrup.
dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich stên hie disen tac,
then spoke the Lombard 'I stand here this day,
nu ich dir mit nihte anders dîn dienst erweren mac'.
now I thee with nothing else thy service forbid may'.

186 Mit unverzagtem muote gurt er dem rosse baz.
With undaunted spirit girthed he the horse better.
dô rûmete im der wilde unz er dar ûf gesaz.
then made-room for-him the wild-one until he there on sat.

dô sprach der Lamparte ‘nu reiche mir den schilt’.
then spoke the Lombard ‘now hand me the shield’.

‘ich sihe wol’ sprach der kleine ‘daz du von mir wilt.’
‘I see well’ spoke the little-one ‘that thou from me wilt.’

Ê er den schilt enphienge, dô schouwete er sîn swert. 187
Before he the shield received, then beheld he his sword.

er sprach ‘ich bin in nœten ze strîte wol gewert.
he spoke ‘I am in needs for battle well granted.

swer mit der Rôsen fliuhet, der muoz sich immer schamen.’
whoever with the Rose flees, he must himself ever be-ashamed.’

dô vant er beidenthalben geschriben sînen namen.
then found he on-both-sides written his name.

Guldîn was sîn scheide. daz der vezzel solte sîn, 188
Golden was its scabbard. what the baldric should be,

daz was durchslagen von golde ein borte sîdîn.
that was shot-through with gold a braid silken.

daz oberhalp der helzen was des swertes klôz,
what above the hilts was the sword’s pommel,

daz was ein karfunkel wol einer viuste grôz.
that was a carbuncle well a fist’s great.

Den schilt nam er ze halse. dô wolte er von im dan. 189
The shield took he to neck. then would he from him thence.

‘got müeze dich gesegnen’ sprach der kleine man.
‘God may thee bless’ spoke the little man.

‘du solt mich nu niht mîden, als du bedurfest mîn:
‘thou shalt me now not shun, when thou needest me:

du maht mich nimmer vliesen, hâst du daz vingerlîn.’
thou mayst me never lose, (if)-hast thou the little-ring.’

190 Der Lamparte kêrte dô vor im in den walt.
The Lombard turned then before him into the wood.

sîn muot der was ringe, sîn freude manicvalt.
his spirit it was light, his joy manifold.

er sprach 'ich bin ze strîte alrêrste nu gewert.
he spoke 'I am for battle first-of-all now granted.

war kome ich deich versuoche mîn harnasch und mîn swert?'
whither came I that-I try my armor and my sword?'

191 Sîn phat daz reit er widere neben der steinwant.
His path that rode he back beside the rock-wall.

er was in ungemüete do er niht ze strîten vant.
he was in ill-humor when he nothing to fight found.

er sprach 'sol ich daz wunder von dem swerte niht gesehen?
he spoke 'shall I the wonder of the sword not see?

mit mir enstrîtet niemen, ez muoz vor der bürge geschehen.'
with me fights no-one, it must before the castle happen.'

192 Für sich reit er nâch strîte unz an den dritten tac,
Before himself rode he after battle until to the third day,

daz er von übermüete deheiner ruowe pflac
that he from arrogance no rest took

dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich vil unsælic man,
then spoke the Lombard 'I very unblessed man,

daz ich nâch mînem willen niht ze vehten hân!'
that I after my will nothing to fight have!'

193 Die sîn unsanfte enbâren, die wâren gar verzeit.
Who him uneasily missed, they were wholly daunted.

die im niht guotes gunden, die heten in verkleit.
who to-him nothing good granted, they had him lamented.

ze Garte und in dem lande was jæmerlîchiu nôt:
at Garda and in the land was woeful distress:

si wânden alle gelîche der künic wære tôt.
they thought all alike the king were dead.

Jæmerlîche swære het diu muoter sîn. 194
Woeful heaviness had the mother his.

getrœsten niemen kunde die edeln künigîn.
comfort no-one could the noble queen.

die nôt leit nâch ir kinde daz tugentrîche wîp:
the distress suffered for her child the virtue-rich woman:

wær er niht komen schiere, si hiet verlorn den lîp.
were he not come soon, she had lost the life.

An dem vierden morgen der Lamparte reit 195
On the fourth morning the Lombard rode

für die burc ze Garte in die grüenen ouwe breit.
before the castle at Garda into the green meadow broad.

als der morgensterne durch vinster wolken brach,
as the morning-star through dark clouds broke,

dem sterne schein gelîche sîn schilt und ouch sîn dach.
to-the star shone alike his shield and also his roof.

Dô was dem wahtære der gast vil unbekant. 196
Then was to-the watchman the guest very unknown.

gelîch dem morgenblicke lûht im allez sîn gewant.
like the morning-gleam shone to-him all his clothing.

für die burc ze Garte reit er in daz grüene hac.
before the castle at Garda rode he into the green hedge.

daz ros hafte er vaste: dô wart ez liehter tac.
the horse tied he fast: then became it brighter day.

197 Er gie mit gewalte unz an den burcgraben
He went with force until to the castle-moat

gelîch als er die mûre wolte erstürmet haben.
like as he the wall would stormed have.

'und trüegt ir' sprach der wahter 'immer fiurînen schîn,
'if should-bear you' spoke the watchman 'ever fiery shine,

swie vaste ab ir nu dringet, iuch enlæt doch niemen în.'
however hard however you now press, you lets yet no-one in.'

198 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'nu sliuz ûf mir daz tor
Then spoke the Lombard 'now unlock up for-me the gate

und sage den besten allen, ir hêrre sî hie vor.'
and tell the best all, their lord be here before.'

der wahter rief vil lûte 'wes slæfet disiu diet?
the watchman called very loudly 'why sleeps this people?

ez ist hiute der vierde morgen daz mîn hêrre hinne schiet.
it is today the fourth morning that my lord hence parted.

199 Vor diser burcmûre stât ein vil küener man,
Before this castle-wall stands a very bold man,

von fuoze unz an daz houbet ist er gezundet an:
from foot until to the head is he kindled on:

er giht, er sî mîn hêrre, als ichz von im hân vernomen.
he declares, he be my lord, as I-it from him have heard.

erst lîhte dem tiuvel entrunnen und ûz der helle komen.'
he-is perhaps from-the devil escaped and out-of the hell come.'

200 In sorgen dô erwachte diu edel künigîn.
In cares then awoke the noble queen.

si luogte durch daz venster. dô si ersach den schîn,
she peered through the window. when she saw the shine,

si sprach ‘sê hin, der brinnet als ein kerzenlieht.
she spoke ‘see there, he burns like a candle-light.

mînes sunes ringe sint sô schœne nieht.’
my son’s rings are so fair not.’

Die in der bürge wâren, beidiu wîp unt man, 201
Who in the castle were, both women and men,

die giengen durch daz wunder ûf an die zinne stân.
they went for the wonder up on the battlements stand.

dô sprach der burgrâve ‘hêr, wer müget ir sîn?
then spoke the burgrave ‘sir, who may you be?

ir müezt iuch alrêrst nennen, ê wir iuch lâzen în.’
you must yourselves first-of-all name, before we you let in.’

Sîn stimme sich verkêrte, sîn rede diu was grôz: 202
His voice itself changed, his speech it was great:

sîn houbet under helme het ungefüegen dôz.
his head under helmet had monstrous sound.

dô sprach der burgrâve ‘nu sagt, hêrre, wer ir sît?’
then spoke the burgrave ‘now say, lord, who you be?’

dô sprach der Lamparte ‘ich binz dîn hêrre Ortnit.’
then spoke the Lombard ‘I am-it thy lord Ortnit.’

‘Wer gap iu dise brünne und disen helm lieht 203
‘Who gave you this mail-shirt and this helmet bright

und ouch den schilt niuwen? des entruoc mîn hêrre nieht.’
and also the shield new? that bore my lord not.’

dô sprach der degen küene ‘ich wil dir die wârheit sagen,
then spoke the thane bold ‘I will to-thee the truth say,

ich binz ein wilder heiden und hân den hêrren dîn erslagen.
I am-it a wild heathen and have the lord thine slain.

204 Nu sint ûf diser bürge zwên und sibenzic dienstman:
Now are on this castle two and seventy ministerials:

die suln den schaden rechen, den ich ir hêrren hân getân.
who shall the harm avenge, which I their lord have done.

die hât der Lamparte alle mir genant und gezelt.
them has the Lombard all to-me named and counted.

ich bîte vor der porte, ob ir in rechen welt.'
I wait before the gate, if you him avenge will.'

205 Dô sprach der burcgrâve 'entriuwen, ez muoz sîn.'
Then spoke the burgrave 'in-faith, it must be.'

alrêrst sluoc sich zen brüsten diu arme künigîn.
first-of-all struck herself on-the breasts the poor queen.

dô tet den vil getriuwen irs hêrren sterben wê.
then did to-the very faithful their lord's dying woe.

dô sloufte er an die ringe wîz alsô der snê.
then slipped he into the rings white as the snow.

206 Daz tor unz an den angel er ûf mit zorne warf.
The gate until to the hinge he up with wrath threw.

si gezucten ûf der brücke zwô schœne klingen scharf.
they drew on the bridge two fair blades sharp.

swie küene der wirt wære, doch erzurnde in der gast:
however bold the host were, yet angered him the guest:

er schriet von im die ringe reht als daz fûle bast.
he cut from him the rings right as the rotten bast.

207 Er sluoc vil vaste widere, sîn swert was aber enwiht
He struck very hard back, his sword was however naught

ûf sînen erbehêrren und verschriet der ringe niht.
on his hereditary-lord and cut of-the rings nothing.

er sluoc in für die füeze, er hiete in sanfte erslagen.
he struck him before the feet, he had him easily slain.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'nu heiz in von mir tragen.'
then spoke the Lombard 'now bid him from me carry.'

Hiet er im niht erbarmet, er hiet im den lîp benomen. 208
Had he for-him not pitied, he had from-him the life taken.

in des was ouch gewâfent der ander bruoder komen.
in that was also armed the other brother come.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'des strîtes ist genuoc.
then spoke the Lombard 'of-the battle is enough.

nu müeze ez got erbarmen, daz ich in hiute gesluoc.
now may it God pity, that I him today struck.

Alrêrst wil ich gelouben daz ir mir getriuwe sît. 209
First-of-all will I believe that you to-me faithful be.

nu vergebt mir dise untugende, jâ bin ichz Ortnît.'
now forgive me this misdeed, yea am I-it Ortnit.'

alrêrst si in bekanden, si liezen in dô în.
first-of-all they him recognized, they let him then in.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'wâ ist diu muoter mîn?'
then spoke the Lombard 'where is the mother mine?'

Dô wart vil wol enphangen der hêrre sâ zehant. 210
Then was very well received the lord at-once forthwith.

dô wîsten in die liute da er sîne muoter vant.
then showed him the people where he his mother found.

diu frouwe in schiere bekande, sîn houbet daz was blôz:
the lady him soon recognized, his head that was bare:

dô wart alrêrst von liebe der frouwen weinen grôz.
then became first-of-all from love the lady's weeping great.

211 Dô gie er über den wunden, der vor im verhouwen lac.
Then went he over the wounded-one, who before him hewn lay.

‘ouwê daz ich dir hiute gesluoc deheinen slac!
‘alas that I thee today struck any blow!

daz müeze got erbarmen. du solt mirz vergeben:
that may God pity. thou shalt me-it forgive:

ich wil dichs immer mêre ergetzen, sol ich leben.’
I will thee-for-it ever more requite, (if)-shall I live.’

212 ‘Nu sage mir’ sprach diu muoter, ‘wer gap dir daz gewant?’
‘Now tell me’ spoke the mother, ‘who gave thee the clothing?’

‘ich reit als du mich hieze, neben der steinwant.
‘I rode as thou me bade, beside the rock-wall.

dâ hân ich dîn genozzen, daz ich dir vil wæge bin.’
there have I of-thee profited, that I to-thee very favorable am.’

Ortnîdes âventiure ist aber einiu hin.
Ortnit’s adventure is again one gone.

Ortnit III

III · THE VOYAGE TO SUDERS

Ortnit's mother asks where he won his armor, and when he has told her all that befell him she cannot deny the truth and puts herself in his grace. When the time comes he leaves his mother and the land to the margrave and sails from Messina with his host. Off Suders he despairs at having left Alberich behind, until the dwarf, who had sat hidden in the masthead, stands beside him and shows himself to Ilias through the ring. Alberich gives Ortnit a stone that teaches him every tongue, and Ortnit poses as a merchant to win safe-conduct into the harbor. Alberich, invisible, goes to Muntabur to declare war on Machorel for his daughter, escapes the heathens' stones and spears, and slaps the old king before he leaves.

213

Sîn muoter frâgte in dicke 'wâ næme du daz dach?'
His mother asked him often 'where tookest thou the roof?'

dô sagte er ir von êrste allez daz im dort geschach.
then told he her from first all that to-him there happened.

'ich mac dirz niht gelougen' sprach daz schœne wîp,
'I may thee-it not deny' spoke the fair woman,

'ich wil in dîne genâde setzen mînen lîp.'
'I will into thy grace set my body.'

214

Si halsten unde kusten, unz er ir vriunt wart.
They embraced and kissed, until he her friend became.

do begunde ez schiere nâhen sîner hervart:
then began it soon to-approach his army-journey:

doch beit er ûf Garte unz umbe kom daz jâr.
yet waited he on Garda until about came the year.

die mit im varn solden, die kômen alle dar.
who with him go should, they came all thither.

215 Er enphalch dem margrâven sîn muoter und daz lant.
He commended to-the margrave his mother and the land.

die hêrren swuorn im hulde. do urloubte er sich zehant
the lords swore to-him homage. then took-leave he himself forthwith

mit sînen schargenôzen zuo der muoter sîn.
with his comrades to the mother his.

er fuor mit sînen holden in die habe ze Messîn.
he went with his liegemen into the harbor at Messina.

216 Do enphie in minneclîchen der heidenische man.
Then received him lovingly the heathenish man.

die kiele er im bereite. zehant huop er sich dan.
the keels he for-him prepared. forthwith raised he himself thence.

im wâren ze drîn jâren die kiele wol geladen,
for-him were for three years the keels well loaded,

die anker si dô lôsten und fluzzen von dem staden.
the anchors they then loosed and sailed from the shore.

217 Dô fuor der Lamparte mit freuden und sîn her.
Then went the Lombard with joys and his host.

an dem zwelften morgen dô kom er über mer.
on the twelfth morning then came he over sea.

an des masboumes ende ein marner oben trat:
at the mast's end a mariner above stepped:

er sach die burc ze Suders und des heiden houbetstat.
he saw the castle at Suders and the heathen's capital.

Er rief in lûter stimme ‘waz sol uns geschehen? 218
He called in loud voice ‘what shall to-us happen?
ich hân ze Sürîe daz wîte lant gesehen
I have at Syria the wide land seen
und ouch die stat ze Suders: der sî wir nâhen bî,
and also the city at Suders: to-which be we near by,
daz man sol alsô fliezen daz man ân angest sî.’
that one shall so sail that one without fear be.’

Dô sprach der marnære der der scheffe phlac 219
Then spoke the mariner who of-the ships took-care
‘wæn ich iu niht guotes nu gerâten mac.
‘think I you nothing good now counsel may.
der wint sleht uns ze verre: sô kom wir nimmer wider.’
the wind strikes us too far: so come we never back.’
er sprach ze sînen knehten ‘nu lât die segele nider.’
he spoke to his servants ‘now let the sails down.’

Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘ist aber dir bekant, 220
Then spoke the Lombard ‘is however to-thee known,
sî wir geflozzen rehte ze Sürîe in daz lant?
be we sailed rightly to Syria into the land?
und seist du mir niht rehte, ez gêt dir an daz leben.
if tellest thou me not rightly, it goes to-thee at the life.
ich wil dir zwelf bouge ze botenbrôte geben.’
I will to-thee twelve rings as messenger’s-bread give.’

‘Nu sî wir rehte geflozzen ze Suders gên der habe. 221
‘Now be we rightly sailed at Suders toward the harbor.
ich wil dir widerrâten, daz du iht sitzest abe.
I will thee advise-against, that thou anything sittest down.

ouch wæne wir ze nâhen der stat geflozzen sîn:
also think we too near the city sailed be:

ze Suders in der veste ist manic roupgalîn.'
at Suders in the fortress is many-a robber-galley.'

222 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'mir ist niht künde wol.
Then spoke the Lombard 'to-me is nothing known well.

swie gerne ich fürbaz füere, ich weiz niht war ich sol.
however gladly I further went, I know not whither I shall.

den ich mir het ze meister ûf dirre verte erkorn,
whom I for-myself had as master on this journey chosen,

der mich dâ lêren solde, den hân ich leider vlorn.
who me there teach should, him have I alas lost.

223 Ich solte wider kêren. waz hilfet mich mîn vart?
I should back turn. what helps me my journey?

ich hân mich zuo der verte leider niht bewart.'
I have myself for the journey alas not guarded.'

mit trûriclîchem muote er gar bevangen was.
with sorrowful spirit he wholly seized was.

'du maht dich selbe trœsten' sprach von Riuzen Ŷljas.
'thou mayst thyself self comfort' spoke of Russia Ilias.

224 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'leider ich enmac!
Then spoke the Lombard 'alas I not-can!

nu müeze ez got erbarmen deich gelebte ie disen tac.
now may it God pity that-I lived ever this day.

der mir dâ helfen solde von den sorgen mîn,
who me there help should from the cares mine,

der ist mir ze verre: ich hân dort vergezzen sîn.'
he is to-me too far: I have there forgotten him.'

Mit zorne sprach der Riuze ‘du hâst doch alle die, 225
With wrath spoke the Russian ‘thou hast yet all those,

die dir dâ helfen solden, die hâst ouch bî dir hie.
who thee there help should, them hast also by thee here.

ze sturme und ze strîte hâstu wol bewart
for assault and for battle hast-thou well guarded

in liehten stâlringen drîzic tûsent wol geschart.’
in bright steel-rings thirty thousand well arrayed.’

‘Ich hân verlorn daz beste’ sprach der künic rîch. 226
‘I have lost the best’ spoke the king rich.

mit jâmer sach er umbe: bî im stuont Alberîch.
with sorrow saw he around: by him stood Alberich.

dô wart der Lamparte sô rîch und ouch sô frô
then became the Lombard so rich and also so glad

daz er vergaz der sorgen. vil lûte rief er dô
that he forgot the cares. very loudly called he then

‘Vater unde hêrre, wer hât dich her brâht? 227
‘Father and lord, who has thee hither brought?

alrêrste wil ich lachen, und was mirs ungedâht.’
first-of-all will I laugh, and was to-me-it unthought.’

er huop in ûf die arme und kuste in tûsent stunt.
he raised him up the arms and kissed him a-thousand times.

mit zühten sprach der kleine ‘helt, dir ist niht kunt,
with courtesies spoke the little-one ‘hero, to-thee is not known,

Daz ich sô grôze triuwe ze dînem lîbe hân. 228
That I so great faith for thy body have.

du læst mich harte lîhte, sô wil ich dich niht lân.
thou leavest me very easily, so will I thee not leave.

du vergizzest mîn vil dicke, sô vergaz ich dîn nie.
thou forgettest me very often, so forgot I thee never.
enphâch mich swie du wellest, ich bin doch bî dir hie.'
receive me however thou wilt, I am yet by thee here.'

229 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'durch got berihte mich.
Then spoke the Lombard 'for God inform me.
sage mir ûf dîn triuwe, wâ hâst verborgen dich?'
tell me on thy faith, where hast hidden thyself?'
'oben ûf dem masboume in der keibe ich saz:
'above on the mast in the top I sat:
ich hiet mich wol gewîset, wan daz ich dich versuochte baz'.
I had myself well shown, but that I thee tested better'.

230 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'nu wis mir willekomen.
Then spoke the Lombard 'now be to-me welcome.
daz ich dich hie hân funden, daz muoz mir immer fromen.
that I thee here have found, that must me ever profit.
mir was vil wê ze muote daz ich dîn ænic was.'
to-me was very woe at heart that I of-thee bereft was.'
'mit wem hâstu gerûnet?' sprach von Riuzen Ŷljas.
'with whom hast-thou whispered?' spoke of Russia Ilias.

231 'Du maht dâ von verliesen lîhte dînen lîp.
'Thou mayst there from lose perhaps thy life.
wâfen sî gerüefet über daz selbe wîp!
alarm be called over the same woman!
daz ich dirz ie genande, daz wil ich gote klagen.'
that I to-thee-her ever named, that will I to-God lament.'
dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich wil dir guotiu mære sagen.'
then spoke the Lombard 'I will to-thee good tidings tell.'

‘Sage imz ûf sîn triuwe’ sprach aber Alberîch, 232
‘Tell him-it on his faith’ spoke again Alberich,

‘daz ich dir helfen welle der küniginne rîch.
‘that I thee help will to-the queen rich.

ich weiz in sô getriuwen, er treit dir keinen haz.
I know him so faithful, he bears to-thee no hate.

swenn ir mich beide wizzet, sô ist iu dester baz.’
whenever you me both know, so is to-you the-more better.’

Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘œheim, nu ginc her. 233
Then spoke the Lombard ‘uncle, now go hither.

wil du mirs immer danken, ich sage dir guotiu mær.
(if)-wilt thou me-for-it ever thank, I tell to-thee good tidings.

du wænst ich habe gerûnet mit mir alters ein:
thou thinkest I have whispered with me all alone:

wil du diu mær nu hœren, sô trit her zuo uns zwein.’
(if)-wilt thou the tidings now hear, so step hither to us two.’

‘Sag an’ sprach der Riuze, ‘wer ist mit dir dâ? 234
‘Tell on’ spoke the Russian, ‘who is with thee there?

mit dîner âspræche machest du mich grâ.’
with thy speaking makest thou me gray.’

der Lamparte den Riuzen vil kûme des erbat,
the Lombard the Russian very hardly of-it besought,

daz er zuo dem kleinen und zuo dem grôzen trat.
that he to the little-one and to the great-one stepped.

Dô rief des scheffes hêrre ‘nu gebt iu selben rât! 235
Then called the ship’s lord ‘now give you selves counsel!

ich wæne der künic rîche deheine sorge hât.
I think the king rich no care has.

welt ir mit den heiden strîten ûf dem mer,
(if)-will you with the heathens fight on the sea,

sô warnet iuch ze sturme: iu kumt vil schiere ein her.
so prepare yourselves for assault: to-you comes very soon a host.

236 Si koment mit wildem fiure, der strît ist iu niht guot.
They come with wild fire, the battle is to-you not good.

si brennent uns die kiele, sô müeze wir enfluot.'
they burn us the keels, so may we in-the-flood.'

dô stuonden in den sorgen die zwêne künege rîch.
then stood in the cares the two kings rich.

'ich kan iu wol gerâten' sprach aber Alberîch.
'I can you well counsel' spoke again Alberich.

237 'Guotes friundes lêre ie guot ze nœten was.'
'Good friend's teaching ever good in needs was.'

sich begunde segenen von Riuzen Ŷljas.
himself began to-cross of Russia Ilias.

'wer ist der uns die lêre und ouch die ræte gît?
'who is he-who us the teaching and also the counsels gives?

wil du dich niht segenen, œheim Ortnît?
wilt thou thyself not cross, nephew Ortnit?

238 Ez ist der zweier einez der tievel oder got.
It is of-the two one the devil or God.

sag an, bistu gehiure? sô leist ich dîn gebot.'
say on, art-thou gentle? so perform I thy command.'

dô sprach der Lamparte 'jâ ist ez ein getwerc.
then spoke the Lombard 'yea is it a dwarf.

im ist kunt in der werlde manic tal unt berc.'
to-him is known in the world many-a dale and hill.'

‘Entriuwen’ sprach der Riuze, ‘des hœre ich dich nu jehen, 239
‘In-faith’ spoke the Russian, ‘that hear I thee now avow,

sol ich daz gelouben, ich muoz alrêrst besehen.’
(if)-shall I that believe, I must first-of-all look.’

dô sprach der Lamparte ‘hœrest du sîn niht?’
then spoke the Lombard ‘hearest thou him not?’

‘ich weiz niht waz ez meinet unz ez mîn ouge an siht.
‘I know not what it means until it my eye at sees.

Ez mac mit zouberlisten ein trügenwîse sîn.’ 240
It may with magic-arts a deceiving-tune be.’

‘wil duz nu gerne schouwen, sô nim daz vingerlîn
‘wilt thou-it now gladly behold, so take the little-ring

und stôz ez an den vinger, sô wirt ez dir bekant.’
and thrust it onto the finger, so becomes it to-thee known.’

der Riuze lûte erlachte, dô er den kleinen vant.
the Russian loudly laughed, when he the little-one found.

Er sprach mit süezen worten ‘wannen bistu, kleinez kint? 241
He spoke with sweet words ‘whence art-thou, little child?

ouwê daz dîne mâge dir alsô verre sint.’
alas that thy kinsmen to-thee so far are.’

‘swie kleine ich dich dunke, du geloube mir für wâr,
‘however small I thee seem, thou believe me for true,

ich hân ûf mînem halse mêr dan fünf hundert jâr.
I have on my neck more than five hundred years.

Ir sult mir beide volgen, daz ist iu beiden guot. 242
You shall me both follow, that is to-you both good.

swer nâch friunde râte und nâch ir willen tuot,
whoever after friends’ counsel and after their will does,

ob im dâ misselinget, da ist er unschuldic an.
if to-him there miscarries, there is he guiltless of.

ez lêrt ein friunt den andern des er selbe niht enkan.
it teaches a friend the other what he self not can.

243 Ein künic mac wol liegen durch sînes lîbes nôt.
A king may well lie for his body's distress.

gefüege rede gehœret vil dicke für den tôt.
fitting speech belongs very often before the death.

swer dich der mære frâge wanne die kiele gân,
whoever thee of-the tidings ask whence the keels go,

sô sprich, du gerst geleites, du sîst ein koufman.'
so speak, thou desirest escort, thou be a merchant.'

244 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'der rât ist enwiht.
Then spoke the Lombard 'the counsel is naught.

ich rette mit in gerne, ich kan ir sprâche niht.
I spoke with them gladly, I can their speech not.

ich bin sust unberihtet' sprach der künic rîch.
I am otherwise uninformed' spoke the king rich.

'sô muoz ich dich si lêren' sô sprach Alberîch.
'so must I thee it teach' so spoke Alberich.

245 'Wil du mirs immer danken, ich gibe dir einen stein,
'(if)-Wilt thou me-for-it ever thank, I give to-thee a stone,

der dich die sprâche lêre. der zungen ist dehein,
that thee the speech teaches. of-the tongues is none,

swenn dîn zunge besliuzet den stein in den munt,
whenever thy tongue encloses the stone in the mouth,

swaz iemen wider dich sprichet, daz ist dir allez kunt.'
whatever anyone against thee speaks, that is to-thee all known.'

‘Wie mac ich daz gelouben’ sprach der künec Ortnît, 246
‘How may I that believe’ spoke the king Ortnit,

‘daz got einem steine sô grôze gâbe gît,
‘that God to-a stone so great gift gives,

daz ich von sîner krefte alle liute mac vernemen?
that I from its strength all people may understand?

daz du sô vil geliugest, des möhst du dich wol schemen.’
that thou so much liest, of-that mightest thou thyself well be-ashamed.’

‘Swîgâ’ sprach der kleine, ‘du strâfest mich ze vil. 247
‘Be-silent’ spoke the little-one, ‘thou rebukest me too much.

got tuot ûz einem steine und ûz erde swaz er wil.
God does out-of a stone and out-of earth whatever he will.

jâ ist im ze tuone niht gar unmügelîch:
yea is to-him to do nothing wholly impossible:

daz solt du gelouben’ sprach aber Alberîch.
that shalt thou believe’ spoke again Alberich.

Den munt er ûf habete unz er den stein verbarc. 248
The mouth he up held until he the stone hid.

er sprach ‘ich wil versuochen die sînen krefte starc.’
he spoke ‘I will try the its powers strong.’

dô dûhte im wier vernæme al der liute wort.
then seemed to-him how-he understood all the people’s words.

dô gie der Lamparte oben an des scheffes bort.
then went the Lombard above on the ship’s board.

Dô schrei der marner lûte ‘swie ez uns ergê, 249
Then cried the mariner loudly ‘however it to-us befall,

wol vierzic roupgalîne fliezent ûf dem sê.
well forty robber-galleys sail on the sea.

swaz si halt meinent, si fliezent vaste her.
whatever they even mean, they sail fast hither.

swer mit in reden kunne, der berihte si der mær.'
whoever with them speak can, he inform them of-the tidings.'

250 Die roupgalîne fluzzen vaste ûf dem sê.
The robber-galleys sailed fast on the sea.

ir segel lûte duzzen, wîz als der snê,
their sails loudly roared, white as the snow,

beidenhalp der kiele. dô lachete Ortnît.
on-both-sides of-the keels. then laughed Ortnit.

dô sprach der barkenære 'nu saget mir wer ir sît.'
then spoke the bargeman 'now tell me who you be.'

251 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich binz ein koufman,
Then spoke the Lombard 'I am-it a merchant,

grôzen koufschaz rîchen ich her gefüeret hân.'
great merchandise rich I hither brought have.'

dô wincte er daz sich burgen die liute under daz dach
then beckoned he that themselves hid the people under the roof

mit helmen und mit schilten, daz man ir niht ensach.
with helmets and with shields, that one them not saw.

252 'Wer heizet iuch sô nâhen ze dirre veste varn?'
'Who bids you so near to this fortress go?'

sprach der barkenære, 'daz soldet ir bewarn.'
spoke the bargeman, 'that should you guard-against.'

'ich wil noch næhner füeren mîn lîp und ouch mîn guot.
'I will yet nearer lead my body and also my goods.

ich wæn, swer koufschaz füere, daz ir dem iht entuot.
I think, whoever merchandise leads, that you to-him anything not-do.

Ich füere von Kerlingen daz aller beste gewant, 253
I lead from France the very best cloth,

daz ich ze Walhen inder in den steten vant.
that I in Italy anywhere in the cities found.

des hân ich mîne kiele wol gefüllet und geladen.
with-it have I my keels well filled and loaded.

nu bringet mir geleite und helft mir zuo den staden.
now bring me escort and help me to the shore.

Ez mac immer mêre daz lant dester baz. 254
It may ever more the land the-more better.

helft mir zuo der mûre, ich wil dar âne haz.'
help me to the wall, I will thither without hate.'

'swer alsô grôze bringet, der sol willekomen sîn'
'whoever such great-things brings, he shall welcome be'

sprâchen die galînære und fluzzen wider în.
spoke the galley-men and sailed back in.

Dô het ouch ir gewartet der konstabel von der stat. 255
Then had also for-them waited the constable of the city.

der frâgte ouch si der mære, stille haben er si bat.
he asked also them of-the tidings, still hold he them bade.

si sprâchen 'hêrre, er füeret sîn kiele gewantes vol,
they spoke 'lord, he leads his keels of-cloth full,

und muotet eins geleites, ob man imz geben sol.
and desires an escort, whether one to-him-it give shall.

Er jach, swer koufschaz füere, der sol hie haben fride. 256
He avowed, whoever merchandise leads, he shall here have peace.

den sol man in enbieten bî dem halse und bî der wide.'
it shall one to-them proclaim by the neck and by the withy.'

dô sprach der stat rihtære 'ich sol daz wol bewarn,
then spoke the city's judge 'I shall that well guard,

daz man iht tuo gewaltes. ich wil selbe mit in varn.'
that one anything do of-violence. I will self with them go.'

257 Dô hiez er im gewinnen ouch ein roupgalîn.
Then bade he for-him get also a robber-galley.

wol vierzic pusûnære die sazte er zuo im drîn.
well forty trumpeters them set he to him therein.

einen vanen und ein kriuze er an den masboum bant:
a banner and a cross he on the mast bound:

dâ mit er si bewîste, daz in fride wære bekant.
there with he them showed, that to-them peace were known.

258 Dô rief der nôklier vaste, der in der keibe saz,
Then called the steersman hard, who in the top sat,

'gehabt iuch wol dort nidene, unser dinc vert aber baz.
'bear yourselves well there below, our thing goes however better.

wir suln frôlîche ûf den kielen varen în.
we shall joyfully on the keels go in.

jâ wil der stat meister unser geleite selbe sîn.'
yea will the city's master our escort self be.'

259 Vor den heiden allen der rihter selbe flôz.
Before the heathens all the judge self sailed.

ûf der galîne obene manec pusûne erdôz.
on the galley above many-a trumpet resounded.

die geste enphienc er schône und beleites in die habe.
the guests received he fairly and escorted-them into the harbor.

er sprach 'swenne ir wellet, sô vart in barken abe.'
he spoke 'whenever you will, so go in barks down.'

Dô wârens ûf dem wâge den tac unz an die naht. 260
Then were-they on the wave the day until to the night.

ouch het er sîne kiele gar zesamene brâht.
also had he his keels wholly together brought.

'nu rât an unde lêre, vil lieber Alberîch,
'now counsel on and teach, very dear Alberich,

wie wir die stat gewinnen' sô sprach der künic rîch.
how we the city win' so spoke the king rich.

'Diu porte diu stêt offen, ich wæne uns iemen wer, 261
'The gate it stands open, I think to-us anyone forbid,

swenn alle liute entslâfen, wir dringen în mit her.
whenever all people fall-asleep, we press in with host.

si müezen des engelten dazs alle heiden sint:
they must for-it pay that-they all heathens are:

wir suln si selbe tœten, ir wîp und iriu kint.'
we shall them selves kill, their women and their children.'

Dô sprach der kleine wîse 'wer lêret dich den list? 262
Then spoke the little wise-one 'who teaches thee the trick?

sô stüende daz vil übele daz du ein künic bist,
so stood that very ill that thou a king art,

daz du erzürnen woldest dînen hûsgenôz
that thou anger wouldst thy house-fellow

und im niht widersagtest. daz wære ein laster grôz.'
and him not challengedst. that were a disgrace great.'

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'daz muoz er mir vertragen. 263
Then spoke the Lombard 'that must he me pardon.

der heiden ist so zornic, im tar niemen widersagen.
the heathen is so wrathful, him dares no-one challenge.

ich sende ûf sîne genâde deheinen boten dar.
I send on his grace no messenger thither.

tuon ich im iht leides, er wirt sîn wol gewar.'
(if)-do I to-him anything harmful, he becomes of-it well aware.'

264 'Entriuwen' sprach der kleine, 'daz laster wurde dîn.
'In-faith' spoke the little-one, 'the disgrace would-be thine.

daz man dich drumbe schulte, ich wolte ê bote sîn.
that one thee for-it reproached, I would rather messenger be.

nu solt mit êren werben; wie bistu sô verzeit?
now shalt with honors woo; how art-thou so daunted?

wil du mirs immer danken, ich hân im schiere widerseit.'
(if)-wilt thou me-for-it ever thank, I have him soon challenged.'

265 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'des bin ich immer frô.
Then spoke the Lombard 'of-that am I ever glad.

ouch danke ich dirs vil gerne, ob ez sich füeget sô.
also thank I thee-for-it very gladly, if it itself befits so.

sol ich dîn alhie bîten?' sprach der künic rîch.
shall I for-thee here wait?' spoke the king rich.

'ich kom dir morgen widere:' von im fuor Alberîch.
'I come to-thee tomorrow back:' from him went Alberich.

266 Ez brâhte in des wol inne, daz ez wære ein getwerc.
It brought him of-that well aware, that it were a dwarf.

dem wilden dem was kündic beidiu tal unt berc.
to-the wild-one to-him was known both dale and hill.

ez weste wol waz bürge in der heidenschefte lac.
it knew well what castles in the heathendom lay.

ez kom ze Muntabûre ê daz ez wurde tac.
it came to Muntabur before that it became day.

Dô saz ez neben der mûre nider ûf einen stein, 267
Then sat it beside the wall down on a stone,

und erbeite des vil kûme daz der tac erschein,
and awaited of-it very hardly that the day appeared,

daz er die botschaft wurbe, die man in werben bat.
that he the message pursued, which one him pursue bade.

der heiden ûf die mûre ob im an die zinne trat.
the heathen onto the wall above him onto the battlement stepped.

Durch die süezen winde sô gie er an den luft. 268
For the sweet winds so went he into the air.

jâ het er durch die hitze gerûmet sîne gruft.
yea had he for the heat vacated his vault.

mit zühten sprach der kleine 'wer ist der ob mir stât?
with courtesies spoke the little-one 'who is he-who above me stands?

getar ich dich gefrâgen, sô gip mir dînen rât.
(if)-dare I thee ask, so give me thy counsel.

Wâ ist des hûses hêrre?' sprach er. 'daz bin ich.' 269
Where is the house's lord?' spoke he. 'that am I.'

dô vorhte sich der heiden vil vaste, er segente sich.
then feared himself the heathen very hard, he crossed himself.

'waz ist daz dâ sprichet, daz ich des niht ensie?'
'what is that there speaks, that I it not see?'

er sprach 'bistuz der tievel? waz tuost du danne hie?'
he spoke 'art-thou-it the devil? what dost thou then here?'

'Nein ich' sprach der kleine, 'ich binz ein ander bot. 270
'No I' spoke the little-one, 'I am-it an other messenger.

mich hât her gesendet mîn meister und mîn got.'
me has hither sent my master and my God.'

‘ûf dînes gotes mære dar ûf enahte ich niht.
‘on thy God’s tidings there on heed I not.

swaz er mir mac enbieten, daz dunket mich enwiht.
whatever he me may send, that seems to-me naught.

271 Ich ahte harte lützel ûf dînes gotes bet.
I heed very little on thy God’s request.

ich fürhte wan Apollen und mînen Mahmet.
I fear but Apollo and my Mahomet.

den wil ich gerne dienen, die sint diu göter mîn.’
them will I gladly serve, they are the gods mine.’

‘nu sage mir’ sprach der kleine, ‘wie lange wilt unsælic sîn?
‘now tell me’ spoke the little-one, ‘how long wilt unblessed be?

272 Daz du an in niht gloubest, daz wirt ouch lîhte enwiht,
That thou in him not believest, that becomes also perhaps naught,

daz du den niht enfürhtest, den man gewaltic siht,
that thou him not fearest, whom one mighty sees,

der daz hât beschaffen, daz du bist menschlîch.
who that has created, that thou art human.

Mahmetes und Apollen, wâ ist der himelrich?’
Mahomet’s and Apollo’s, where is the heavenly-kingdom?’

273 ‘Si sîn swâ si wellen’ sprach der heiden dô,
‘They be wherever they will’ spoke the heathen then,

‘mich und mîn genôzen machents dicke frô.’
‘me and my peers make-they often glad.’

mit witzen sprach der kleine ‘du bist der sinne ein kint.
with wits spoke the little-one ‘thou art of-the senses a child.

nu bin ich eine sterker danne al dîn göter sint.’
now am I alone stronger than all thy gods are.’

Dô sprach aber der heiden ‘nu tuo mir doch bekant, 274
Then spoke again the heathen ‘now make to-me yet known,
sage mir waz du werbest: zwiu bist du her gesant?’
tell me what thou pursuest: why art thou hither sent?’
‘dâ hât mich her gesendet zuo dir der meister mîn,
‘there has me hither sent to thee the master mine,
daz du einem rîchen künege gebest die tohter dîn’.
that thou to-a rich king give the daughter thine’.

Mit beiden sînen henden sô roufte er ûz den bart. 275
With both his hands so tore he out the beard.
‘ouwê’ sprach der heiden ‘daz ich ie geborn wart!
‘alas’ spoke the heathen ‘that I ever born was!
daz mich mîner tohter nie dehein man gebat,
that me for-my daughter never any man asked,
ich hiez im ab sîn houbet slahen an der stat.’
I bade from-him off his head strike on the spot.’

Dô sprach aber der kleine ‘ûf dîn rede enahte ich niht. 276
Then spoke again the little-one ‘on thy speech heed I not.
ez ist geschehen dicke daz nimmer mêr geschiht.
it is happened often what never more happens.
ich sage dir offenlîche, gîst du im niht die meit,
I tell thee openly, (if)-givest thou to-him not the maid,
daz er dich mit here suochet. dir sî von im widerseit’.
that he thee with host seeks. to-thee be from him challenged’.

Der alte heiden lûte weinete unde sprach: 277
The old heathen loudly wept and spoke:
‘daz mir bî mînen zîten daz laster ie geschach!
‘that to-me in my times the disgrace ever happened!

mir getorst bî mînen jâren nieman widersagen.
me dared in my years no-one challenge.

daz ichz nu muoz hœren, daz wil ich mînen götern klagen.
that I-it now must hear, that will I to-my gods lament.

278 Du solt mir daz gelouben, hiet ich dich in mîner hant,
Thou shalt me that believe, had I thee in my hand,

und wær der himel dîn eigen, ich slüeg dich umbe ein want.'
and were the heaven thy own, I would-strike thee against a wall.'

einen stein ungefüegen den stiez er in den graben.
a stone monstrous it thrust he into the moat.

dâ wolte er den kleinen ze tôde erworfen haben.
there would he the little-one to death thrown have.

279 Mit zorne sprach der kleine 'waz hilfet dich dîn wer?
With wrath spoke the little-one 'what helps thee thy defense?

nu gip im dîn tohter, od er suochet dich mit her.
now give to-him thy daughter, or he seeks thee with host.

ê danne du iht wizzest, sô sihestu in hie vor.
before than thou anything knowest, so seest-thou him here before.

er nimt si mit gewalte und hæht dich für daz tor.'
he takes her with force and hangs thee before the gate.'

280 Der heiden schrei sô lûte, daz berc unde tal
The heathen cried so loudly, that hill and dale

und ouch diu burc elliu von sînem dôze erhal.
and also the castle all from his din resounded.

die in der bürge sliefen, die erwachten dâ sô gar:
who in the castle slept, they awoke there so wholly:

durch diu grôzen wunder sô huoben si sich dar.
for the great wonders so raised they themselves thither.

‘Ich wæn, du sîst unsinnic’ sprach diu künigîn. 281
‘I think, thou be mad’ spoke the queen.

‘nein ich’ sprach der heiden, ‘man bitet der tohter dîn.
‘no I’ spoke the heathen, ‘one asks for-the daughter thine.

mir hât vil zorniclîche ein stimme widerseit.
me has very wrathfully a voice challenged.

ich mac mich niht gerechen: daz sî Mahmete gekleit.’
I may myself not avenge: that be to-Mahomet lamented.’

Er sprach zuo sînen heiden ‘louft um den burcgraben. 282
He spoke to his heathens ‘run around the castle-moat.

daz er uns iht entrinne, ir sult in umbehaben.’
that he us anything escape, you shall him surround.’

die heiden alle sprungen nider an daz gras.
the heathens all sprang down onto the grass.

si sluogen unde stâchen dâ Alberîch dô was.
they struck and stabbed where Alberich then was.

Hinders heiden rücke barc sich daz twergelîn. 283
Behind-the heathen’s back hid itself the little-dwarf.

‘künec, du solt verbieten dazs ir werfen lâzen sîn.
‘king, thou shalt forbid that-they their throwing let be.

vor schüzzen und vor würfen trûw ich wol verbergen mich:
from shots and from throws trust I well to-hide myself:

welnt si mîn lange râmen, si treffent lîhte dich.’
(if)-will they me long aim, they hit perhaps thee.’

Mit zorne sprach der heiden ‘lât stên und werfet niht. 284
With wrath spoke the heathen ‘let stand and throw not.

wie wolt ab ir den treffen, den man ninder siht?
how would however you him hit, whom one nowhere sees?

swaz er nu tâlanc klaffet, daz muoz ich im vertragen.'
whatever he now today babbles, that must I to-him pardon.'

dô sprach aber der kleine 'waz sol ich dem künege sagen?'
then spoke again the little-one 'what shall I to-the king say:'

285 'Daz mir got müeze rihten über iuwer beider leben!
'That me God may judge over your both life!

ich wil dir niht gelouben, du solt mir brieve geben.'
I will thee not believe, thou shalt me letters give.'

'sît ich dir der brieve hie niht geleisten mac,
'since I thee of-the letters here not provide may,

dâ bî solt dus gedenken' und sluoc im einen mûlslac.
there by shalt thou-it remember' and struck him a slap.

286 Die liute ez alle hôrten, sô lûte erhal sîn hant.
The people it all heard, so loudly resounded his hand.

der heiden wart unsinnic; durch wüeten man in bant.
the heathen became mad; for raging one him bound.

diu tohter und ir muoter vielen an ir gebet.
the daughter and her mother fell to their prayer.

si klagten alle ir laster Apollen und Mahmet.
they lamented all their disgrace to-Apollo and Mahomet.

287 Dô het ouch wol erworben sîn botschaft Alberîch.
Then had also well accomplished his message Alberich.

dô kêrte er von der mûre gegen dem künege rîch.
then turned he from the wall toward the king rich.

si râmten sîn mit würfen: dô was er anderswâ.
they aimed at-him with throws: then was he elsewhere.

Ortnîdes âventiure ist aber einiu dâ.
Ortnit's adventure is again one there.

Ortnit IV

IV · THE TAKING OF SUDERS

By night Alberich steals the harbor's barks, and the army lands on the shore in them. At dawn Ortnit and Ilias storm Suders and win it, though Ilias, parted from Ortnit, loses five thousand men and is felled and nearly lost. Ilias then kills the surrendering heathens, women included, until Ortnit stops him and has the willing baptized, and Ilias smashes the heathens' idols against a wall. Nine thousand of Ortnit's knights are dead, and the army halts for the night.

Dô kom er zuo den kielen ê daz ez wurde naht. 288
Then came he to the keels before that it became night.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'waz mære hâst uns brâht?'
then spoke the Lombard 'what tidings hast to-us brought?'

'ich bring dir bœsiu mære von der künigîn:
'I bring thee evil tidings of the queen:

du gewinnest si mit strîte, si wirt nimmer dîn.
thou winnest her with battle, she becomes never thine.

Ich hân ir vater erzürnet, daz man in gebunden hât.' 289
I have her father angered, that one him bound has.'

dô sprach der Lamparte 'nu gip uns dînen rât.
then spoke the Lombard 'now give us thy counsel.

gewinne wir die veste, sô habe wir al daz lant.'
(if)-win we the fortress, so have we all the land.'

'ich trûwe iuch wol in barken füeren ûf den sant.
'I trust you well in barks to-lead onto the sand.

Diu naht ist iezuo vinster, den mânen niemen siht: 290
The night is now dark, the moon no-one sees:

sô hüetent ûf der mûre die wahtære niht.
so guard on the wall the watchmen not.

wir suln in barken fliezen verholne zuo den staden.
we shall in barks sail secretly to the shore.

si fürhtent ûf dem wâge deheines vîndes schaden.
they fear on the wave no foe's harm.

291 Ich trûwe ouch uns die barken wol verholne steln.
I trust also for-us the barks well secretly to-steal.

ouch sult ir stille swîgen und sultz mit zühten heln.'
also shall you still be-silent and shall-it with courtesies conceal.'

die zwêne künege volgten niuwan dem kleinen man.
the two kings followed only the little man.

bî der burcmûre fünf hundert barken er gewan.
by the castle-wall five hundred barks he got.

292 Die der barken huoten, die wurden gar betrogen,
Who the barks guarded, they were wholly deceived,

daz si die winde hieten ûf den sê gezogen.
that them the winds had onto the sea drawn.

dô sprach ir iegelîcher 'in weiz wâ mîn barken sint;
then spoke of-them each-one 'I-not know where my barks are;

die ketene brestent alle, und enpfüert si uns der wint.'
the chains break all, and carries them from-us the wind.'

293 Si sprungen ab den kielen all in die barken nider.
They sprang off the keels all into the barks down.

si kômen dar lære und fluzzen beladen wider.
they came thither empty and sailed loaded back.

des morgens iegelîcher sîne barken vant:
in-the morning each-one his barks found:

si truogen drîzec tûsent helde des nahtes an den sant.
they carried thirty thousand heroes in-the night onto the sand.

Si sprungen ûz den barken ûf die erde dô. 294
They sprang out-of the barks onto the earth then.
daz si enbunden wâren, des wârens alle frô.
that they unbound were, of-that were-they all glad.
Ortnit von Lamparten und von Riuzen Ŷljas
Ortnit of Lombardy and of Russia Ilias
giengen von den barken nider ûf daz gras.
went from the barks down onto the grass.

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'nu rât an, Alberîch, 295
Then spoke the Lombard 'now counsel on, Alberich,
daz wir die stat zestœren ze leide dem künege rîch.'
that we the city destroy to sorrow to-the king rich.'
'ir seht wol' sprach der kleine 'daz diu porte offen stât.
'you see well' spoke the little-one 'that the gate open stands.
ich kan zuo iuwerm strîte geben deheinen rât.'
I can to your battle give no counsel.'

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'du endarft uns nimmer manen. 296
Then spoke the Lombard 'thou needest us never remind.
Ŷljas von Riuzen, nim mînen sturmvanen.
Ilias of Russia, take my battle-banner.
er touc ander niemen ze füeren an der hant:
it befits other no-one to carry in the hand:
swem ich in anders gæbe, daz wær niht wol bewant.'
to-whom I it otherwise gave, that were not well bestowed.'

'Des solt du mich erlâzen, œheim Ortnît. 297
'Of-that shalt thou me release, nephew Ortnit.
ich hân fünf tûsent helde gefüeret in den strît,
I have five thousand heroes led into the battle,

die ich billîche wîsen unde lêren sol.
whom I rightly guide and teach shall.

ein alsô grôziu menege bedarf ir hêrren wol.'
an such great multitude needs its lord well.'

298 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich mac dichs niht erlân,
Then spoke the Lombard 'I may thee-of-it not release,

sît ich dich ze trôste mit mir gefüeret hân.
since I thee as comfort with me led have.

wir mugen wol strîten beide under eim baniere lieht:
we may well fight both under one banner bright:

die wir her haben gefüeret, die entwîchent uns nu niht.'
whom we hither have led, they flee us now not.'

299 'Daz weiz got' sprach der Riuze, 'nu gip mir in an die hant.'
'That knows God' spoke the Russian, 'now give me it into the hand.'

einen swæren vanen er dô ane bant,
a heavy banner he then on bound,

dar ûz ein lewe lûhte von schœnem golde rôt.
there out-of a lion shone of fair gold red.

die zwêne künege fuorten vil manegen in den tôt.
the two kings led very many-a-one into the death.

300 Si wâren gar berihtet, als der tac ûf brach.
They were wholly prepared, as the day up broke.

ein heiden ûf der mûre in lûter stimme sprach
a heathen on the wall in loud voice spoke

'nu wol ûf, wachet alle! uns ist ein koufschaz komen:
'now well up, wake all! to-us is a merchandise come:

swer zuo dem koufe gâhet, dem wirt der lîp benomen.
whoever to the buying hastens, from-him is the life taken.

Er mac sîn wol engelten und sînes kindes kint. 301
He may for-it well pay and his child's child.

wol drîzic tûsent ritter hie vor der mûre sint,
well thirty thousand knights here before the wall are,

in liehten stâlringen wîz alsô der snê.
in bright steel-rings white as the snow.

von disem koufschatze geschiht uns allen wê.'
from this merchandise happens to-us all woe.'

Dâ von vil manic heiden in der stat erschrac. 302
There from very many-a heathen in the city took-fright.

dô kom in mit leide diu sunne und ouch der tac.
then came to-them with sorrow the sun and also the day.

von dem koufschatze wart maniger verlorn:
from the merchandise was many-a-one lost:

Ortnît dranc in die porten und blies sîn herhorn.
Ortnit pressed into the gate and blew his army-horn.

Die heiden sich dô scharten: vil michel wart ir schal. 303
The heathens themselves then ranked: very great became their din.

vil schiere si sich samten von der comûne über al.
very soon they themselves gathered from the commune over all.

wol sehzic tûsent heiden kômen für den palas,
well sixty thousand heathens came before the palace,

dâ der constabel, ir rihter, inne was.
where the constable, their judge, in was.

Den gesten er engegene mit grôzer menege reit, 304
The guests he against with great multitude rode,

Ortnît neben dem Riuzen gewalticlîchen streit.
Ortnit beside the Russian mightily fought.

dô stapften si zesamene ûf sorcsamen strît.
then stepped they together onto sorrowful battle.

dô rief der Lamparte 'tschâ tschavalier Ortnît!'
then called the Lombard 'ho knight Ortnit!'

305 Dô dranc gegen der dicke von Riuzen Ŷljas.
Then pressed toward the thick of Russia Ilias.

do enwest man welhez kristen oder heiden was.
then not-knew one which Christian or heathen was.

dô kom sô vil der heiden, daz man in niht fürbaz liez.
then came so many of-the heathens, that one him not further let.

des küneges vanen enmitten er ûf den palas stiez.
the king's banner in-the-middle he onto the palace thrust.

306 Dô tet der Lamparte vil manegem heiden schaden.
Then did the Lombard to-very many-a heathen harm.

si heten in gefüeret ûf ir kumber zuo den staden.
they had him led on their trouble to the shore.

swem dô der ungehiure gap dâ einen slac
to-whom then the monstrous-one gave there a blow

mit sînes swertes orte, vor im er tôt gelac.
with his sword's point, before him he dead lay.

307 Die heiden wichen alle vor dem vil küenen man.
The heathens yielded all before the very bold man.

dô torst im an der enge ir deheiner vor bestân.
then dared him in the narrow of-them none before stand.

vil manegen küenen heiden benam er dâ daz leben.
very many-a bold heathen took-from he there the life.

ez kômen ouch die sînen niht danne unvergeben.
there came also the his-own not then unrequited.

Vil manic wîte lucken er beidenthalben sluoc. 308
Very many-a wide gap he on-both-sides struck.

der Riuze an sînem rücke den vanen nâch im truoc.
the Russian at his back the banner after him bore.

'lâzâ die helde strîten!' rief aber Alberîch,
'let-be the heroes fight!' called again Alberich,

'dâ wellent dir die heiden entrinnen, künic rîch.
'there will thee the heathens escape, king rich.

Jâ sint die porten alle leider unbewart. 309
Yea are the gates all alas unguarded.

die beslozzen wâren, die habents ûf gespart.
which locked were, them have-they up opened.

sich, ob duz mügest erwenden, künic Ortnît.
see, whether thou-it mayest avert, king Ortnit.

si brennent dir die kiele und nement swaz dar ûf lît.'
they burn to-thee the keels and take whatever there on lies.'

Einen snellen türken der Lamparte twanc. 310
A swift Turk-horse the Lombard constrained.

er kom mit sînen helden, zeiner porten er ûz dranc.
he came with his heroes, at-a gate he out pressed.

do entwichen im die heiden, sô kreftic was sîn her.
then yielded to-him the heathens, so strong was his host.

er sluoc ir vil ze tôde und tranctes in dem mer.
he struck of-them many to death and drowned-them in the sea.

Alsô der Lamparte dem Riuzen dô entweich, 311
When the Lombard from-the Russian then withdrew,

dô wart im sîn hilfe gegen den heiden weich.
then became to-him his help against the heathens weak.

dô nam er schaden grôzen, den er niht mohte verklagen:
then took he harm great, which he not might lament-enough:

er verlôs fünf tûsent helde und wart selbe nider geslagen.
he lost five thousand heroes and was self down struck.

312 Dô kom ûf einem türken der kleine nâch geriten.
Then came on a Turk-horse the little-one after ridden.

er sprach zem Lamparten ‘du hâst gnuoc hie gestriten.
he spoke to-the Lombard ‘thou hast enough here fought.

nu kêre wider bî zîte und rich dînen zorn:
now turn back in time and avenge thy wrath:

du hâst den künec von Riuzen und sîne helde verlorn’
thou hast the king of Russia and his heroes lost’

313 Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘œheim Ŷljas,
Then spoke the Lombard ‘uncle Ilias,

nu müeze ez got erbarmen, daz ich bî dir niht was.
now may it God pity, that I by thee not was.

ich muoz nâch dînem tôde immer trûric wesen.’
I must after thy death ever sad be.’

mit zorne kêrte er widere und half im genesen.
with wrath turned he back and helped him survive.

314 Dô het sich der Riuze sîner hilfe gar verzigen.
Then had himself the Russian of-his help wholly renounced.

den sach er in almitten under den vinden ligen.
him saw he in all-middle among the foes lie.

die wîle und er mohte, dô het er sich gewert.
the while and he might, then had he himself defended.

im kom diu hilfe schiere: dâ von wart er ernert.
to-him came the help soon: there from was he saved.

Dô het er umbevangen den vanen mit einer hant, 315
Then had he embraced the banner with one hand,

sîn swert in der andern, dô er in ligende vant.
his sword in the other, when he him lying found.

von starken slegen grôzen wart er ungesunt.
from strong blows great became he unwell.

er vant in ligen für tôten, und was doch ninder wunt.
he found him lie for dead, and was yet nowhere wounded.

Daz swert nam er zen handen, den schilt ze rücke er warf. 316
The sword took he in-the hands, the shield at back he threw.

alrêrst muost er versuochen die sîne klingen scharf:
first-of-all must he try the its blades sharp:

nâch friunden und nâch vinden er tobiclîchen sluoc.
after friends and after foes he ragingly struck.

ûf dens ê vaste drungen, dem wart dô rûms genuoc.
on whom-they before hard pressed, to-him became then of-room enough.

Harte jæmerlîche der küene Riuze sprach, 317
Very woefully the bold Russian spoke,

dô er durch helmes venster den œheim ob im sach
when he through helmet's window the uncle above him saw

'nu müeze got erbarmen daz ich ie wart geborn!
'now may God pity that I ever was born!

daz liebest daz ich hête, daz hân ich leider vlorn.'
the dearest that I had, that have I alas lost.'

Des freute sich der küene, dô er in lebende vant. 318
Of-that rejoiced himself the bold-one, when he him living found.

ûf zucte er in snelle von der erden mit der hant.
up drew he him swiftly from the earth with the hand.

‘ez mac disiu reise âne schaden niht entwesen.
‘it may this journey without harm not be.

ich wil dichs wol ergetzen, und trûwestu genesen.’
I will thee-for-it well requite, if trustest-thou to-survive.’

319 ‘Wie maht du mich ergetzen des schaden den ich hân?
‘How mayst thou me requite of-the harm that I have?

nu ligent vor uns verhouwen alle mîne man.’
now lie before us hewn all my men.’

der Riuze sprach mit jâmer ‘ich genæse noch wol;
the Russian spoke with sorrow ‘I would-survive yet well;

nu enweiz ab ich unsælic, zwiu mir mîn leben sol.’
now not-know however I unblessed, to-what to-me my life shall.’

320 ‘Sich muoz der man getrœsten’ sprach der künic Ortnît
‘Himself must the man console’ spoke the king Ortnit

‘des lîbes und der liute, swer gêt in einen strît.
‘of-the body and of-the people, whoever goes into a battle.

swaz er dar inne verliuset, des muoz er sich verwegen.
whatever he there in loses, of-that must he himself resign.

ich wæn, du maht niht strîten: lâ mich des vanen phlegen.’
I think, thou mayst not fight: let me of-the banner take-care.’

321 ‘Nein’ sprach der Riuze, ‘mir wirret schiere niht.
‘No’ spoke the Russian, ‘me troubles soon nothing.

si werdent wol vergolten die man hie tôte siht.
they will-be well repaid whom one here dead sees.

ich wil dir aber helfen; du solt mir den vanen lân.
I will thee however help; thou shalt to-me the banner leave.

du sihest mich hiute sterben, oder ich geriche mîne man.’
thou seest me today die, or I avenge my men.’

Dô stuont unde warte gegen in diu heidenschaft, 322
Then stood and watched toward them the heathendom,

wenne si versuochten aber ir mannes kraft.
when they tried again their man's strength.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'wir müezen et aber an sie.
then spoke the Lombard 'we must just again at them.

wir liezen dise tôten ungerochen übele hie.'
we would-leave these dead unavenged ill here.'

Zesamne si dô drungen, dô mischete sich ir schar, 323
Together they then pressed, then mingled itself their troop,

dô wurden liehte ringe bluotrîchgevar.
then became bright rings blood-rich-colored.

dô muosten aber die geste dem wirte an gesigen:
then must again the guests over-the host on win-victory:

dô sach man manegen heiden vor dem Lamparten ligen.
then saw one many-a heathen before the Lombard lie.

Si heten zuo der erde manegen tôten brâht. 324
They had to the earth many-a dead brought.

die heiden sich verburgen: niemen mêr mit in dâ vaht.
the heathens themselves hid: no-one more with them there fought.

si heten manegen tôten gevellet ûf daz gras.
they had many-a dead felled onto the grass.

'mit wem sol ich nu vehten?' sprach von Riuzen Ŷljas.
'with whom shall I now fight:' spoke of Russia Ilias.

'Ê du dich gehabest immer alsô jæmerlîch, 325
'Before thou thyself bearest ever so woefully,

ich zeig dir tûsent heiden' sprach aber Alberîch,
I show thee a-thousand heathens' spoke again Alberich,

‘die sich habent verborgen, wil du rechen dîne man.’
‘who themselves have hidden, (if)-wilt thou avenge thy men.’

‘vil gerne’ sprach der Riuze, ‘hêrre, nu wol dan!’
‘very gladly’ spoke the Russian, ‘lord, now well thence!’

326 Dô fuorte in der kleine in eine steinwant,
Then led him the little-one into a rock-wall,

dâ er wol tûsent heiden verspart inne vant.
where he well a-thousand heathens shut in found.

dô stiez er mit den füezen ûf rigele unde tür:
then thrust he with the feet open bolts and doors:

‘unreine Sarrazîne, ir müezet doch her für!’
‘unclean Saracens, you must yet hither forth!’

327 Dô vielens im ze füezen: ‘hêrre, lâzt uns leben.
Then fell-they to-him at feet: ‘lord, let us live.

in iuwers gotes gnâde welle wir uns geben.’
in your God’s grace will we ourselves give.’

‘gerne’ sprach der Riuze, ‘und gelt mir mîne man.
‘gladly’ spoke the Russian, ‘and repay me my men.

mit disem besemrîse wil ich iu zeslahen den ban.
with this broom-twig will I to-you strike-off the ban.

328 Ich wil iu buoze setzen, der ir enbrechet niht.
I will to-you penance set, which you break not.

man sol iuch alsô schouwen, als man si ligen siht.
one shall you so behold, as one them lie sees.

swenn ich mit disem rîse slah hiute einen slac,
whenever I with this twig strike today a blow,

der muoz die buoze vasten unz an den jungisten tac.’
he must the penance fast until to the latest day.’

Der heiden er iegelîchen zuo dem liehte truoc. 329
Of-the heathens he each-one to the light carried.

er nam in bî dem hâre, daz houbt erm abe sluoc.
he took him by the hair, the head he-him off struck.

ze tôde sluoc ers alle, unz er ir niht mêre vant.
to death struck he-them all, until he of-them no more found.

hiet er ir iht mêre vunden, si hiet ouch ertôt sîn hant.
had he of-them any more found, them had also killed his hand.

Dô dranc er durch die tôten aber fürbaz. 330
Then pressed he through the dead again further.

er kom in ein gewelbe, daz vollez frouwen saz:
he came into a vault, that full-of ladies sat:

die vielen im ze füezen: 'hêr, lât uns den lîp;
they fell to-him at feet: 'sir, let us the life;

ir habt sîn lützel êre, slaht ir uns armiu wîp.'
you have of-it little honor, (if)-strike you us poor women.'

'Ir sît mir alle gelîche, wîp unde man. 331
'You are to-me all alike, women and men.

ir müezet mir die gelten, die ich verlorn hân.'
you must to-me them repay, whom I lost have.'

er nam si bî ir hâre und tet in ouch alsam:
he took them by their hair and did to-them also likewise:

do erzurnte alrêrst der kleine und wart dem Riuzen gram.
then angered first-of-all the little-one and became to-the Russian hostile.

Der kleine huop sich balde ûz der steinwant 332
The little-one raised himself quickly out-of the rock-wall

ûf daz wal der tôten, da er Ortnîden vant.
onto the field of-the dead, where he Ortnit found.

'dîn œheim sleht die frouwen, des maht du dich wol schemen;
'thy uncle strikes the ladies, of-that mayst thou thyself well be-ashamed;
die gerne kristen wurden, den wil er daz leben nemen.'
who gladly Christians became, from-them will he the life take.'

333 Mit zorne der Lamparte dô zuo dem Riuzen spranc.
With wrath the Lombard then to the Russian sprang.
er sprach 'du bist unsinnic, dîn lîp der habe undanc.
he spoke 'thou art mad, thy body it have no-thanks.
die frouwen sint unschuldic, den du hâst ir lîp benomen.
the ladies are guiltless, whom thou hast their life taken.
maht du dar an gedenken, du bist ouch von frouwen komen.
mayst thou there on think, thou art also from ladies come.

334 Wil du deheines dienstes von mir sîn gewert,
(If)-wilt thou any service from me be granted,
sô tuoz durch mînen willen und stôz în dîn swert.
so do-it for my sake and thrust in thy sword.
du bist an dînen sinnen leider gar ein kint.
thou art in thy senses alas wholly a child.
wol dan, hilf mir ze toufen, die gerne kristen sint.'
well thence, help me to baptize, who gladly Christians are.'

335 Mit zorne sprach der Riuze 'dâ kêre ich mich niht an.
With wrath spoke the Russian 'there turn I myself not to.
du solt mit dîner toufe mich mit fride lân.
thou shalt with thy baptism me with peace leave.
swelh ich ze wazzer füere, die werdent ungesunt.
whomever I to water lead, they become unwell.
und geschehent si mir ze toufen, ich stôz si an den grunt.
if happen they to-me to baptize, I thrust them to the bottom.

Do erbat er in des kûme, daz er sîn swert în stiez 336
Then besought he him of-it hardly, that he his sword in thrust
und die armen frouwen mit gemache liez.
and the poor ladies with ease let.
die gerne kristen wurden, die toufte der künic rîch,
who gladly Christians became, them baptized the king rich,
und half in des vil vaste der lützel Alberîch.
and helped him in-that very hard the little Alberich.

Mit zorne gie der Riuze von im in daz wal. 337
With wrath went the Russian from him into the field.
swelch wunter sich ûf rihte, den stiez er wider ze tal.
whatever wounded-one himself up raised, him thrust he back to dale.
den kristen zuo den heiden den trat er in den munt:
the Christian to the heathen him trod he in the mouth:
die wol genesen wæren, machte er ungesunt.
who well survived were, made he unwell.

Mit zorne dô der kleine zuo dem Lamparten sprach 338
With wrath then the little-one to the Lombard spoke
'wir haben vor disem tievel tâlanc dehein gemach.
'we have before this devil today no ease.
er möhte doch den kristen wol einen fride geben.
he might yet to-the Christians well a peace give.
sumelîch die wol genæsen, die læt er niht leben.'
some who well would-survive, them lets he not live.'

Dô sprach aber mit zorne der künic Ortnît 339
Then spoke again with wrath the king Ortnit
'œheim, du wilt ot nimmer lâzen dînen strît.
'uncle, thou wilt just never leave thy battle.

waz richest an den liuten die durch uns erstorben sint?
what avengest on the people who for us dead are?
du bist in rehten triuwen eins ungehiuren mannes kint.'
thou art in right faith a monstrous man's child.'

340 Vil kûme wart der Riuze von der ungefüege brâht:
Very hardly was the Russian from the outrage brought:
dô het er im borschiere einer niwen erdâht.
then had he for-him game a new devised.
er gie ze der heiden bethûs da er ir abgöter vant:
he went to the heathens' prayer-house where he their idols found:
her ûz truoc er die sarke und sluoc si umbe ein want.
hither out carried he the coffins and struck them against a wall.

341 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'got müez dir sinne beschern.
Then spoke the Lombard 'God may to-thee senses grant.
wie lang sol ich dir hiute dîn ungefüege wern?
how long shall I thee today thy outrage forbid?
nu habe ot dînen willen, tuo swaz dich dunke guot.
now have just thy will, do whatever thee seems good.
du wilt durch mich niht lâzen dîn wunderlîchen muot.'
thou wilt for me not leave thy wondrous spirit.'

342 'Nu volge mir, Lamparte' sprach aber Alberîch,
'Now follow me, Lombard' spoke again Alberich,
'und suochen wir die tôten, daz ist gewizzenlich.
'and seek we the dead, that is conscientious.
die wol genesen kunnen under diseme her,
who well survive can among this host,
die sende wir in barken zuo den kielen ûf daz mer.'
them send we in barks to the keels onto the sea.'

Dô giengens unde suochten, den leide was getân, 343
Then went-they and sought, to-whom sorrow was done,

und funden undern kristen wan fünf hundert man,
and found among-the Christians but five hundred men,

die wol genesen mohten. die sande er ûf den sê.
who well survive might. them sent he onto the sea.

dô tet dem Lamparten der jâmer harte wê.
then did to-the Lombard the sorrow very woe.

'Ich sage dir' sprach der kleine, 'du hâst genomen schaden. 344
'I tell thee' spoke the little-one, 'thou hast taken harm.

ez ist vil maneger leider her ûf sînen tôt geladen.
there is very many-a-one alas hither to his death loaded.

her künec, swenn ir nu wellet, sô blâst iuwer herhorn.
sir king, whenever you now will, so blow your army-horn.

nu lachet oder weinet, ir habt niun tûsent ritter vlorn.'
now laugh or weep, you have nine thousand knights lost.'

'Got lâze michs gebüezen' sprach der künec Ortnît, 345
'God let me-it atone' spoke the king Ortnit,

'daz alsô manic tôter in mînem dienste lît.
'that so many-a dead-one in my service lies.

der âbent ist ze nâhen, fürbaz ich niht enmac;
the evening is too near, further I not can;

wir müezen hie belîben unz morgen ûf den tac.'
we must here remain until tomorrow onto the day.'

'Nu sich' sprach er zem Riuzen, 'waz hulfe mich mîn zorn? 346
'Now see' spoke he to-the Russian, 'what would-help me my wrath?

swie ungefüege ich wære, sô wærens doch verlorn.
however monstrous I were, so were-they yet lost.

zuo langer herverte gehœrt dehein gewin.
to long army-journey belongs no gain.

mîner unsælden ist aber einiu hin.'
of-my misfortunes is again one gone.'

Ortnit V

V · THE MAID OF MUNTABUR

Suders surrenders, and Alberich carries the banner and guides the army to Muntabur, breaks the heathens' missiles at night, and tells Machorel to give his daughter up. In the battle he shows the princess the strife and her gods' weakness, and she sends Ortnit her ring to save her father. Alberich leads her out to Ortnit, who carries her off; Machorel pursues, and Ortnit, exhausted, offers to yield before Ilias rescues him and the heathens flee. Alberich and Ilias baptize the princess at sea on the way home, and the wedding is held at Garda.

347 Diu stat wart besetzet und ouch die naht behuot.
The city was garrisoned and also the night guarded.

swaz den Lamparten und den Riuzen dûhte guot,
whatever to-the Lombard and to-the Russian seemed good,

die heiden tâten gerne des si der künic bat:
the heathens did gladly what them the king bade:

si gâben im ûf genâde ir lîp und ouch die stat.
they gave to-him on grace their body and also the city.

348 Sus lâgens âne sorgen die naht unz an den tac.
Thus lay-they without cares the night until to the day.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'niht lenger ich enmac
then spoke the Lombard 'not longer I can

in diser stat belîben. nu wol ûf, ez ist zît:
in this city remain. now well up, it is time:

wir suln gên Muntabûre' sprach der künec Ortnît.
we shall toward Muntabur' spoke the king Ortnit.

‘Nu wol ûf, küener Riuze, und rechen unsern zorn. 349
‘Now well up, bold Russian, and avenge our wrath.

ouch rechen unser liute, die wir haben verlorn.
also avenge our people, whom we have lost.

die tôten ligent immer in dem herzen mîn.
the dead lie ever in the heart mine.

der vergizze ich nimmer, mir enwerd diu künigîn.’
them forget I never, to-me unless-become the queen.’

Die dannoch bî im wâren, die sûmten sich dô nieht. 350
Who still by him were, they delayed themselves then not.

vil manic wîze brünne und manegen helm lieht,
very many-a white mail-shirt and many-a helmet bright,

herte stâlringe die hetens an geleit;
hard steel-rings them had-they on laid;

si zogten ûz der veste ûf die grüenen heide breit.
they marched out-of the fortress onto the green heath broad.

Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘nu wol ûf, mîne man! 351
Then spoke the Lombard ‘now well up, my men!

alrêrste wil ich strîten, nu ich ze lebene hân.
first-of-all will I fight, now I to live have.

ich muoz die burc gewinnen, od ich vliese mînen lîp:
I must the castle win, or I lose my life:

ich geruowe nimmer, mir werde dan daz wîp.
I rest never, to-me become unless the woman.

Die mir her habent gevolget, die wil ich alle manen. 352
Who me hither have followed, them will I all remind.

Ŷljas von Riuzen, nim mînen sturmvanen.
Ilias of Russia, take my battle-banner.

sehzehen tûsent helde die volgen uns an den graben:
sixteen thousand heroes they follow us to the moat:

uns getar der heiden nimmer die burc mit strîte vor gehaben.'
us dares the heathen never the castle with battle before hold.'

353 Mit jâmer sprach der Riuze 'ich weiz niht war ich sol.
With sorrow spoke the Russian 'I know not whither I shall.

in walhischen rîchen hiet ich die künde wol,
in Italian realms had I the knowledge well,

daz ich die liute fuorte die rehten strâze hin.
that I the people led the right road thither.

si riten nach mir irre: ich enweiz selb wâ ich bin.'
they rode after me astray: I not-know self where I am.'

354 'Wolt ir mir nu volgen' sô sprach daz getwerc,
'(If)-will you me now follow' so spoke the dwarf,

'die helde wil ich wîsen durch tal und durch berc
'the heroes will I guide through dale and through hill

unz an des berges hœhe, dâ Muntabûr lît.'
until to the mountain's height, where Muntabur lies.'

'nu lôn dir got von himele' sprach der künec Ortnît.
'now reward thee God of heaven' spoke the king Ortnit.

355 'Dîn ros daz heiz mir lîhen, daz man dâ füret an der hant.
'Thy horse that bid me lend, that one there leads by the hand.

den vanen wil ich füeren unz in des küneges lant.
the banner will I carry until into the king's land.

ob si dich dar umbe frâgen, die dir rîtent bî,
if they thee there for ask, who to-thee ride by,

wer dînen vanen füere, sô sprich daz ichz der engel sî.'
who thy banner carries, so say that I-it the angel be.'

Im gap der Lamparte daz ros in sîn gewalt 356
To-him gave the Lombard the horse into his power

und satzte in drûf gereite. sîn brogen wart manicvalt.
and set him thereon ready. his prancing became manifold.

den vanen habte er vaste: dô reit er für daz her.
the banner held he fast: then rode he before the host.

dô wiste er die helde die strâze âne wer.
then showed he the heroes the road without hindrance.

Die Walhe sprâchen alle und gesegenten sêre sich, 357
The Italians spoke all and crossed sorely themselves,

'rîcher künic hêre, wenne wil du segen dich?
'rich king lordly, when wilt thou cross thyself?

sihstu niht daz wunder daz dir ist beschert?
seest-thou not the wonder that to-thee is granted?

wer ist daz ûf dîm rosse mit dem vanen vert?'
who is that on thy horse with the banner goes?'

Des lachten si vil suoze, die zwêne künege hêr. 358
Of-that laughed they very sweetly, the two kings lordly.

si sâhenz alters eine und ander niemen mêr.
they saw-it all alone and other no-one more.

'ez ist der gotes engel' sprach der künec Ortnît,
'it is the God's angel' spoke the king Ortnit,

'der uns sîn geleite für Muntabûr gît.
'who us his escort before Muntabur gives.

Dar an sult ir gedenken: swelhe hie vervarn, 359
There on shall you think: whoever here perish,

die füeret er hinz himele: ir sult iuch enstrît niht sparn,
them leads he to heaven: you shall yourselves in-strife not spare,

des wâren die Lamparten alle harte frô.
of-that were the Lombards all very glad.

'sô sul wir gerne strîten' sprâchens, 'und ist im sô.'
'so shall we gladly fight' spoke-they, 'if is it so.'

360 Dem zeichen si dô volgten und nâmens alle war.
The sign they then followed and took-it all heed.

dô sprâchen ir iegelîcher 'nu wenne kom wir dar?'
then spoke of-them each-one 'now when come we thither?'

dô riten die unverzagten fürbaz ûf daz velt.
then rode the undaunted further onto the field.

vil lûte rief der kleine 'nu slaht ûf iwer gezelt!
very loudly called the little-one 'now pitch up your tents!

361 Wilt du die burc schouwen, sô rît her, Ortnît.
(If)-wilt thou the castle behold, so ride hither, Ortnit.

iezuo wil ich dich wîsen, wâ Muntabûr lît.
now will I thee show, where Muntabur lies.

nu gip hin dem Riuzen den vanen an die hant.
now give away to-the Russian the banner into the hand.

ir sehet nu wol die hœhe und auch die steinwant.'
you see now well the height and also the rock-wall.'

362 Ez nam der starke Riuze den vanen in zorne dô.
It took the strong Russian the banner in wrath then.

daz sie die burc gesâhen, des wârens alle frô.
that they the castle saw, of-that were-they all glad.

der Riuze wolt vor zorne ninder ûf gehaben:
the Russian would for wrath nowhere up hold:

er truoc die banier vaste unz an den burcgraben.
he carried the banner fast until to the castle-moat.

In die burclîten er den vanen stiez. 363
Into the castle-slope he the banner thrust.

des Lamparten liute er dô herbergen hiez.
the Lombard's people he then encamp bade.

der marschalc in erloubte neben der burc daz velt.
the marshal to-them allowed beside the castle the field.

dô dactens über anger manec hêrlich gezelt,
then roofed-they over meadow many-a lordly tent,

Als imz der rîche heiden ze Messîn het gegeben. 364
As him-it the rich heathen at Messina had given.

der wâren zwei von golde gestricket und geweben.
of-them were two of gold knitted and woven.

swenn man diu zerbreite, ir dach den schaten truoc,
whenever one them spread-out, their roof the shade bore,

daz hundert ritter hêten dar under rûms genuoc.
that hundred knights had there under of-room enough.

Von helfenbeine stangen lûter als ein spiegelglas. 365
Of ivory poles clear as a mirror-glass.

daz an der stangen orte der knoph der hütten was,
that at the pole's point the knob of-the tent was,

dâ was în gesenket ein karfunkelstein,
there was in sunk a carbuncle-stone,

der in den palas reht als ein kerze schein.
which into the palace right as a candle shone.

Si heten der burc ze nâhen ir hütten ûf gezogen. 366
They had to-the castle too near their tents up drawn.

si wolden danne trîben die heiden mit ir bogen.
they would thence drive the heathens with their bows.

‘wir ligen al ze nâhen’ sprach der künic rîch.
‘we lie all too near’ spoke the king rich.

‘ich trûwe ez wol erwenden’ sprach aber Alberîch.
‘I trust it well to-avert’ spoke again Alberich.

367 ‘Vor dirre burcmûre sult ir stille ligen.
‘Before this castle-wall shall you still lie.

ich mache daz noch hînte ir schallens wirt geswigen.
I make that yet tonight their din becomes silenced.

swazs ûf der burcmûre geschozzes mügen haben,
whatever-they on the castle-wall of-missiles may have,

daz wil ich in allez brechen und werfen in den graben.
that will I to-them all break and throw into the moat.

368 Ich wil noch hînte hüeten’ sprach aber daz getwerc.
I will yet tonight keep-watch’ spoke again the dwarf.

urloup namz zuo dem künege und huop sich ûf den berc.
leave took-it to the king and raised itself onto the mountain.

dô suochte ez ûf der mûre; swaz ez geschozzes vant,
then sought it on the wall; whatever it of-missiles found,

daz brach inz gar mitalle und warf ez von der want.
that broke it-them wholly altogether and threw it from the wall.

369 Dô sprach von Lamparten der künic Ortnît
Then spoke of Lombardy the king Ortnit

‘sich, wâ diu wer der heiden elliu in dem graben lît!
‘see, where the defense of-the heathens all in the moat lies!

nu slâfe wir mit freuden unze morgen fruo:
now sleep we with joys until tomorrow early:

wir sîn des vil ân angest, daz man uns nu iht tuo.’
we are of-that very without fear, that one to-us now anything does.’

Die heiden riefen lûte ‘der tievel der ist komen. 370
The heathens called loudly ‘the devil he is come.

des wir ze wer bedurfen, daz hât man uns benomen.
what we for defense need, that has one from-us taken.

du solt disem künege dîn tohter gerne geben:
thou shalt to-this king thy daughter gladly give:

und wirt er unser gwaltic, er nimt uns allen daz leben.’
if becomes he of-us powerful, he takes from-us all the life.’

Dô sprach des küneges frouwe, diu guote heidenîn, 371
Then spoke the king’s lady, the good heathen-woman,

‘du möhtest wol dem künege geben die tohter dîn.
‘thou mightest well to-the king give the daughter thine.

du maht sîn wol engelten, wil du im dîn kint versagen,
thou mayst for-it well pay, (if)-wilt thou to-him thy child refuse,

der Suders hât zebrochen und die liute drinne erslagen.’
who Suders has broken and the people therein slain.’

Ûf huob er die fûst und sluoc si in den munt. 372
Up raised he the fist and struck her in the mouth.

‘wil du mirs iht mêre râten, du wirdest ungesunt.’
‘(if)-wilt thou me-of-it any more counsel, thou becomest unwell.’

dô sprach diu küniginne ‘sîn got geb im die kraft,
then spoke the queen ‘his God give to-him the strength,

daz er noch über uns beiden werde sigehaft.’
that he yet over us both becomes victorious.’

Dô sprach ein wîser heiden ze dem künege ‘nu nim rât, 373
Then spoke a wise heathen to the king ‘now take counsel,

sît daz dîn burc sô veste der were niht enhât.’
since that thy castle so firm the defense not has.’

der heiden sprach in zorne ‘sît wir vierzic tûsent haben,
the heathen spoke in wrath ‘since we forty thousand have,

wir suln mit in vehten morgen ûf dem burcgraben.’
we shall with them fight tomorrow on the castle-moat.’

374 Albrich erhôrte schiere daz si heten gelobt.
Alberich heard soon what they had vowed.

er sprach ze dem alten heiden ‘hêr künec, ich wæne ir tobt,
he spoke to the old heathen ‘sir king, I think you rage,

iuch mugen niht gefristen alle die nu lebendic sint.
you may not preserve all who now living are.

er hæht dich an die zinne od du gebest im dîn kint.’
he hangs thee on the battlements unless thou give to-him thy child.’

375 Mit zorne sprach der heiden ‘waz hât dich nu her brâht?
With wrath spoke the heathen ‘what has thee now hither brought?

der rede der du muotest, der ist mir ungedâht.
the speech which thou desirest, it is to-me unthought.

daz ir sô nâhen kômet, daz müget ir gote klagen.
that you so near came, that may you to-God lament.

des muoz mîn burcmûre iwer aller houbet tragen.’
of-that must my castle-wall your all heads bear.’

376 ‘Des wirdest du wol inne’ sprach aber Alberîch.
‘Of-that becomest thou well aware’ spoke again Alberich.

‘ob vor der burc niht wære der Lamparte rîch,
‘if before the castle not were the Lombard rich,

du müesest dîne tohter mir alters eine geben.
thou must thy daughter to-me all alone give.

dich beschermet niemen, ich beneme dir dîn leben.’
thee protects no-one, I take-from thee thy life.’

Mit stecken und mit steinen warf er dem kleinen nâch. 377
With sticks and with stones threw he the little-one after.

er vorht sich harte kleine; von im was im gâch.
he feared himself very little; from him was to-him haste.

er hiete in gerne troffen: dô er in dâ niht sach,
he had him gladly hit: when he him there not saw,

dô wart er aber sô zornic daz er sîn hâr ûz brach.
then became he again so wrathful that he his hair out tore.

Dô huop sich aber der kleine von der steinwant 378
Then raised himself again the little-one from the rock-wall

nider zuo der erden, da er Ortnîden vant.
down to the earth, where he Ortnit found.

'ja enbiutet dir der heiden den offenlichen strît.'
'yea announces to-thee the heathen the open battle.'

'so enger ich nihtes mêre' sprach der künec Ortnît.
'so desire I nothing more' spoke the king Ortnit.

Dô slief er in den sorgen die naht unz an den tac. 379
Then slept he in the cares the night until to the day.

wie schiere er dô erwachte, swie er in ruowe lac!
how soon he then awoke, however he in rest lay!

in manlîcher stimme er vil lûte rief
in manly voice he very loudly called

dem künege von den Riuzen, der dannoch bî im slief.
to-the king of the Russians, who still by him slept.

'Wie lange wil du slâfen, von Riuzen Ŷljas? 380
'How long wilt thou sleep, of Russia Ilias?

wir suln mit dem bluote begiezen daz grüene gras!
we shall with the blood besprinkle the green grass!

si wellent mit uns strîten ûf dem burcgraben.
they will with us fight on the castle-moat.

nu heben wir uns bî zîten, daz wir den berc behaben.'
now raise we ourselves in time, that we the mountain hold.'

381 Ir liehtez sturmgewæte daz slouften si dô an.
Their bright battle-raiment that slipped they then on.

dô truoc man gein der porten den Ortnîdes van,
then carried one toward the gate the Ortnit's banner,

den der starke Riuze mit gewalte truoc.
which the strong Russian with force carried.

ei waz der Lamparte der heiden nider sluoc!
ah what the Lombard of-the heathens down struck!

382 Die heiden riefen alle 'nu setzen uns ze wer.
The heathens called all 'now set ourselves to defense.

ez gâhet gegen der bürge der künic und sîn her.'
there hastens toward the castle the king and his host.'

innerhalp der mûre wart sîn ludem grôz.
within the wall became his din great.

der heiden gerte strîtes, die porten man ûf slôz.
the heathen desired battle, the gates one up unlocked.

383 Dô dranc dâ zesamene diu sturmgîte diet.
Then pressed there together the battle-greedy people.

si wolten sich versuochen. niemen si dô schiet.
they would themselves try. no-one them then parted.

dô werten sich die geste der wirte unverzeit.
then defended themselves the guests the hosts undaunted.

dô sluoc sich zu den brüsten diu minneclîche meit.
then struck herself on the breasts the lovely maid.

Daz hâr alsam die sîden si ûz der swarte brach. 384
The hair like the silk she out-of the scalp tore.

si vorhte ir vater tôdes, dô si den strît gesach.
she feared her father's death, when she the battle saw.

diu muoter nam ir tohter mit jâmer bî der hant:
the mother took her daughter with sorrow by the hand:

si gie zuo ir bethûs, dâ si die sarke vant.
she went to her prayer-house, where she the coffins found.

Vor ir abgötern beiden sprach si ir gebet. 385
Before their idols both spoke she her prayer.

si vlêgte harte dicke Apollen und Mahmet.
she besought very often Apollo and Mahomet.

daz hâr ir von dem nacke gie nider für den fuoz,
the hair to-her from the neck went down to the foot,

zeroufet und verworren. jæmerliche was ir gruoz.
torn and tangled. woeful was her greeting.

Dô schein ir durch die zöpfe ir hals alsam der snê. 386
Then shone to-her through the braids her neck like the snow.

dô tet Alberîchen der meide jâmer wê.
then did to-Alberich the maid's sorrow woe.

swâ durch ir schœne zöpfe daz näckelîn erschein,
wherever through her fair braids the little-nape appeared,

daz bran als ez wære ein karfunkelstein.
that burned as it were a carbuncle-stone.

Ir munt bran als ein rôse und als ein rubîn. 387
Her mouth burned as a rose and as a ruby.

gelîch dem vollen mânen lûht ir beider ougen schîn.
like the full moon shone of-her both eyes' shine.

si was in rehter grœze, ze beiden sîten smal,
she was in right greatness, at both sides slender,

gedræt als ein kerze von den armen hin ze tal.
turned as a candle from the arms down to dale.

388 Ir arme sleht, ir hende, dâ nihtes niht gebrach.
Her arms smooth, her hands, there nothing at-all lacked.

ir nagel dar an sô lûter, daz man sich drinne ersach.
her nails there on so clear, that one oneself therein saw.

ir wengel mit ir trähenen wârn beidenthalp bestreut,
her cheeks with her tears were on-both-sides strewn,

reht als ez berle wæren: diu meit was ungefreut.
right as it pearls were: the maid was ungladdened.

389 Dô wart der meide jâmer harte grœzlîchen starc.
Then became the maid's sorrow very mightily strong.

si vlêgten ir göter beide und vielen für den sarc.
they besought their gods both and fell before the coffin.

sich krazte unde roufte diu frouwe minneclîch:
herself scratched and tore the lady lovely:

dô huop ir die hende der lützel Alberîch.
then raised for-her the hands the little Alberich.

390 Ir hende minneclîchen er in sîn hende gevie.
Her hands lovingly he in his hands caught.

diu frouwe sprach zir muoter 'wer ist bî mir hie?
the lady spoke to-her mother 'who is by me here?

wer ist der mich dâ væhet und mich sô vaste hât?
who is he-who me there catches and me so fast has?

er tuot unhovelîchen, daz er mich niht enlât.'
he does uncourtly, that he me not lets.'

Dô sprach diu maget schône ‘lâ mich durch mîne bet. 391
Then spoke the maid fair ‘let me for my request.

weder bistuz Apolle oder Mahmet?
whether art-thou-it Apollo or Mahomet?

hilf mir ûz den sorgen, bistuz mîn abgot.’
help me out-of the cares, art-thou-it my idol.’

‘nein ich’ sprach der kleine, ‘ich binz von himel ein bot.’
‘no I’ spoke the little-one, ‘I am-it from heaven a messenger.’

‘Wie tarst mich danne rüeren vor den götern mîn? 392
‘How darest me then touch before the gods mine?

du solt mich balde lâzen’ sô sprach daz magedîn,
thou shalt me quickly let-go’ so spoke the maiden,

‘sie handelnt dich lîht übele, und sint si bî mir hie.’
‘they handle thee easily ill, if are they by me here.’

‘nu enruoche’ sprach der kleine, ‘ich bin sterker danne sie.’
‘now never-mind’ spoke the little-one, ‘I am stronger than they.’

‘Nu sage mir waz du werbest’ sprach diu schœne meit. 393
‘Now tell me what thou pursuest’ spoke the fair maid.

mit zühten sprach der kleine ‘ez wirt dir wol geseit.
with courtesies spoke the little-one ‘it will-be to-thee well said.

mîn meister von den himelen hât mich zuo dir gesant,
my master from the heavens has me to thee sent,

du solt küniginne werden über elliu Walhen lant.’
thou shalt queen become over all Italy’s land.’

Dô sprach diu maget edele ‘an der rede bist du betrogen. 394
Then spoke the maid noble ‘in the speech art thou deceived.

ich bin in der heidenschefte geborn und gezogen.
I am in the heathendom born and raised.

dâ muoz ich inne ersterben' sprach diu künigîn,
there must I in die' spoke the queen,
'ich wil bî mîner muoter und bî mînem vater sîn.'
'I will by my mother and by my father be.'

395 Dô sprach aber der kleine 'diu rede frumt dir niht.
Then spoke again the little-one 'the speech profits thee not.
an dînem schœnen lîbe ein wunder grôz geschiht,
on thy fair body a wonder great happens,
daz du niht überwindest die wîle und daz du lebest,
that thou not overcomest the while and that thou livest,
dâ von daz du sô sêre wider dînen schepher strebest.'
there from that thou so sorely against thy creator strivest.'

396 Dô sprach diu juncfrouwe 'daz enweiz ich wer der ist,
Then spoke the young-lady 'that not-know I who that is,
der mich hât beschaffen.' er sprach 'der heizet Krist.
who me has created.' he spoke 'he is-called Christ.
erst gewaltic über die erde und über daz himelrîch
he-is mighty over the earth and over the heavenly-kingdom
und über alle geschefte' sô sprach Alberîch.
and over all creatures' so spoke Alberich.

397 'Swes du dir maht erdenken, daz ist im undertân.
'Whatever thou to-thyself mayst devise, that is to-him subject.
wil du den Lamparten niht ze einem man,
(if)-wilt thou the Lombard not as a husband,
verseist im dînen willen, sô dunkest du mich tump:
refusest to-him thy will, so seemest thou to-me foolish:
an handen und an füezen machet er dich krump.
on hands and on feet makes he thee crooked.

Er nimt dir dîn schœne und macht dich dar zuo blint. 398
He takes from-thee thy beauty and makes thee there to blind.

du solt an in gelouben: nu bist duz doch sîn kint.
thou shalt in him believe: now art thou-it yet his child.

von im hâst du die schœne und ouch dîn varwe lieht.'
from him hast thou the beauty and also thy color bright.'

dô sprach diu juncfrouwe 'dînen got fürhte ich nieht.'
then spoke the young-lady 'thy God fear I not.'

Dô half in vil lützel swaz er si mêre gebat. 399
Then helped him very little whatever he her more besought.

den strît wolte er schouwen: an daz venster er getrat.
the battle would he behold: to the window he stepped.

dâ warte er welch ez bezzer an dem strîte möhte haben:
there watched he which it better in the battle might have:

die kristen triben die heiden vaste über den graben.
the Christians drove the heathens hard over the moat.

Der Lamparte ein lucken beidenthalben sluoc. 400
The Lombard a gap on-both-sides struck.

der Riuze mit gewalte den vanen nâch im truoc
the Russian with force the banner after him bore

unz an die burcporten. er leinte in an die want.
until to the castle-gate. he leaned it against the wall.

dâ nâmen si dô beide diu swert ze beider hant.
there took they then both the swords in both hands.

Dô sprach ze der juncfrouwen der lützel Alberîch 401
Then spoke to the young-lady the little Alberich

'wil du den strît schouwen, küniginne rîch?
'wilt thou the battle behold, queen rich?

swaz dir mîn got gebiutet, læst du des niht geschehen,
whatever thee my God commands, (if)-lettest thou that not happen,

sô muost in disem strîte dînen vater tôten sehen.'
so must-thou in this battle thy father dead see.'

402 Dô sprach diu juncfrouwe 'der heiden ist doch vil.'
Then spoke the young-lady 'of-the heathens is yet many.'

'sô hilfe ich mînen gesellen alles des ich wil.'
'so help I my companions in-all that I will.'

diu junge und diu alte trâten zuo im dô:
the young and the old stepped to him then:

dô si den strît ersâhen, si wurden beide unfrô.
when they the battle saw, they became both unglad.

403 'Sihstu' sprach der kleine 'mînes gotes zorn?
'Seest-thou' spoke the little-one 'my God's wrath?

verkêrst du dich niht schiere, sô ist dîn vater verlorn.
(if)-turnest thou thyself not soon, so is thy father lost.

du möhtest den Lamparten gerne kiesen zeinem man,
thou mightest the Lombard gladly choose as-a husband,

ê daz hiute an iu allen grœzer schade wurde getân.'
before that today on you all greater harm were done.'

404 Dô sprach diu meit in zühten 'man? waz ist ouch daz?
Then spoke the maid in courtesies 'husband? what is also that?

ich gelobe dirs nimmer, du bescheidest mich sîn baz.'
I promise thee-it never, thou instructest me of-it better.'

'du gelernest harte schiere' sprach diu muoter 'mannes site.
'thou learnest very soon' spoke the mother 'man's manner.

ê dan dîn vater sterbe, sô tuo des er dich bite.'
before than thy father dies, so do what he thee asks.'

Mit zühten sprach der kleine ‘vil guot ist mannes lîp. 405
With courtesies spoke the little-one ‘very good is man’s body.

wil du den mannen volgen, sô muost du werdn ein wîp.
(if)-wilt thou the men follow, so must thou become a woman.

gewonst dus eine wîle, die naht unz an den tac,
(if)-accustomest thou-it a while, the night until to the day,

ez mac dir alsô lieben, daz dirz niemen erleiden mac.’
it may to-thee so please, that thee-it no-one spoil may.’

‘Nu sî mir weder ez welle, liep oder leit, 406
‘Now be to-me whether it will, dear or loath,

ich wil mich doch niht kêren an dîn kunterfeit.
I will myself yet not turn to thy counterfeit.

ich geleiste nimmer dîn bete noch dîn gebot,
I perform never thy request nor thy command,

ich sehe dan ob du mügest sîn sterker dan mîn got.
I see unless whether thou mayest be stronger than my god.

Nu gesach ich dich hiute sô kreftic noch sô starc, 407
Now saw I thee today so mighty nor so strong,

daz du mîne gote rüerest od iren sarc.’
that thou my gods touchest or their coffin.’

vil schiere het der kleine die sarke ûf erhaben:
very soon had the little-one the coffins up raised:

er sluoc si umb die mûre und warf si in den graben.
he struck them against the wall and threw them into the moat.

‘Wartâ’ sprach der Riuze, ‘der strît ist wünneclîch, 408
‘Look’ spoke the Russian, ‘the battle is delightful,

den dâ strîtet ûf der mûre der lützel Alberîch.
who there fights on the wall the little Alberich.

ich enweiz wer im helfe: er hât den strît erhaben:
I not-know who him helps: he has the battle begun:

der heiden apgöter ligent alle in dem graben.'
the heathens' idols lie all in the moat.'

409 Nu was der heiden harte wênic hie vor.
Now was of-the heathens very few here before.

dô triben si die kristen unz an daz bürgetor.
then drove they the Christians until to the castle-gate.

dô sprach diu juncfrouwe 'nu wis sîn frideschilt,
then spoke the young-lady 'now be his peace-shield,

daz ich den vater iht vliese: ich tuon allez daz du wilt.'
that I the father not lose: I do all that thou wilt.'

410 Mit witzen sprach der kleine 'des solt du dich niht wern,
With wits spoke the little-one 'of-that shalt thou thyself not defend,

wilt du die heiden mit dînem vater nern.
(if)-wilt thou the heathens with thy father save.

wil du daz ich ez lâze mit guotem fride sîn,
(if)-wilt thou that I it let with good peace be,

den künic soltu kiesen, sent im dîn vingerlîn.'
the king shalt-thou choose, send to-him thy little-ring.'

411 'Ich hân ez im geheizen, nu muoz ez ouch geschehen.
'I have it to-him promised, now must it also happen.

sol ich sîn ze friunde muoten, sô lâz mich in êrste sehen.'
(if)-shall I him as friend desire, so let me him first see.'

dô sprach aber der kleine 'sihstu, wer dort stât?
then spoke again the little-one 'seest-thou, who there stands?

jener der sô vil der heiden für sich geslagen hât.
yonder-one who so many of-the heathens before himself struck has.

Ûz allen halspergen sô liuhtet sîn gewant, 412
Out-of all hauberks so shines his clothing,

sam in vinsterm hûse ein kerze wære enzant.
as in dark house a candle were kindled.

er vihtet vor in allen, bluotic ist sîn swert.'
he fights before them all, bloody is his sword.'

'entriuwen' sprach diu muoter, 'er ist eins biderben wîbes wert.'
'in-faith' spoke the mother, 'he is of-a worthy woman worth.'

Dô sprach diu juncfrouwe 'nu bring im hin mîn golt. 413
Then spoke the young-lady 'now bring to-him thither my gold.

sage dem Lamparten, ich bin im mit triuwen holt.
tell the Lombard, I am to-him with faith favorable.

bit in daz er entwîche von der burc mit sîme her.
bid him that he withdraw from the castle with his host.

ich tuon swaz er gebiutet, daz er mir den vater ner.'
I do whatever he commands, that he for-me the father save.'

Dô wart der kleine biderbe der rede harte frô. 414
Then became the little-one worthy of-the speech very glad.

daz vingerlîn er griphte, ze dem künege gie er dô
the little-ring he grasped, to the king went he then

'ô wol dich dirre mære, künic Ortnît,
'oh well thee for-these tidings, king Ortnit,

daz schiere ein schœniu juncfrou an dînem arme lît.'
that soon a fair young-lady on thy arm lies.'

415 Der künic wart getrœstet, daz er des strîts vergaz.
The king was comforted, that he of-the strife forgot.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'nu sage mir fürbaz
then spoke the Lombard 'now tell me further

waz mir mîn frouwe enbiete, diu edele künigîn.'
what to-me my lady announces, the noble queen.'

'daz tuots ir holde minne und sant dir daz vingerlîn.
'that does-it her kind love and sent thee the little-ring.

416 Nu heiz et ûf hœren, ir habt genuoc gestriten.
Now bid just up stop, you have enough fought.

dîn frouwe und ouch ir muoter heizent dich des biten,
thy lady and also her mother bid thee of-that ask,

daz du der bürge entwîchest und die heiden lâzest leben.
that thou from-the castle withdrawest and the heathens let live.

den ir lîp schœnen wil si in dîne genâde geben.'
the their body fair will she into thy grace give.'

417 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'entriwen, daz muoz geschehen.
Then spoke the Lombard 'in-faith, that must happen.

wære ich nu sô sælic, daz ich si solde sehen!'
were I now so blessed, that I her should see!'

in zorne sprach der Riuze 'lâz ez ungefridet sîn:
in wrath spoke the Russian 'let it unpeaced be:

dir wirt doch wol diu frouwe. hilf mir zuo der porten în.'
to-thee becomes yet well the lady. help me to the gate in.'

418 Mit zorne sprach der kleine 'wie solte ein schœnez wîp,
With wrath spoke the little-one 'how should a fair woman,

bî dem gewinnen freude, der ir vater nam den lîp?
by him win joy, who from-her father took the life?

er möht wol tuon mit êren des in diu frouwe bat.
he might well do with honors what him the lady bade.

in nummer dumme nâmen! du wirdest nimmer vehtens sat.'
in name of-the-Lord amen! thou becomest never of-fighting sated.'

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich wil ir niht versagen.' 419
Then spoke the Lombard 'I will her not refuse.'

dô heten ouch die heiden die porten zuo geslagen.
then had also the heathens the gates shut struck.

si wolden niht mêr strîten. zuo sluogen si daz tor:
they would not more fight. shut struck they the gate:

Ortnîden und die sînen liezen si hie vor.
Ortnit and the his-own let they here before.

Dô blies der künic rîche sîn lützel herhorn. 420
Then blew the king rich his little army-horn.

dô het er sîner helde ein michel teil verlorn.
then had he of-his heroes a great part lost.

drîzic tûsent helde hêter wan fünf tûsent man.
thirty thousand heroes had-he but five thousand men.

und torsten doch die heiden die kristen niht bestân.
and dared yet the heathens the Christians not attack.

Dô kêrte von der veste der biderbe künic rîch. 421
Then turned from the fortress the worthy king rich.

'nu sul wir uns verbergen' sprach aber Alberîch;
'now shall we ourselves hide' spoke again Alberich;

'bî einer wisen grüene dâ weiz ich einen bach,
'by a meadow green there know I a brook,

dâ kan uns niemen vinden: dâ habe wir guot gemach.'
there can us no-one find: there have we good ease.'

422 Dô nam aber der Riuze den vanen an die hant.
Then took again the Russian the banner into the hand.

dô reit er trûriclîchen von der steinwant.
then rode he sorrowfully from the rock-wall.

er kêrte in ein wilde ûf ein heide breit,
he turned into a wild onto a heath broad,

dar in der kleine wiste; dâ wart daz her geleit.
there into the little-one showed; there was the host laid.

423 'Wir zwêne müezen widere' sprach daz getwerc.
'We two must back' spoke the dwarf.

'du solt mit mir rîten, Ortnît, für den berc.
'thou shalt with me ride, Ortnit, before the mountain.

des ich got wol getrûwe und den listen mîn,
of-that I God well trust and the arts mine,

daz wir von danne iht kêren, uns enwerd daz magedîn.
that we from thence anything turn, to-us unless-become the maiden.

424 Du solt sich heizen warnen ze strîte al dîn her.
Thou shalt itself bid prepare for battle all thy host.

für die burcmûre fuort ich wol liute mêr,
before the castle-wall led I well people more,

sô wurdens unser inne: wir möhten niht gehaben,
so became-they of-us aware: we might not hold,

uns berüefe der wahtære ûf dem burcgraben.
us called the watchman on the castle-moat.

425 Wir suln kûme widere komen ungestriten.
We shall hardly back come unfought.

du solt den künec von Riuzen und sîne helde biten,
thou shalt the king of Russia and his heroes ask,

swenn sô ich in rüefe, daz si dir ze hilfe komen.
whenever so I them call, that they to-thee for help come.

sûment si sich lange, sô wirt dir diu meit genomen.'
(if)-delay they themselves long, so is from-thee the maid taken.'

Dô riten die hergesellen wider zuo der steinwant. 426
Then rode the army-companions back to the rock-wall.

si kômen unvermeldet für die burcmûre gerant.
they came unbetrayed before the castle-wall running.

dâ hiez er Ortnîden an der burclîten haben.
there bade he Ortnit at the castle-slope halt.

dô gie er unvermeldet ûf den burcgraben.
then went he unbetrayed onto the castle-moat.

Dô steic er ungewarnet datz der mûre obene în. 427
Then climbed he unwarned there-at the wall above in.

er vant die juncfrouwen und die alten künigîn
he found the young-lady and the old queen

bî einander sitzen. manec heidenischez wîp
by each-other sit. many-a heathenish woman

die sâzen ob den tôten und qualten sêre ir lîp.
they sat over the dead and tormented sorely their body.

Ez sâzen bî einander die küniginne rîch. 428
There sat by each-other the queens rich.

zwischen ir beider sîten barc sich Alberîch.
between their both sides hid himself Alberich.

dô sprach der klein vil sanfte ze der jungen künigîn
then spoke the little-one very softly to the young queen

'wenne wil du leisten daz gelübde dîn?'
'when wilt thou perform the vow thine?'

429 ‘Daz tuon ich vil gerne swenne sô du wilt.
‘That do I very gladly whenever so thou wilt.

der künec hât aber den heiden des tievels mit gespilt.
the king has however with-the heathens the devil’s with played.

wil du michs niht erlâzen, sô gip mir dînen rât,
(if)-wilt thou me-it not release, so give me thy counsel,

wie ich dem helde werde, der mich sô tiure erarnet hât.’
how I to-the hero become, who me so dearly earned has.’

430 Dô sprach aber der kleine ‘wil du leisten mîn gebot,
Then spoke again the little-one ‘(if)-wilt thou perform my command,

sô sprich ze dîner muoter, ez sî aber komen got.’
so speak to thy mother, there be again come god.’

‘ich hân ez wol gehœret’ sprach des alten heiden wîp.
‘I have it well heard’ spoke the old heathen’s woman.

‘ich fürhte, ob ich irs hulfe, mir næme ir vater den lîp.’
‘I fear, if I her-in-it helped, from-me took her father the life.’

431 ‘Nu volget mîner lêre, daz ist iu beiden guot.
‘Now follow my teaching, that is to-you both good.

komt niht ûz mînem râte: ich sage iu waz ir tuot.
come not out-of my counsel: I tell you what you do.

du solt dîner tohter erlouben daz si gê,
thou shalt thy daughter allow that she go,

daz si ir apgot vlêge, Mahmeten, daz er ûf stê.’
that she her idol beseech, Mahomet, that he up stand.’

432 Dô sprach in lûter stimme daz schœne magedîn
Then spoke in loud voice the fair maiden

‘wil du mir erlouben, frouwe und muoter mîn,
‘(if)-wilt thou me allow, lady and mother mine,

sô wil ich für die porten ûf den burcgraben,
so will I before the gate onto the castle-moat,

des unser apgot beidiu mich gebeten haben.
of-which our idols both me asked have.

Si habent mir geheizen, si wellenz widertuon 433
They have to-me promised, they will-it undo

daz uns hât gelastert der Lamparten suon,
what us has dishonored the Lombard's son,

und jehent, welle ichs vlêgen, si komen wider în.'
and avow, (if)-will I-them beseech, they come back in.'

'dir sî der ganc erloubet' sprach diu alte künigîn.
'to-thee be the going allowed' spoke the old queen.

'Muoter unde frouwe, si habent mich gebeten, 434
'Mother and lady, they have me asked,

ich sol alters eine für die porten treten,
I shall all alone before the gate step,

daz ichs aleine schouwe und ander niemen mêr.'
that I-them alone behold and other no-one more.'

'dir sol niemen volgen.' des wart diu maget hêr.
'thee shall no-one follow.' of-that became the maid glad.

Si wolte niht geverten, swie vil man sis gebat. 435
She would not company, however much one her-of-it asked.

ûz der burcmûre diu frouwe aleine trat.
out-of the castle-wall the lady alone stepped.

dô nam der wilde kleine die maget bî der hant,
then took the wild little-one the maid by the hand,

und fuortes an die lîten dâ er Ortnîden vant.
and led-her to the slope where he Ortnit found.

436 Dô het Ortnît in strîte den tac sîn swert gezogen:
Then had Ortnit in battle the day his sword drawn:

er was vor müede entslâfen ûf sînen satelbogen.
he was for weariness fallen-asleep on his saddle-bow.

der kleine rief im lîse. dô er ims vil vertruoc,
the little-one called to-him softly. when he him-of-it much bore,

dô er niht wachen wolte, mit fiuste er in sluoc.
when he not wake would, with fist he him struck.

437 'Du wilt mit slâfe vliesen die êre und dînen lîp!
'Thou wilt with sleep lose the honor and thy life!

nu wache, Lamparte, ich bringe dir dîn wîp.'
now wake, Lombard, I bring to-thee thy woman.'

der Lamparte von dem slâfe erwachete unde sprach
the Lombard from the sleep awoke and spoke

'ôwol mich deich ie gelebte hiute disen tac!
'oh-well me that-I ever lived today this day!

438 Læg ich nu an dem tôde, ich wurde doch gesunt.'
Lay I now at the death, I would-become yet well.'

er umbevie und kuste si wol hundert stunt.
he embraced and kissed her well hundred times.

'ich wil dir daz erlouben' sprach aber Alberîch,
'I will thee that allow' spoke again Alberich,

'du halsest unde küssest die küniginne rîch:
'thou embracest and kissest the queen rich:

439 Du solt ab niht ze wîbe gewinnen daz magedîn,
Thou shalt however not as woman win the maiden,

unz daz si wirt getoufet: si ist ein heidenîn.
until that she is baptized: she is a heathen-woman.

nu hebe dich balde hinnen, geselle, daz rât ich.'
now raise thyself quickly hence, companion, that counsel I.'

er spranc in sîn gereite, die meit nam er für sich.
he sprang into his saddle, the maid took he before himself.

Von der burclîten si dô beidiu riten. 440
From the castle-slope they then both rode.

ir ros gienc enschûfte, niemens si dâ biten.
their horses went at-a-pace, for-no-one they there waited.

die heiden wolte er irren, Albrîch der was kluoc:
the heathens would he confound, Alberich he was clever:

der apgote er einen in die burc getruoc.
of-the idols he one into the castle carried.

Daz tet er durch die heiden, er machete einen spot. 441
That did he for the heathens, he made a mockery.

si wânden daz ez spræche Mahmet ir got.
they thought that it spoke Mahomet their god.

dô rief er bî dem sarke, dannoch in niemen sach,
then called he by the coffin, still him no-one saw,

die heiden wolte er effen: in lûter stimme er sprach
the heathens would he fool: in loud voice he spoke

'Vallet alle nidere und sprechet iwer gebet. 442
'Fall all down and speak your prayer.

danket der juncfrouwen, hie kom ich Mahmet.
thank the young-lady, here come I Mahomet.

ir sult alle danken der jungen künigîn,
you shall all thank the young queen,

diu hât mich des ervlêget und den gesellen mîn,
she has me of-it besought and the companions mine,

443 Daz wir her wider wellen in unser steinwant.
That we hither back will into our rock-wall.

seht zuo, ich hân mich selben geleinet an die want.
see to, I have myself self leaned against the wall.

die meit sol niemen irren, des hiezs iuch alle biten.
the maid shall no-one hinder, that bade-she you all ask.

diu kan uns wol geflêgen nâch heidenlîchen siten.'
she can us well beseech after heathenish manners.'

444 Alsô het er betœret die heiden alle gelîch.
So had he befooled the heathens all alike.

nâch dem Lamparten huop sich dô Alberîch
after the Lombard raised himself then Alberich

durch gebirge und durch gesteine, da er Ortnîden vant:
through mountains and through rocks, where he Ortnit found:

des ros truoc harte swâre, dar zuo het erz verrant.
whose horse carried very heavily, there to had he-it ridden-down.

445 In einer kemenâten der heiden saz verspart.
In a chamber the heathen sat shut-in.

vor zorne und vor grimme roufte er ûz den bart,
for wrath and for fury tore he out the beard,

daz er dem Lamparten daz laster muose vertragen.
that he to-the Lombard the disgrace must bear.

'tuot ûf' sprach ein kamerer, 'ich wil iu guotiu mære sagen.'
'open up' spoke a chamberlain, 'I will you good tidings tell.'

446 Dô sprach aber der heiden 'sag an und sint si guot?'
Then spoke again the heathen 'say on and are they good?'

'ich wil iu iuwer swære ringen und iuwern muot.
'I will to-you your heaviness lighten and your spirit.

Mahmet und Apolle die kômen wider în,
Mahomet and Apollo they came back in,
und hât si des ervlêget diu junge künigîn.'
and has them of-it besought the young queen.'

Mit zorne sprach der heiden 'jâ hêr, wâ ist mîn kint?' 447
With wrath spoke the heathen 'yea sir, where is my child?'
'si ist noch vor der porten, dâ ir göter sint.'
'she is still before the gate, where your gods are.'
'ouwê' sprach der alte, 'wie unsælic ich nu bin!
'alas' spoke the old-one, 'how unblessed I now am!
nu wol ûf zuo den rossen: mîn tohter ist dâ hin.'
now well up to the horses: my daughter is there gone.'

Dô wurden aber die heiden ze strîte wol gegart, 448
Then were again the heathens for battle well armed,
mit zwelf tûsent heiden het er sich schiere geschart.
with twelve thousand heathens had he himself soon arrayed.
dô was ouch Ortnîden der reise harte gâch:
then was also to-Ortnit for-the journey very hasty:
doch fuor im der heiden ûf sîner slage nâch.
yet went him the heathen on his track after.

Ûf manegem snellen rosse die heiden ranten dan. 449
On many-a swift horse the heathens ran thence.
dâ von der Lamparte fliehen began.
there from the Lombard flee began.
si sâhen in verre rîten, der mâne lûhte in lieht:
they saw him far ride, the moon shone to-them bright:
Ortnîdes ros was müede, ez mohte fürbaz nieht.
Ortnit's horse was weary, it might further not.

450 ‘Nu rât uns zwein daz beste, vil lieber Alberîch.
‘Now counsel us two the best, very dear Alberich.
ouwê, wem sol ich lâzen die maget wunneclîch?
alas, to-whom shall I leave the maid delightful?
nu müezen liehte ringe von bluote werden rôt.
now must bright rings from blood become red.
ê ich mich von ir scheide, ich gelige ê bî ir tôt.’
before I myself from her part, I lie rather by her dead.’

451 ‘Daz weiz got’ sprach der kleine, ‘ich hân mir niht erdâht,
‘That knows God’ spoke the little-one, ‘I have for-myself nothing devised,
wie ich dich hinne bringe. rît sô du beste maht.
how I thee hence bring. ride as thou best mayst.
ich weiz hie vil nâhen einen brunnen und ein mos,
I know here very near a spring and a bog,
da enmac man über geriten deheiner slahte ros.’
there may one over ride no kind-of horse.’

452 Dô sprach diu küniginne ‘ich wânde ez wær dîn spot.
Then spoke the queen ‘I thought it were thy mockery.
wes trûrest du sô sêre? nu hilfet dir dîn got.
why mournest thou so sorely? now helps thee thy God.
wie bin ich dem entrunnen, der mich hât erzogen!
how am I from-him escaped, who me has raised!
ez ist ein trügenwîse daz mich hât betrogen.
it is a deceiving-tune that me has deceived.

453 Ich râte dir daz beste’ sprach daz magedîn,
I counsel thee the best’ spoke the maiden,
‘daz du vil drâte entrinnest dem argen vater mîn.
‘that thou very quickly escapest the wicked father mine.

er ziuht dir ûz dîn âder, und erwischet dich sîn hant.
he draws to-thee out-of thy veins, and catches thee his hand.

ich mac dir niht gevolgen: setz mich nider ûf daz lant.
I may thee not follow: set me down onto the land.

Ich hân verlorn mîn êre, und tuot mir am lîbe niht; 454
I have lost my honor, and does to-me on-the body nothing;

doch klage ich immer mêre, ob dir schade von mir geschiht.'
yet lament I ever more, if to-thee harm from me happens.'

dô sprach der Lamparte 'daz wil ich dir widersagen:
then spoke the Lombard 'that will I to-thee refuse:

ê ich dich hiute lâze, ich lig ê bî dir erslagen.'
before I thee today leave, I lie rather by thee slain.'

Sîn ros daz truoc in schône unz dâ er vant den bach. 455
His horse it carried him fairly until where he found the brook.

dô spranc er zuo der erde, dâ er daz wazzer sach.
then sprang he to the earth, when he the water saw.

dô verwac er sich des markes, daz het der reise genuoc.
then renounced he himself the steed, that had of-the journey enough.

die maget er an dem arme über daz tiefe wazzer truoc,
the maid he on the arm over the deep water carried,

Von dem bache verre und satztes ûf den sant. 456
From the brook far and set-her onto the sand.

den schilt nam er ze rücke, daz swert in die hant.
the shield took he at back, the sword into the hand.

swie vil der vinde wæren, doch satzte er sich ze wer.
however many of-the foes were, yet set he himself to defense.

von im huop sich der kleine und brâhte im al sîn her.
from him raised himself the little-one and brought to-him all his host.

457 Daz si daz wazzer funden, daz kom im ze staten.
That they the water found, that came to-him to advantage.

si mohten niht gerîten, si muosten zuo im waten.
they might not ride, they must to him wade.

der heiden dô mit zorne erbeizete ûf daz gras,
the heathen then with wrath dismounted onto the grass,

und ouch sîn starkiu menege, diu mit im komen was.
and also his strong multitude, which with him come was.

458 Dô huop sich zuo den swerten der heiden und sîn rot.
Then raised itself to the swords the heathen and his troop.

dô vaht der Lamparte ze slage und ze gebot.
then fought the Lombard at blow and at command.

er muoste ot vaste vehten, dô man ins niht erlie.
he must just hard fight, when one him-of-it not spared.

er sluoc sô vil der heiden, daz man trucken über gie.
he struck so many of-the heathens, that one dry over went.

459 Doch betwanc in die müede, daz er ze lange vaht.
Yet overpowered him the weariness, that he too long fought.

do entweich im in den armen diu kraft und ouch diu maht.
then gave-way to-him in the arms the strength and also the might.

'ich mac nimêre gestriten. ouwê, war sol ich nuo?'
'I may no-more fight. alas, whither shall I now?'

dô sigen die Sarrazîne allenthalben zuo.
then sank the Saracens on-all-sides to.

460 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'mîn lîp des frides gert.
Then spoke the Lombard 'my body the peace desires.

welt ir mich nern, hêr heiden, sô gibe ich iu mîn swert.
(if)-will you me save, sir heathen, so give I you my sword.

ich enruoche ob ir mich vâhet, daz ir mich lâzet leben:
I never-mind if you me catch, that you me let live:
ich wilz iu ûf iuwer triuwe und ûf iwer genâde geben.'
I will-it to-you on your faith and on your grace give.'

'Durch mîner tohter willen sô nim ich dir den lîp.' 461
'For my daughter's sake so take I from-thee the life.'
'ich enweiz wes ir mich zîhet, si wart noch nie mîn wîp.'
'I not-know of-what you me accuse, she was yet never my woman.'
'alle die nu lebent die mugen dich niht ernern.'
'all who now live they may thee not save.'
'sô wil ich mich' sprach der arme 'noch eine wîle wern.
'so will I myself' spoke the poor-one 'yet a while defend.

Sô wer ich mich doch armer so ich aller lengste mac.' 462
So defend I myself yet poor-one as I all longest may.'
dô sach er liute rîten und hôrte ir huofslac.
then saw he people ride and heard their hoof-beat.
sîn herze in hoffenunge ein lützel kreftic was.
his heart in hope a little strong was.
'nu wer dich, lieber œheim!' sprach von Riuzen Ŷljas.
'now defend thyself, dear nephew!' spoke of Russia Ilias.

Die türken sach man springen vil baz dan enzelt. 463
The Turk-horses saw one spring much better than ambling.
der Riuze reit ze vorderst und erbeizete ûf daz velt
the Russian rode at foremost and dismounted onto the field
zuo sîner swester kinde, daz dâ in nœten was.
to his sister's child, who there in distress was.
'nu wer dich, lieber œheim!' sprach von Riuzen Ŷljas.
'now defend thyself, dear nephew!' spoke of Russia Ilias.

464 Dô sprach der Lamparte ‘ich touc niht an den strît.
Then spoke the Lombard ‘I avail not at the battle.

ir helde, ir sult mir helfen, wan ir geruowet sît.
you heroes, you shall me help, for you rested be.

ich gewan bî mînen zîten nie sô grôziu herzensêr.
I won in my times never so great heart-sore.

œheim, nu nim die Rôsen: ich mac niht strîten mêr.’
uncle, now take the Rose: I may not fight more.’

465 Des freute sich der Riuze, dô er die Rôsen vant.
Of-that rejoiced himself the Russian, when he the Rose found.

er nam dem Lamparten daz swert ûz der hant.
he took from-the Lombard the sword out-of the hand.

alrêrste huop sich jâmer und ein strît alsô grôz.
first-of-all raised itself sorrow and a battle so great.

dô viel der Lamparte der frouwen in die schôz.
then fell the Lombard to-the lady into the lap.

466 Si sprach ‘mir ist vil swære, daz ir in mîner schôze liget.
She spoke ‘to-me is very heavy, that you in my lap lie.

ir müget dâ von wol sterben, ob mîn vater iu an gesiget.’
you may there from well die, if my father over-you on wins.’

‘mirst leit deich dir niht næhner noch bin bî gelegen.’
‘to-me-is loath that-I by-thee not nearer yet am by lain.’

‘nu ergê mir, swie got welle, ich hân mich sîn gar verwegen.’
‘now befall me, as God will, I have myself of-it wholly resigned.’

467 Do erbat er si des kûme daz si im den helm ap bant.
Then besought he her of-it hardly that she to-him the helmet off bound.

si wischte in mit ir stûchen und mit ir wîzen hant.
she wiped him with her sleeves and with her white hand.

als in der alte heiden in der schôze ligen sach,
as him the old heathen in the lap lie saw,

dô viel er in die werre, daz er nie wort ensprach.
then fell he into the confusion, that he never word spoke.

Inner des die heiden mit den kristen sêre striten. 468
Within that the heathens with the Christians sorely fought.

si kômen über die tôten gegangen und geriten.
they came over the dead walking and ridden.

'nu wol ûf' sprach der Riuze, 'ez ist aber an der zît!
'now well up' spoke the Russian, 'it is again at the time!

müget ir iht gevehten, sô hebet iuch wider enstrît.'
(if)-may you anything fight, so raise yourselves back to-strife.'

Dô sprach der Lamparte 'daz muoz ot aber sîn. 469
Then spoke the Lombard 'that must just again be.

nu wünsche uns beiden heiles, vil liebiu frouwe mîn.
now wish us both of-luck, very dear lady mine.

ich weiz wol, wes si muotent, des werdents ouch gewert.'
I know well, what they desire, of-that will-be-they also granted.'

dô sprach der Lamparte 'nu gip mir wider mîn swert.'
then spoke the Lombard 'now give me back my sword.'

Zesamne si dô trâten, manec heiden wart dâ gevalt. 470
Together they then stepped, many-a heathen was there felled.

in lâgen ouch vor den füezen die kristen ungezalt.
to-them lay also before the feet the Christians uncounted.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'alrêrst hebt sich diu nôt:
then spoke the Lombard 'first-of-all raises itself the distress:

mir ligent mîner helde aber wol vier tûsent tôt.'
to-me lie of-my heroes again well four thousand dead.'

471 ‘Nu sul wir si rechen’ sprach von Riuzen Ŷljas.
‘Now shall we them avenge’ spoke of Russia Ilias.

dô drungen si dô beide dâ der alte heiden was.
then pressed they then both where the old heathen was.

der begunde in dô entwîchen mit sînem sturmvanen.
he began from-them then to-withdraw with his battle-banner.

do begunde ouch der Lamparte die sînen vaste manen.
then began also the Lombard the his-own hard remind.

472 Die heiden muosten entwîchen, vil lützel was ir her.
The heathens must withdraw, very little was their host.

si getorsten gegen den kristen sich setzen niht ze wer.
they dared against the Christians themselves set not to defense.

si vorhten alle sêre Ortnîdes unzuht:
they feared all sorely Ortnit's ill-breeding:

diu banier lac dâ nidere, der heiden gap die fluht.
the banner lay there down, the heathen gave the flight.

473 Ortnît begunde in zorne dô sînen sweher jagen,
Ortnit began in wrath then his father-in-law hunt,

und möhte ern haben erreichet, er hiete in gerne erslagen.
if might he-him have reached, he had him gladly slain.

er wart vor Muntabûre gejagt unz an daz tor:
he was before Muntabur chased until to the gate:

dar în entweich der heiden, Ortnît beleip hie vor.
there in escaped the heathen, Ortnit remained here before.

474 Die vînde wurden alle von dem strîte toup.
The foes became all from the battle deaf.

rosse und ringe nâmen die kristen grôzen roup.
horses and rings took the Christians great booty.

dô sprach ze der juncfrouwen der lützel Alberîch
then spoke to the young-lady the little Alberich

'nu muoz dîn vater ersterben, küniginne rîch.'
'now must thy father die, queen rich.'

Dô wart der juncfrouwen jâmer harte grôz. 475
Then became to-the young-lady sorrow very great.

ir vielen von ir ougen die zaher in ir schôz.
to-her fell from her eyes the tears into her lap.

'sol mir mîn vater sterben, sô sî ez gote gekleit.
'(if)-shall to-me my father die, so be it to-God lamented.

ich solte imz aber niht wîzen' sprach diu schoene meit.
I should him-it however not blame' spoke the fair maid.

'Er mac genesen nimmer, sô grimmic ist sîn muot. 476
'He may survive never, so grim is his spirit.

ouch hât erz wol verdienet: ich enruoch waz er im tuot.'
also has he-it well deserved: I not-care what he to-him does.'

dô kom der Lamparte wider zuo ir geriten:
then came the Lombard back to her ridden:

alrêrst het er den heiden den sige gar ab gestriten.
first-of-all had he from-the heathen the victory wholly off fought.

Er sprach ze der juncfrouwen 'sag wie gehabestu dich, 477
He spoke to the young-lady 'say how bearest-thou thyself,

friundinne unde frouwe? stant ûf und küsse mich.'
lady-friend and lady? stand up and kiss me.'

'daz getuon ich nimmer, du welst mir êrste sagen,
'that do I never, unless-thou wilt to-me first say,

künec, ûf dîne triuwe, hâst du mînen vater erslagen?'
king, on thy faith, hast thou my father slain?'

478 ‘Nein ich’ sprach der küene, ‘du solt guotes muotes wesen,
‘No I’ spoke the bold-one, ‘thou shalt of-good spirit be,

und wis mir deste holder: dîn vater ist genesen.
and be to-me the-more favorable: thy father is survived.

wær er mir niht entrunnen, ich hiet im den lîp benomen.’
were he from-me not escaped, I had from-him the life taken.’

dô sprach diu maget schœne ‘sô wis mir willekomen.’
then spoke the maid fair ‘so be to-me welcome.’

479 Si nâmen vil der rosse und ander sturmgewant.
They took many of-the horses and other battle-gear.

swaz er der lebentigen under den tôten vant,
whatever he of-the living among the dead found,

die wol genesen mohten, die fuorte er mit im dan.
who well survive might, them led he with him thence.

gesunder unde siecher het er niuwan tûsent man.
healthy and sick had he but a-thousand men.

480 Dô satzte er die juncfrouwen ûf ein kastelân.
Then set he the young-lady on a castilian.

si riten unverborgen vil offenlîchen dan.
they rode unbidden very openly thence.

ze Suders in der veste kundens des niht bewarn:
at Suders in the fortress could-they of-it not guard:

er wolte zuo den kielen mit sîner frouwen varn.
he would to the keels with his lady go.

481 Der reise si im wol gunden. dô fuor er ûf den sê;
The journey they to-him well granted. then went he onto the sea;

dâ het er von den heiden dehein angest mê.
there had he from the heathens no fear more.

dô mohte er ûf dem wâge strîtes sicher sîn.
then might he on the wave of-battle safe be.
Albrîch und der Riuze touften im die künigîn.
Alberich and the Russian baptized for-him the queen.

Ê si ze lande kômen, dô wart diu maget ein wîp. 482
Before they to land came, then became the maid a woman.
vater unde muoter vergazs durch sînen lîp.
father and mother forgot-she for his body.
an dem niunzehenden morgen fuorens in Messîn:
on the nineteenth morning went-they into Messina:
dâ hiez in aber der heiden gote willekomen sîn.
there bade them again the heathen to-God welcome be.

Dô wart vil wol enphangen der künic Ortnît. 483
Then was very well received the king Ortnit.
er het ouch mit der frouwen ûf Garte hôchzît.
he had also with the lady on Garda wedding.
die fürsten im riten engegene, frîen und dienstman.
the princes to-him rode toward, freemen and ministerials.
hin ist diu âventiure, heben aber ein ander an.
gone is the adventure, raise again an other on.

Ortnit VI

VI · THE DRAGON'S EGGS

Machorel, shut in his palace, takes a hunter's counsel. The hunter brings two dragon eggs to Lombardy hidden among gifts, claiming Machorel has converted, and hatches them in a cave near Trient. The grown worms devour the land's cattle and people, and Ortnit, though he fears for his queen, resolves to fight the worm.

484 Der heiden sich versparte in einen palas,
The heathen himself shut-in in a palace,

daz niemen in der werlde bî im dar inne was.
that no-one in the world by him there in was.

sus saz er verborgen unz an den dritten tac,
thus sat he hidden until to the third day,

daz er von sîner erge trinkens noch ezzens phlac.
that he from his malice drinking nor eating took-care.

485 Im getorste niemen ruofen, in getorste niemen sehen.
To-him dared no-one call, him dared no-one see.

swer in erzürnet hiete, dem wære schade geschehen.
whoever him angered had, to-him were harm happened.

ezzens noch trinkens getorste in niemen biten
of-eating nor of-drinking dared him no-one ask

noch deheines slâfes: dô kom ein jeger geriten.
nor of-any sleep: then came a hunter ridden.

486 Der frâgete wâ wære der liebe hêrre sîn.
He asked where were the dear lord his.

man jach, er wære beslozzen und lieze et niemen în.
one avowed, he were locked-in and let just no-one in.

dô sprach der jeger wîse ‘ich muoz in zwâre haben,
then spoke the hunter wise ‘I must him truly have,

hiet er sich under erde vor den liuten vergraben.’
had he himself under earth from the people buried.’

Iedoch wart er gewîset an der kemenâten tür. 487
Yet was he shown to the chamber’s door.

dô sprach er zuo dem künege ‘hêr, nu trit her für.
then spoke he to the king ‘sir, now step here forth.

dîn kint ist wol behalten: daz darftu nimmer klagen.
thy child is well kept: that needest-thou never lament.

wil du mirz immer danken, ich wil dir guotiu mære sagen.
(if)-wilt thou me-for-it ever thank, I will to-thee good tidings tell.

Sît dir ist sô leide daz du vlorn hâst daz wîp, 488
Since to-thee is so loath that thou lost hast the woman,

wil du dem Lamparten nemen sînen lîp,
(if)-wilt thou from-the Lombard take his life,

wil du mirz immer danken: ein dinc ich funden hân,
(if)-wilt thou me-for-it ever thank: a thing I found have,

daz muoz dem Lamparten an sîn leben gân.
that must to-the Lombard at his life go.

Dâ von im harte schiere der lîp wirt benomen.’ 489
There from to-him very soon the life is taken.’

mit freuden sprach der heiden ‘daz sol dir immer fromen’.
with joys spoke the heathen ‘that shall thee ever profit’.

do entslôz er ûf die porte und lie den jeger în.
then unlocked he up the gate and let the hunter in.

er sprach ze dem wildenære ‘sag an waz mac ez sîn,
he spoke to the huntsman ‘say on what may it be,

490 Daz dem Lamparten grôzen schaden tuot?
That to-the Lombard great harm does?

mac er dâ von ersterben, diu miete diu wirt guot.'
(if)-may he there from die, the reward it becomes good.'

'ich het nâch den hunden ze verre mich verrant,
'I had after the hounds too far myself run-astray,

dô kom ich unverwîset under ein steinwant.
then came I unguided under a rock-wall.

491 Einen wurm ungefüegen sach ich dar ûz gân.
A worm monstrous saw I there out-of go.

hiet ich tûsent manne sterke, den wolte ich niht bestân.
had I thousand men's strength, him would I not attack.

er hiete et mich verslunden, hiet er mich dâ gewest.
he had just me swallowed, had he me there known.

ze walt liez ich in slîchen und huop mich in sîn nest.
to wood let I him creep and raised myself into his nest.

492 Noch grœzer dan mîn houbet vant ich dâ ein ei.
Yet greater than my head found I there an egg.

dô suochte ich dâ mêre: ich vant niht wan zwei,
then sought I there more: I found nothing but two,

diu wâren ungefüege, grôz und swære genuoc,
they were monstrous, great and heavy enough,

alsô daz ich si kûme heim in mîn hûs getruoc.
so that I them hardly home into my house carried.

493 Ich vorhte, si verdurben und legts in ein warmez loch.
I feared, they perished and laid-them into a warm hole.

swaz dar inne ist, dâst lebentic: diu eijer hân ich noch.
whatever there in is, that-is living: the eggs have I still.

dâ von suln si der wurme in dem lande dâ bekomen.
there from shall they of-the worms in the land there obtain.

swer mit dem tievel strîtet, dem wirt der lîp benomen,
whoever with the devil fights, from-him is the life taken,

Diu eijer wil ich füeren in der Lamparten lant, 494
The eggs will I lead into the Lombard's land,

und wil die würme brüeten in einer steinwant.
and will the worms hatch in a rock-wall.

koment si zuo ir jâren, in tuot der hunger wê:
(if)-come they to their years, them does the hunger woe:

sô wæne ich, in dem lande vor in iht bestê.
so think I, in the land before them anything stand.

Über vihe und über liute ez danne sâ ergât. 495
Over cattle and over people it then at-once goes.

sô ist Ortnît sô küene, daz er die würme bestât.
so is Ortnit so bold, that he the worms attacks.

sô mac er sich des eine niht erwern wol.
so may he himself of-it alone not defend well.

swâ er in begrîfe, er treit in in sîn hol.
wherever he him seizes, he carries him into his hole.

Sô muoz er von den würmen verliesen sâ daz leben.' 496
So must he from the worms lose at-once the life.'

dô sprach sâ der heiden 'dar umb wil ich dir geben
then spoke at-once the heathen 'there for will I to-thee give

allez des du muotest, daz du den degen starc
all of-that thou desirest, that thou the thane strong

mit den würmen tœtest: ich gibe dir tûsent marc.'
with the worms killest: I give to-thee thousand marks.'

497 Dô sprach der jeger wîse 'ich wil dir geben rât,
Then spoke the hunter wise 'I will to-thee give counsel,
und wil dich selbe lêren. sît ez alsô stât,
and will thee self teach. since it so stands,
du solt mir zwêne soume mit gesmîde heizen laden
thou shalt for-me two pack-horses with treasure bid load
und mit edelem gesteine send mich über zuo den staden.
and with noble gemstones send me over to the shore.

498 Von boumwolle und von sîden lat mir ein soumschrîn:
Of cotton and of silk let for-me a pack-chest:
dâ suln stæticlîchen diu eijer inne sîn
there shall constantly the eggs within be
in hitze und in wirme: anders entügens niht.
in heat and in warmth: otherwise thrive-they not.
ich sage dir, von den würmen den kristen schade geschiht.
I tell thee, of the worms the Christians harm happens.

499 Dîne brieve solt du senden der lieben tohter dîn,
Thy letters shalt thou send to-the dear daughter thine,
du wellest holt ir manne und dînem kinde sîn.
thou wilt favorable to-her husband and to-thy child be.
mit edelem gesteine send in daz grôze golt:
with noble gemstones send to-them the great gold:
sô wellent si des wænen, du sîst in beiden holt.'
so will they of-it think, thou be to-them both favorable.'

500 Des volgete im der heiden. ûf einen kiel er luot
In-that followed him the heathen. onto a keel he loaded
von golde und von gesteine in bulgen michel guot.
of gold and of gemstones in bags much goods.

als der jeger wolde, alsô muost man im laden.
as the hunter would, so must one for-him load.

dô flôz er in dem kiele ze rœmischen staden.
then sailed he in the keel to Roman shores.

Dô gap er im geleite in Lamparten lant 501
Then gave he to-him escort into Lombardy's land

unz ûf die burc ze Garte, dâ er den künic vant.
until onto the castle at Garda, where he the king found.

vil botescheficlîchen er nâch den soumen reit:
very like-a-messenger he after the pack-horses rode:

in einem soumschrîne was leider kunterfeit.
in a pack-chest was alas counterfeit.

Alsô der wîse heiden ûf die burc gienc 502
When the wise heathen onto the castle went

und für die burcporten, der portnære in enphienc.
and before the castle-gate, the porter him received.

dô vernam et niemen dâ die rede sîn.
then understood just no-one there the speech his.

âne Ortnîdes willen liez man niemen în.
without Ortnit's will let one no-one in.

Dô sagte man dem künege, ez wære ein bote komen: 503
Then told one to-the king, there were a messenger come:

si hieten bî ir jâren nie solhe rede vernomen;
they had in their years never such speech heard;

er bringe zwêne soume, die vil swære tragen,
he brings two pack-horses, which very heavy carry,

'waz er mit rede meine, des kunne wir iu niht gesagen.'
'what he with speech means, that can we you not say.'

504 ‘Nu bringet mir die soume und ouch den fremden man.’
‘Now bring me the pack-horses and also the foreign man.’

man lie in zuo der porte und hiez in für sich gân.
one let him to the gate and bade him before himself go.

‘waz ist daz du wirbest?’ der heiden sprach alsô
‘what is that thou pursuest?’ the heathen spoke so

‘ich bringe dir niumære der du muost wesen frô.’
‘I bring to-thee news of-which thou must be glad.’

505 Dô seite er im vil mære und gap im einen brief.
Then told he to-him many tidings and gave to-him a letter.

als in der künec schouwet, vor freuden er dô rief
when it the king beheld, for joys he then called

‘daz er sich hât bekêret, des sî immer got gelobt,
‘that he himself has converted, for-that be ever God praised,

daz er vil übeler heiden niht immer mêre tobt!’
that he very wicked heathen not ever more rages!’

506 Den boten er dô wîste dâ diu küniginne was.
The messenger he then showed where the queen was.

den brief gap er der frouwen. dô si die schrift gelas,
the letter gave he to-the lady. when she the writing read,

‘er bringet guotiu mære’ sprach dô diu künigîn,
‘he brings good tidings’ spoke then the queen,

‘uns hât enboten hulde der liebe vater mîn.
‘to-us has announced favor the dear father mine.

507 Er hât enboten uns beiden minne und friuntschaft:
He has announced to-us both love and friendship:

er prîset harte sêre dîn gelücke und dîne kraft.
he praises very sorely thy fortune and thy strength.

die wîle er dich weiz lebende, sô gêt im freude zuo.
the while he thee knows living, so goes to-him joy to.

er giht, im sî in der werlde niemen lieber danne duo.
he declares, to-him be in the world no-one dearer than thou.

Er wil sich lâzen toufen und wil her in dîn lant. 508
He will himself let baptize and will hither into thy land.

nu lâ dir niht versmâhen daz er dir hât gesant.
now let thee not scorn what he to-thee has sent.

du solt dem brieve gelouben daz du an im hœrest jehen.'
thou shalt the letter believe that thou of him hearest avow.'

'ich wil iuch' sprach der heiden 'sîn gâbe lâzen sehen.'
'I will you' spoke the heathen 'his gift let see.'

Vier swære bulgen er im dô für truoc. 509
Four heavy bags he to-him then before carried.

dâ lac inne goldes und edeler steine genuoc.
there lay within of-gold and noble stones enough.

dô sach er vor im ligen fürspan und vingerlîn.
then saw he before him lie brooches and little-rings.

ir vater sêre dancte diu edel künigîn.
her father sorely thanked the noble queen.

Der heiden sprach 'ein bulge lît noch vor dir vol. 510
The heathen spoke 'a bag lies yet before thee full.

ez ist noch niht gewahsen daz man dir geben sol.
it is yet not grown what one to-thee give shall.

ez bringt dir edele steine: ich sage dir' sprach der bote,
it brings to-thee noble stones: I tell thee' spoke the messenger,

'ez ist ûz dem garten ein abrahemschiu krote.
'it is out-of the garden an Abraham's toad.

511 Swenne diu gewehset, diu bringet einen stein,
Whenever it grows, it brings a stone,
daz in der werld diu sunne sô guotez nie beschein.
that in the world the sun so good never shone-on.
ich wil dir sagen mêre, waz dir ist gesant:
I will to-thee tell more, what to-thee is sent:
ich sol dir, hêrre, ziehen ein schœnen helphant.
I shall for-thee, lord, raise a fair elephant.

512 Der mac âne gebirge niht genesen wol.
It may without mountains not survive well.
ich gibe dirs beidiu schiere, nu wîs mich in ein hol'.
I give to-thee-them both soon, now show me into a hole'.
'ich schaffe dir gebirge und dar zuo allen rât,
'I make for-thee mountains and there to all provision,
und heiz dîn phlegen schône mînen potestât.'
and bid thy care fairly my podesta.'

513 Dô hiez er in wîsen in ein steinwant
Then bade he him show into a rock-wall
bî der stat ze Triente, dâ er den berc vant.
by the city at Trient, where he the mountain found.
sîn schelclich gezühte er in den berc getruoc.
his roguish brood he into the mountain carried.
des er dar inne bedorfte, des gap man im genuoc.
of-what he there in needed, of-that gave one to-him enough.

514 Dô was er zwelf mânede in dem berge oder mêr.
Then was he twelve months in the mountain or more.
dô het er mit den würmen grôziu herzensêr.
then had he with the worms great heart-sores.

ê ers gezüge ze rehte, dô het er arbeit.
before he-them reared at right, then had he toil.

ei waz er doch sorge mit den würmen leit!
ah what he yet care with the worms suffered!

In dem halben jâre die würme wurden grôz, 515
In the half year the worms became great,

sô daz ir meister sêre des lebens bî in verdrôz,
so that their master sorely of-the life by them wearied,

daz sî sîn dicke vârten wie sîm næmen daz leben.
that they him often lay-in-wait how they-him took the life.

in wolte ouch der rihtære der spîse niht mê geben.
him would also the judge of-the food not more give.

Si heten dar an ze kleine, alle tage ein rint. 516
They had there on too little, all days an ox.

dô sprach der rihtære 'ez ist lîhte des tievels kint!
then spoke the judge 'it is perhaps the devil's child!

mîn hêrr möht gerne lâzen disen helphant,
my lord might gladly let-go this elephant,

ê daz er im verslunde ein stat und ein lant.'
before that it to-him swallowed a city and a land.'

Dô der jegermeister den würmen niht enbôt 517
When the hunter-master to-the worms nothing offered

und si vor hunger wâren iezuo vil nâhen tôt,
and they for hunger were now very near dead,

si twanc der hunger sêre, dô râmten si des man.
them constrained the hunger sorely, then aimed-at they the man.

dô zente ers zuo dem liehte: vil kûme er in entran.
then drew he-them to the light: very hardly he them escaped.

518 Swâ der biderbe den bœsen ziuhet, der ist dar an betrogen.
Wherever the worthy-one the evil-one raises, he is there on deceived.

alsô het er an den würmen sîne vînde erzogen.
so had he in the worms his foes raised.

dô sie sich vermohten, do enahtens ûf in nieht:
when they themselves were-able, then heeded-they for him not:

er lie si nemen selbe und wîstes an daz lieht.
he let them take self and showed-them to the light.

519 Von grôzer hungergite wart dô den würmen zorn.
From great hunger-greed became then to-the worms wrath.

swaz in diu ougen sâhen, daz was gar verlorn.
whatever to-them the eyes saw, that was wholly lost.

swaz si in dem lande funden, daz verslunden si sô gar.
whatever they in the land found, that swallowed they so wholly.

sus heten si ir erge mêr danne ein ganzez jâr.
thus had they their malice more than a whole year.

520 In walde und in gevilde kund in niht vor bestân.
In wood and in field could them nothing before stand.

si heten ouch der werlde grôzen schaden getân.
they had also to-the world great harm done.

si tâten an den liuten diu gremelîchen leit:
they did to the people the grim sorrows:

vor in man ûf der strâze weder gie noch enreit.
before them one on the road neither went nor rode.

521 Unz für die burc ze Garte der ein daz lant betwanc.
Until before the castle at Garda the one the land subdued.

si muosten im entwîchen, die liute âne danc.
they must from-him withdraw, the people without consent.

si getorsten ûf dem velde ir aker niht gesæn,
they dared on the field their acres not sow,

noch getorsten vor den welden ir wisen niht gemæn.
nor dared before the woods their meadows at-all mow.

Si bestuonden küene ritter durch ir übermuot 522
They attacked bold knights for their arrogance

und ouch durch ruomes willen: daz wart in dehein guot.
and also for glory's sake: that became to-them no good.

jegern und gebûren nâmen si daz leben,
from-hunters and from-peasants took they the life,

die würme wolten niemen deheinen fride geben.
the worms would to-no-one any peace give.

Dô hôrt man datz der kirchen die pfaffen über si klagen. 523
Then heard one there-at the church the priests over them lament.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'er wirt nie mêre erslagen;
then spoke the Lombard 'he will-be never more slain;

er stirbet leider nimmer âne mînen strît.
he dies alas never without my battle.

ich muoz uns von im lœsen' sprach der künec Ortnît.
I must us from him free' spoke the king Ortnit.

Sus lac er eines nahtes bî der künigîn. 524
Thus lay he one night by the queen.

do begunde er aber denken an die sorge sîn.
then began he again think on the care his.

'ob mir nu misselinget, verliuse ich mînen lîp,
'if to-me now miscarries, lose I my life,

owê, wem lâze ich danne daz ellende wîp,
alas, to-whom leave I then the forsaken woman,

525 Diu vater unde muoter durch mich hât verkorn.
Who father and mother for me has forsaken.

ich weiz wol, stirbe ich eine, sô sî wir beide vlorn.
I know well, (if)-die I alone, so are we both lost.

owê, nu muoz ich eine mînen kumber klagen!
alas, now must I alone my trouble lament!

nu getar ouch ichz vor jâmer mîner frouwen niht gesagen.
now dare also I-it for sorrow to-my lady not say.

526 Nu klage ich niht ze wâre weder bürge noch diu lant:
Now lament I not in truth neither castles nor the lands:

ich klage mîne frouwen, die ich als stæte vant.
I lament my lady, whom I so steadfast found.

ich getar irs niht geküenden, und wil doch den wurm bestân.
I dare to-her-it not proclaim, and will yet the worm attack.

der Ortnîdes sorgen hebt sich hie aber einiu an.'
of-the Ortnit's cares raises itself here again one on.'

Ortnit VII

VII · ORTNIT'S DEATH

Ortnit tells his wife he will fight the worm, and she weeps and gives him leave. He takes her ring as the token of his death, bids her take no husband but the man who brings the worm's tongue, and rides back to her for Alberich's ring; the dwarf warns him not to sleep and takes his ring back. Riding a day and a night, Ortnit falls asleep under a tree, and the worm swallows him in his armor. His hound follows it to the mountain and dares go no farther, and inside the worm's young suck him dead through his armor.

Nu het er sich gerihtet aber in die sorge sîn. 527
Now had he himself turned again into the care his.

er wânde ez niemen hôrte: do erwacht diu künigîn.
he thought it no-one heard: then awoke the queen.

dô durchbrast ir herze, ir jâmer wart sô grôz,
then burst her heart, her sorrow became so great,

daz si mit ougen regene sîne brust gar begôz.
that she with eyes' rain his breast wholly drenched.

Si dructe in zuo dem herzen und kuste in tûsent stunt: 528
She pressed him to the heart and kissed him thousand times:

'hêrre got von himele, waz wil mir werden kunt?
'lord God of heaven, what will to-me become known?

ouwê mir armen frouwen, waz wil mir nu geschehen?
alas me poor lady, what will to-me now happen?

wâfen über diu ougen, dâ mit ich dich hân gesehen!
alarm over the eyes, there with I thee have seen!

529 Und wâfen über die arme, dâ mit ich umvangen hân
And alarm over the arms, there with I embraced have
dich, künic unde hêrre. wem wilt du mich nu lân?
thee, king and lord. to-whom wilt thou me now leave?
nu hân ich gelâzen' sprach diu künigîn
now have I left' spoke the queen
'vater unde muoter durch den willen dîn
'father and mother for the sake thine

530 Und alle mîne mâge' sprach diu frouwe hêr.
And all my kinsmen' spoke the lady lordly.
'vlius ich dich alters einen, sô hân ich niemen mêr.
'(if)-lose I thee all alone, so have I no-one more.
alle mîne mâge liez ich, hêr, durch dich.
all my kinsmen left I, sir, for thee.
rîcher künic edele, wem wil du lâzen mich?'
rich king noble, to-whom wilt thou leave me?'

531 Dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich wil dich enphelhen got
Then spoke the Lombard 'I will thee commend to-God
unde mich ergeben verre in sîn gebot.
and me give far into his command.
swie aber mir gelinge, ich verliese mînen lîp,
however but to-me succeeds, I lose my life,
od ich behalte in lîhte, mir wart nie lieber wîp.'
or I keep it perhaps, to-me was never dearer woman.'

532 Dô sprach si bärmiclîchen 'hâst aver du rehten sin,
Then spoke she pitifully '(if)-hast however thou right mind,
du solt dich baz bedenken. Ortnît, wâ wil du hin?
thou shalt thyself better consider. Ortnit, whither wilt thou away?

maht du doch râtes frâgen grâven frîen dienstman.'
mayst thou yet of-counsel ask counts freemen ministerials.'
'nein' sprach der Lamparte, 'ich wil den wurm bestân.
'no' spoke the Lombard, 'I will the worm attack.

Von dînes vater listen kom der wurm in ditze lant. 533
From thy father's arts came the worm into this land.
nu muoz ez got erbarmen, daz in niht sluoc mîn hant,
now must it God pity, that him not struck my hand,
daz ich in ie gesparte durch den willen dîn.'
that I him ever spared for the sake thine.'
'daz muoz got erbarmen' sprach aver diu künigîn.
'that must God pity' spoke again the queen.

'Jâ hât er geschüpfet die würme ûf mînen lîp.' 534
'Yea has he created the worms against my life.'
'got muoz über in rihten' sprach daz vil schœne wîp,
'God must over him judge' spoke the very fair woman,
'daz alsô vil der kristen ist durch in erslagen.
'that so many of-the Christians is for him slain.
daz er ie kom in Lamparten, daz wil ich gote klagen.'
that he ever came into Lombardy, that will I to-God lament.'

'Du solt dich selbe trœsten' sprach der künic rîch. 535
'Thou shalt thyself self comfort' spoke the king rich.
'ich kum dir schiere widere, frouwe minneclîch,
'I come to-thee soon back, lady lovely,
ich getrou wol an dem wurme gerechen mînen zorn.'
I trust well on the worm to-avenge my wrath.'
si sprach 'jâ fürhte ich sêre, du habest den lîp verlorn,
she spoke 'yea fear I sorely, thou have the life lost,

536 Sît daz der wurm sô übele und sô unsælec ist,
Since that the worm so evil and so unblessed is,

daz von sîner erge niemen nu genist.
that from his malice no-one now survives.

du hâst ouch wol erzeiget dîne frümekheit,
thou hast also well shown thy valor,

dich möhte wol verdriezen jârlanc der arbeit.'
thee might well weary year-long of-the toil.'

537 'Daz sint die edeln steine die mir dîn vater hât gesant.
'That are the noble stones which to-me thy father has sent.

nu hât er mir verderbet mîne liute und mîn lant.
now has he for-me ruined my people and my land.

er muoz mir den schaden gelten der mir ist von im geschehen.
he must to-me the harm repay which to-me is from him happened.

du solt mir heiles wünschen: ich muoz die würme sehen.
thou shalt to-me luck wish: I must the worms see.

538 Du solt niht sêre weinen, liebiu frouwe mîn.'
Thou shalt not sorely weep, dear lady mine.'

'wie möhte ich daz gelâzen?' sprach diu künigîn.
'how might I that leave?' spoke the queen.

'dâ merkent ditz die liute, wil du ze sêre klagen:
'there mark this the people, (if)-wilt thou too sorely lament:

friunt mîn unde frouwe, du solt ez niemen sagen.'
friend mine and lady, thou shalt it to-no-one say.'

539 'Du wilt des niht erwinden, du wellest, hêrre, dar.'
'Thou wilt of-it not desist, unless-thou will, lord, thither.'

dô sprach der Lamparte 'daz ist mîn wille gar.'
then spoke the Lombard 'that is my will wholly.'

dô sprach diu küniginne ‘ich muoz mich dîn verwegen.
then spoke the queen ‘I must myself of-thee resign.
ich hân diu jâr gemerket, diu ich bin bî dir gelegen.
I have the years marked, which I am by thee lain.

Ez ist in dem sehsten jâre, daz du mir wurde kunt. 540
It is in the sixth year, that thou to-me became known.
mîn herze ist âne wâfen und âne snîde wunt.
my heart is without weapon and without cut wounded.
alrêrst sol ich mich nieten, vil lieber hêrre, dîn:
first-of-all shall I myself enjoy, very dear lord, thee:
nu wil du von mir scheiden’ sprach diu künigîn.
now wilt thou from me part’ spoke the queen.

‘Nu müeze ez got erbarmen daz ich dich ie gesach.’ 541
‘Now may it God pity that I thee ever saw.’
ir herze hôrte er krachen, dazz in ir lîbe brach.
her heart heard he crack, that-it in her body broke.
dô sprach diu küniginne ‘hêrre, nu belîp.
then spoke the queen ‘lord, now stay.
dir kumt diu reise übele’ sprach daz schœne wîp.
to-thee comes the journey ill’ spoke the fair woman.

‘Nu soldest du mich trœsten, so verweisenst mir mîn leben.’ 542
‘Now shouldst thou me comfort, so orphanest-thou for-me my life.’
si sprach ‘du wilt ze sêre nâch dînem tôde streben.’
she spoke ‘thou wilt too sorely after thy death strive.’
dô schein im durch daz venster des morgens blicke lieht.
then shone to-him through the window the morning’s gleam bright.
dô wolde er ûz dem bette: sie liez in von ir nieht.
then would he out-of the bed: she let him from her not.

543 Swie küen sîn herze wære, des zornes er vergaz.
However bold his heart were, the wrath he forgot.

im wurden sîniu ougen von grôzem jâmer naz,
to-him became his eyes from great sorrow wet,

dô in diu frouwe schœne mit armen umbeslôz.
when him the lady fair with arms embraced.

si weinden beidiu sêre, daz wazzer über ir brüste flôz.
they wept both sorely, the water over their breasts flowed.

544 'Frouwe, ich muote urloubes, des mac ich niht enbern.'
'Lady, I desire leave, that may I not forgo.'

'swie ungerne ich dirs gunne, doch muoz ich dich gewern.
'however unwillingly I thee-it grant, yet must I thee grant.

du wilt niht hie belîben: got der muoz dich bewarn.'
thou wilt not here remain: God he must thee guard.'

'nu lâz mich, schœniu frouwe, mit dînem urloube varn.'
'now let me, fair lady, with thy leave go.'

545 Dô spranc er ûz dem bette, an leite er sîn gewant.
Then sprang he out-of the bed, on laid he his clothing.

ob im tet er daz venster ûf mit sîner hant.
above him did he the window up with his hand.

dô sprach der Lamparte 'swaz dir die liute sagen,
then spoke the Lombard 'whatever to-thee the people say,

des solt du niht gelouben. du solt niht sêre klagen.
that shalt thou not believe. thou shalt not sorely lament.

546 Küniginne und frouwe, gip mir dîn vingerlîn.
Queen and lady, give me thy little-ring.

swer dir daz wider bringe, dem geloube den tôt mîn.
whoever to-thee that back brings, to-him believe the death mine.

swer dir daz vingerl bringet, dem ist vil wol geschehen:
whoever to-thee the little-ring brings, to-him is very well happened:
der nimet mir etewaz mêre und hât mich tôten gesehen.
he takes from-me something more and has me dead seen.

Swer des wurmes houbet bringet, der hât den wurm erslagen, 547
Whoever the worm's head brings, he has the worm slain,
od aber zehowen die zungen, dier im munde hât getragen.
or however cut-up the tongue, which-he in-the mouth has carried.
swer daz houbet âne zunge bringt, der hât dich betrogen:
whoever the head without tongue brings, he has thee deceived:
swer aber die zunge füeret, der hât dir niht gelogen.
whoever however the tongue carries, he has to-thee not lied.

Geloube et niht in beiden, vil edeliu künigîn. 548
Believe just not in both, very noble queen.
swer dir die Rôsen bringe und die liehten brünne mîn,
whoever to-thee the Rose brings and the bright mail-shirt mine,
dar zuo des wurmes zunge und ditz vil kleine golt,
there to the worm's tongue and this very small gold,
sich, der hât mich errochen, dem wis mit triuwen holt.
see, he has me avenged, to-him be with faith favorable.

Der bringet ouch vil lîhte den helm und ouch daz swert. 549
He brings also very likely the helmet and also the sword.
der selbe sol von rehte mit dir sîn gewert.
the same shall by right with thee be granted.
lobe mir daz du deheinen nimmer nemest zuo der ê,
promise me that thou none ever takest to the marriage,
swie er dich betwinge, er slahe den wurm ê.'
however he thee constrain, he strike the worm first.'

550 Mit zornegem muote slouf er in sîn sturmgewant.
With wrathful spirit slipped he into his battle-gear.

diu frouwe vil geweinte, dô si im die riemen bant.
the lady much wept, when she to-him the straps bound.

dô lac vor sînem bette zallen zîten ein bräckelîn,
then lay before his bed at-all times a little-hound,

daz muost mit im ze walde, so er eine wolte sîn.
that must with him to wood, when he alone would be.

551 Urloup nam er zer frouwen: dô huop er sich zehant
Leave took he from-the lady: then raised he himself forthwith

für sîne kemenâten, da er ein ros gesatelt vant.
before his chamber, where he a horse saddled found.

den schilt neben der sîten, den bracken hinder sich:
the shield beside the side, the hound behind himself:

si sprach vil bärmiclîchen 'got gesegene dich.'
she spoke very pitifully 'God bless thee.'

552 Als er dô eine wîle von der bürge gereit,
When he then a while from the castle ridden,

dô het er eines dinges vergezzen, daz was im leit.
then had he a thing forgotten, that was to-him loath.

do gedâhte er 'ich muoz widere zuo der künigîn:
then thought he 'I must back to the queen:

ich vinde niht Albrîches ân daz vingerlîn.'
I find not Alberich without the little-ring.'

553 Dannoch stuont si ûf der mûre und sach im allez nâch.
Still stood she on the wall and saw him all after.

si freut sich, dô im widere der reise was sô gâch.
she rejoiced herself, when to-him back of-the journey was so hasty.

si wânde, er wolte belîben und gie gein im an den graben.
she thought, he would remain and went toward him at the moat.

'du wænst, ich welle erbeizen: dâ für solt duz niht haben.
'thou thinkest, I will dismount: there for shalt thou-it not have.

Ich het des nâch vergezzen, gip mir mîn vingerlîn.' 554
I had of-it nearly forgotten, give me my little-ring.'

dô sprach diu frouwe in jâmer 'bi wiu gedenke ich dîn?'
then spoke the lady in sorrow 'by what remember I thee?'

'bî maneger naht vil guoten du mîn gedenken solt.'
'by many-a night very good thou of-me think shalt.'

diu frouwe heize weinde und gap im dar sîn golt.
the lady hotly wept and gave to-him there his gold.

Dô kêrte er von der bürge an den wilden berc. 555
Then turned he from the castle to the wild mountain.

under der linden grüene, dâ vant er daz getwerc.
under the linden green, there found he the dwarf.

'war hâstu dich bereitet?' sprach aber Alberîch.
'whither hast-thou thyself prepared?' spoke again Alberich.

'ich wil aber in die sorge' sprach der künic rîch.
'I will again into the care' spoke the king rich.

'Wider wen wil du nu strîten? wer hât dir iht getân?' 556
'Against whom wilt thou now fight? who has to-thee anything done?'

dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich wil den wurm bestân.'
then spoke the Lombard 'I will the worm attack.'

mit zorne sprach der kleine 'du wilt ungerne leben,
with wrath spoke the little-one 'thou wilt unwillingly live,

war umb wilt aber sô sêre nâch dînem tôde streben?
where for wilt however so sorely after thy death strive?

557 Wil du mit im vehten, daz tuost ân mînen rât.
(If)-wilt thou with him fight, that dost without my counsel.
erst ûf mîn triuwe ein tôre, der den wurm bestât'.
he-is on my faith a fool, who the worm attacks'.
dô sprach der Lamparte 'ich hân michs an genomen.
then spoke the Lombard 'I have myself-it on taken.
ez ergê mir swie got welle, ze schaden oder ze fromen.
it befall me as God will, to harm or to profit.

558 Nu frâge ich dich râtes: du solt mir geben trôst,
Now ask I thee of-counsel: thou shalt to-me give comfort,
wie der ungehiure des lîbes werde erlôst.'
how the monstrous-one of-the body be freed.'
'nu lidâ' sprach der kleine 'swaz dir von im widervert.
'now suffer' spoke the little-one 'whatever to-thee from him befalls.
du wirst sîn wol inne waz dir got hât dâ beschert.
thou becomest of-it well aware what to-thee God has there granted.

559 Aber mit einem dinge ich dich noch trœsten sol.
However with one thing I thee yet comfort shall.
kumst du mit im ze strîte, du slehst den wurm wol.
(if)-comest thou with him to battle, thou strikest the worm well.
ich wæne abe' an im kleine werde dîn gewin,
I think however on him small becomes thy gain,
und vindet er dich slâfent, er treit dich entriuwen hin.
if finds he thee sleeping, he carries thee in-faith away.

560 Ich wil dir daz verbieten, daz du entslâfest niht.
I will thee that forbid, that thou fall-asleep not.
sô sage ich dir ze wâre, daz dir heil an im geschiht.
so tell I thee in truth, that to-thee luck on him happens.

got müeze dich gesegenen. gip mir mîn vingerlîn,
God may thee bless. give me my little-ring,

gesent dich got her widere, sô ist ez aver dîn.'
(if)-sends thee God hither back, so is it again thine.'

Im warf der Lamparte daz vingerl ûf daz gras. 561
To-him threw the Lombard the little-ring onto the grass.

Alberîches herze von der reise betrüebet was.
Alberich's heart from the journey troubled was.

er sprach 'zuo solhen dingen hœrt michel arbeit'.
he spoke 'to such things belongs great toil'.

'got gesegen dich' sprach der grôze; von dem kleinen er dô reit.
'God bless thee' spoke the great-one; from the little-one he then rode.

Dô reit er ungewîset durch daz gebirge hin, 562
Then rode he unguided through the mountains thither,

als in sîn muot lêrte und sîn sturmlîcher sin.
as him his spirit taught and his battle-like mind.

dô reit er ungeruowet den tac unz an die naht:
then rode he unrested the day until to the night:

dannoch was im lange slâfens ungedâht.
still was to-him long of-sleeping unthought.

Do erbeizte er zuo der erde. sîn fiur er ûz sluoc. 563
Then dismounted he to the earth. his fire he out struck.

ungefüeger ronen este er selbe dar an truoc,
monstrous fallen-trees' branches he self there on carried,

durch daz der wurm ersæhe deste êr des fiures schîn.
for that the worm saw the sooner the fire's shine.

dô fuorte er an dem satele sîn spîse und sînen wîn.
then carried he on the saddle his food and his wine.

564 Dô saz er ûf die grüene, er tranc unde az,
Then sat he onto the green, he drank and ate,
und gap ouch dem bracken der in sîner schôze saz.
and gave also to-the hound which in his lap sat.
dô het er niemen mêre wan sich alters ein.
then had he no-one more but himself all one.
dô saz er bî dem fiure unz daz der mâne erschein.
then sat he by the fire until that the moon appeared.

565 Dô wolte er aber rîten, sîn marc er schiere enbant,
Then would he again ride, his steed he soon unbound,
und muote in harte sêre daz er den wurm niht vant.
and troubled him very sorely that he the worm not found.
sus reit er âne ruowe die naht unz an den tac.
thus rode he without rest the night until to the day.
dô kom er ûf einen anger, dâ vil der rôsen lac.
then came he onto a meadow, where many of-the roses lay.

566 Under einem grüenen boume erbeizte dô der degen.
Under a green tree dismounted then the thane.
dô het er ouch vil gerne eine wîle dâ gelegen.
then had he also very gladly a while there lain.
ungâz und ungetrunken muost er dô leider sîn:
uneaten and undrunk must he then alas be:
dô het er an dem satele weder spîse noch den wîn.
then had he on the saddle neither food nor the wine.

567 Sîn herze im was beswæret, sîn lîp vil müede gar:
His heart to-him was burdened, his body very weary wholly:
dô neigte er sich ein wîle durch sîne ruowe dar.
then bowed he himself a while for his rest there.

ein lützel wolte er ruowen: der slâf in des betwanc,
a little would he rest: the sleep him in-that constrained,

daz im daz houbet nidere gein dem grüenen anger sanc.
that to-him the head down toward the green meadow sank.

Der slâf kom im ze sorgen, des wachens in verdrôz. 568
The sleep came to-him to cares, of-the waking him wearied.

dô legte sich der bracke in des Lamparten schôz.
then laid itself the hound into the Lombard's lap.

daz kom von sînem slâfe, daz er swurmes niht ensach:
that came from his sleep, that he of-the-worm nothing saw:

dâ von dem Lamparten der grôze schade geschach.
there from to-the Lombard the great harm happened.

Er brach durch loubes dicke, die boume dructe er nider. 569
He broke through foliage's thickness, the trees pressed he down.

der bracke lief zem wurme und zuo dem hêrren wider.
the hound ran to-the worm and to the lord back.

swaz er in lûter stimme gebal, daz slief der gast.
whatever it in loud voice barked, that slept the guest.

ûf des hundes bellen ahte der müede niht ein bast.
on the hound's barking heeded the weary-one not a bast.

Swaz in daz welf gekrazte und in die ringe beiz, 570
Whatever him the whelp scratched and into the rings bit,

dâ lac er als ein tôte der sich niht verweiz.
there lay he as a dead-one who himself not knew.

als des wurmes houbet vernam des mannes smac,
when the worm's head perceived the man's smell,

dô streich er al gerihte, dâ der müede vor im lac.
then crept he all straight, where the weary-one before him lay.

571 Der hunt wolte in bîzen, do er het den wurm vernomen.
The hound would him bite, when it had the worm perceived.
dô mohte er vor dem helme niht zuo dem houbte komen.
then might he for the helmet not to the head come.
der wurm ungehiure raht sînen snabel her für:
the worm monstrous reached his beak hither forth:
sîn mûl wart im noch wîter dan ein mæzigiu tür.
his maw became to-him yet wider than a middling door.

572 Unz an die sporn beide den ritter er verslant.
Until to the spurs both the knight he swallowed.
daz kom von den schulden daz er in slâfende vant.
that came from the causes that he him sleeping found.
dem kleinen hundelîne wolt er alsam haben getân,
to-the little little-hound would he likewise have done,
er râmt sîn mit dem zagele: der bracke im kûme entran.
he aimed-at it with the tail: the hound him hardly escaped.

573 Dem wurm was von dem boume gein der steinwende gâch.
To-the worm was from the tree toward the rock-wall hasty.
durch sînes hêrren triuwe lief im der bracke nâch
for its lord's faith ran him the hound after
unz für daz gebirge, da er mit neste inne saz.
until before the mountain, where he with nest in sat.
dô vorhte ouch im der bracke und getorste niht fürbaz.
then feared also him the hound and dared not further.

574 Die jungen heten dar inne vor hunger grôze nôt.
The young had there in for hunger great distress.
swie er unverhouwen wære, doch muoste er ligen tôt.
however he unhewn were, yet must he lie dead.

er truoc in sînen kinden in einen holn berc:
he carried him to-his children into a hollow mountain:

diu mohten in niht gewinnen und sugen in durch daz werc.
they might him not get and sucked him through the armor.

Do verlôs der Lamparte mit jâmer sînen lîp. 575
Then lost the Lombard with sorrow his life.

des dannoch niene ûf Garte west sîn liebez wîp.
of-that still never on Garda knew his dear woman.

man klagte in durch sîn êre die er dem lande erwarp.
one lamented him for his honor which he for-the land won.

daz ist diu âventiure dâ Ortnît inne starp.
that is the adventure where Ortnit in died.

Ortnit VIII

VIII · THE WIDOW OF GARDA

The hound comes home alone and leads a ministerial to the worm's bloody track, and he brings word of Ortnit's death; Ortnit's mother dies of grief, and the queen refuses every new husband. Her lords take her lands and leave her a hundred pounds of copper a year, and she works with her women to live. The margrave of Tuscany promises to avenge his lord once his son is grown, and he and the margravine provide for her, but the man who will slay the worm and win her, the poet says, is not yet born; he will be the forefather of Dietrich of Verona.

576 Sich huop der bracke widere heim an sîne vart.
Itself raised the hound back home on its way.

als diu küniginne des hundes inne wart,
when the queen of-the hound aware became,

do getorst si offenlîche ir jâmer niht geklagen.
then dared she openly her sorrow not lament.

si gedâhte in ir herzen 'mîn hêrre der ist erslagen'.
she thought in her heart 'my lord he is slain'.

577 Die dô den bracken sâhen und bekanden sînen site,
Who then the hound saw and knew its manner,

die wânden der genâden, daz ir hêrre nâch im rite.
they thought by-the grace, that their lord after it rode.

er muoste dort belîben, des twanc in grôziu nôt.
he must there remain, that constrained him great distress.

si mohten lange bîten: er lac in dem berge tôt.
they might long wait: he lay in the mountain dead.

Si frâgten alle gelîche ‘war ist unser hêrre komen? 578
They asked all alike ‘whither is our lord come?

der bracke kom aleine: im ist wæn der lîp benomen.
the hound came alone: from-him is I-think the life taken.

in hât verrâten lîhte diu edele künigîn.
him has betrayed perhaps the noble queen.

si mac an sînem tôde vil wol schuldic sîn.’
she may in his death very well guilty be.’

‘Nu enwelle got von himele’ sprach daz schœne wîp, 579
‘Now not-will God of heaven’ spoke the fair woman,

‘und werdet ir des inne, sô nemt mir mînen lîp.’
‘if become you of-it aware, so take from-me my life.’

dô sprâchen aber die besten ‘wær dir sîn sterben leit,
then spoke again the best ‘were to-thee his dying loath,

du soldst uns nâch im wîsen: du weist wol war er reit.’
thou shouldst us after him guide: thou knowest well whither he rode.’

‘Waz hân ich dâ von ze sagen?’ sprach aber diu künigîn, 580
‘What have I there of to say?’ spoke again the queen,

‘ich tar iuch dar niht gewîsen, lobt ich bî den triuwen mîn.
‘I dare you thither not guide, vowed I by the faith mine.

ê daz aber ir nu zürnet, welt ir michs niht erlân,
before that however you now be-angry, (if)-will you me-of-it not release,

ich sage iu war er kêrte: er wolt den wurm bestân.’
I tell you whither he turned: he would the worm attack.’

Do begunden die Lamparten ir hêrren alle klagen. 581
Then began the Lombards their lord all lament.

si sprâchen alle gelîche ‘in hât der wurm hin getragen.
they spoke all alike ‘him has the worm away carried.

swer in nu rechen welle, der hebe sich enzît.
whoever him now avenge will, he raise himself in-time.

ez enwirt in Lamparten nimmêre dehein Ortnît
there will-be in Lombardy never-more any Ortnit

582 Sô biderbe und sô küene, sô der lande kunne phlegen.
So worthy and so bold, who of-the lands could take-care.

unser trôst und unser freude ist an im gelegen.'
our comfort and our joy is in him laid.'

dô sâhen si den jâmer, den der bracke begie,
then saw they the sorrow, which the hound committed,

daz er ir iegelîchen bî sînem gêren vie.
that it of-them each-one by his gusset caught.

583 Swelher im ie volgte, den zôch er für daz tor.
Whoever it ever followed, him drew it before the gate.

er woldes alle wîsen ûf des starken wurmes spor.
it would-them all guide onto the strong worm's track.

'er weiz wol mînen hêrren' sprach von Garte ein dienstman.
'it knows well my lord' spoke of Garda a ministerial.

'reich mir mîne ringe! ich wil mich legen an
'hand me my rings! I will myself lay on

584 Und wil dem bracken volgen unz mîn ouge dez phat an siht.
And will the hound follow until my eye the path on sees.

swie liep mir mîn hêrre wære, ich bestên des wurmes niht'.
however dear to-me my lord were, I attack the worm not'.

dô volgete er dem bracken, die strâze kunde er wol:
then followed he the hound, the road knew he well:

des wîste ouch er den küenen vil nâhen für daz hol.
that showed also it the bold-one very near before the hole.

Als er des wurmes staphen alsô bluotic vant, 585
When he the worm's footprints so bloody found,

niht fürbaz wolte er rîten und kêrte wider zehant.
not further would he ride and turned back forthwith.

dô seite er bœsiu mære, sîn hêrre der wære tôt.
then told he evil tidings, his lord he were dead.

dô huop sich in dem lande jâmer unde nôt.
then raised itself in the land sorrow and distress.

Von dem grôzen jâmer den dô leit diu künigîn, 586
From the great sorrow that then suffered the queen,

und von des sunes tôde starp ouch diu muoter sîn.
and from the son's death died also the mother his.

si starp von dem jâmer dazs in sehen solt niht mêr.
she died from the sorrow that-she him see should not more.

dô het ouch niht mêr freuden diu küniginne hêr.
then had also no more joys the queen lordly.

Sus lebte si in dem jâmer unz an daz dritte jâr, 587
Thus lived she in the sorrow until to the third year,

daz ir die Lamparten nâmen deheinen war.
that of-her the Lombards took no heed.

do verlôs ir liehte varwe, diu frouwe wol getân.
then lost her bright color, the lady well made.

si wolden si des twingen daz si næme einen man,
they would her of-it constrain that she took a husband,

Dâ von beruochet wæren ir liute und ouch ir lant, 588
There from cared-for were her people and also her land,

an dem daz künicrîche wære wol bewant.
on whom the kingdom were well bestowed.

dô sprach diu küniginne ‘ir dürft mir deheinen geben.
then spoke the queen ‘you need to-me none give.

man gewinne ich nimmer, er ennæme dem wurmez leben.’
husband win I never, he unless-took from-the worm-the life.’

589 Dô si niht volgen wolte, die frouwen man verstiez.
When she not follow would, the lady one cast-out.

alles ir künicrîches man ir niht enliez
of-all her kingdom one to-her nothing left

des si sich neren wolte, wan kupfers hundert phunt.
of-which she herself nourish would, but of-copper hundred pounds.

daz was ir gelt des jâres: dô wart ir jâmer kunt.
that was her income of-the year: then became her sorrow known.

590 Ûf der burc ze Garte was gemûrt ein turn hol,
On the castle at Garda was walled a tower hollow,

der was unz an daz ende von grunde schatzes vol.
it was until to the end from bottom of-treasure full.

daz si niht mannes wolde, des wâren si ir gram.
that she no husband would, of-that were they to-her hostile.

si moht sîn niht geniezen: die slüzzel man ir nam.
she might of-it not profit: the keys one from-her took.

591 Swie vil si ir leides tæten, vil stæte was ir muot.
However much they to-her of-sorrow did, very steadfast was her spirit.

si begie sich von ir hende, als manic frouwe tuot.
she maintained herself from her hand, as many-a lady does.

daz hulfen ir gewinnen ir meide unde ir wîp:
that helped her earn her maids and her women:

si worhten mit ir henden daz si betruogen ir lîp.
they worked with their hands that they sustained their body.

Diu frouwe lebte in sorgen beidiu naht unt tac. 592
The lady lived in cares both night and day.
der liute und ouch der lande leider niemen phlac.
of-the people and also of-the lands alas no-one took-care.
dô zôch ir iegelîcher zuo im daz er begreif:
then drew of-them each-one to him what he seized:
dâ von des landes wirde und êre gar zersleif.
there from the land's worth and honor wholly decayed.

Dô sprach der marcgrâve zuo der künigîn 593
Then spoke the margrave to the queen
'mir ist vil leit dîn kumber, frou, wil du mit mir sîn?'
'to-me is very loath thy trouble, lady, wilt thou with me be?'
mit jâmer sprach diu frouwe 'ich enruoch waz mir geschiht.
with sorrow spoke the lady 'I not-care what to-me happens.
daz muoz ich allez lîden: ich kum von Garte niht.'
that must I all suffer: I come from Garda not.'

Dô sprach der marcgrâve 'nu erbarmet mir dîn nôt. 594
Then spoke the margrave 'now grieves me thy distress.
ich wil durch dînen willen rechen mînes hêrren tôt,
I will for thy sake avenge my lord's death,
ich wil die wîle erbîten unz mîn sun gewahse ze man,
I will the while wait until my son grow to man,
daz ich vil rehte wizze wem ich mîn erbe süle verlân'.
that I very rightly know to-whom I my inheritance shall leave'.

Ir phlac vil wol der fürste und ouch diu margrævîn. 595
Of-her took-care very well the prince and also the margravine.
si sanden ir ûf Garte die spîse und ouch den wîn,
they sent to-her on Garda the food and also the wine,

ze hôchzîten diu kleider, ir silber und ir golt:
at feasts the clothes, her silver and her gold:

si wârn die wîl si lebten der frowen mit triuwen holt.
they were the while they lived to-the lady with faith favorable.

596 Sus muoste in grôzem jâmer diu arme frouwe leben.
Thus must in great sorrow the poor lady live.

dem dô diu küniginne von Lamparten wart gegeben,
to-whom then the queen of Lombardy was given,

und der den wurm tôte von dem Ortnît wart verlorn,
and who the worm killed by whom Ortnit was lost,

des müezet lange bîten, wan er ist noch ungeborn.
for-him must long wait, for he is yet unborn.

597 Er muoz in sorgen wahsen von dem der wurm wirt erslagen.
He must in cares grow by whom the worm will-be slain.

ich wil iu sîn geslehte und sînen vater sagen.
I will to-you his lineage and his father tell.

seht, daz was von Berne Dietrîches alter an.
see, that was of Verona Dietrich's old ancestor.

ditz liet daz hœret gerne: alrêrst hebt ez sich an.
this song that hear gladly: first-of-all raises it itself on.

ANONYMOUS

Wolfdietrich

Wolfdietrich I

I · THE HERMIT'S CHILD

Hugdietrich, the heathen king of Constantinople, has two sons by his Hunnish queen. While he is away at war, the duke Saben, to whom he has left his realm, woos the queen and is refused, and pretends he was testing her. A voice tells the queen her third child must be Christian, and a hermit baptizes the boy in secret. He bids her keep the child's baptismal shirt, which no weapon will pierce, and foretells that the boy will gain a man's strength each year and win a queen and a land.

Ûf Kunstenobel ze Kriechen ein gewalteger künic saz. 1
On Constantinople in Greece a mighty king sat.

an dem tugent noch êre noch manheit nie vergaz
in whom virtue nor honor nor manhood ever forgot

sîn meister und sîn schepfer, der in dâ werden liez.
his master and his creator, who him there become let.

an im gebrast niht mêre wan daz er ein heiden hiez.
in him lacked nothing more but that he a heathen was-called.

Im dienten durch Kriechen der Bulgerîe walt: 2
To-him served through Greece the Bulgaria's wood:

von hiunischem gemerke betwanc ez sîn gewalt.
from Hunnish march subdued it his power.

im dienten mit gewalte kriechischiu künicrîch.
to-him served with power Greek kingdoms.

er saz ûf Kunstenobele und hiez hêr Huge Dietrîch.
he sat on Constantinople and was-called sir Hug Dietrich.

Botelunges swester von den Hiunen was sîn wîp. 3
Botelung's sister from the Huns was his woman.

diu het guote witze und tugentlîchen lîp.
she had good wits and virtuous body.

si was alles wandels und missewende frî.
she was of-all blemish and misdeed free.

si truoc ouch bî dem Kriechen schœner süne drî.
she bore also by the Greek fair sons three.

4 Si wâren liep der frouwen und ouch dem künege rîch.
They were dear to-the lady and also to-the king rich.

durch die grôzen liebe hiez mans alle Dietrîch.
for the great love called one-them all Dietrich.

dô si der süne zwêne bî dem künege gewan,
when she of-the sons two by the king got,

dô gienc den künic rîchen aber ein hervart an.
then went to-the king rich again an army-journey on.

5 Die volbrâhte er mit êren und gewan ouch helde genuoc.
That accomplished he with honors and got also heroes enough.

dô weste niht der Krieche daz si den dritten truoc.
then knew not the Greek that she the third bore.

mit Berhtunge von Mêrân er dô die hervart swuor,
with Berchtung of Meran he then the army-journey swore,

der was sîn rât getriuwer: von rehte er mit im fuor.
he was his counselor faithful: by right he with him went.

6 Dô wolte er sînem friunde, einem künege leit tuon,
Then would he to-his friend, a king sorrow do,

von Tenemarke Fruoten sîner swester suon.
of Denmark Frute his sister's son.

dô sprach der künic rîche ze Berhtunge von Mêrân
then spoke the king rich to Berchtung of Meran

'wem sol ich mîne liute und mîne bürge lân?
'to-whom shall I my people and my castles leave?

Mîn lant und mîn erbe, ouch mîn künicrîch 7
My land and my inheritance, also my kingdom

und mîn liebe frouwen?' sprach Huge Dietrîch.
and my dear lady?' spoke Hug Dietrich.

dô sprach der vil getriuwe 'wer möhte ez baz behaben?
then spoke the very faithful 'who might it better keep?

bevilh ez mîme gesellen, dem herzogen Saben,
commend it to-my companion, the duke Saben,

Elliu dîniu rîche, diu dir undertænic sint, 8
All thy realms, which to-thee subject are,

dar zuo mîne frouwen und dîn vil lieben kint.'
there to my lady and thy very dear children.'

den rîchen fürsten Saben hiez er dô für sich gân:
the rich prince Saben bade he then before himself go:

allez daz er hête daz machet er im undertân.
all that he had that made he to-him subject.

Kint und künicrîche, wîp und al sîn lant 9
Children and kingdom, woman and all his land

bevalh erm ûf sîn triuwe: daz was niht wol bewant.
commended he-him on his faith: that was not well bestowed.

als im den rücken kêrte der liebe hêrre sîn,
as him the back turned the dear lord his,

er trat gezogenlîchen für die künigîn.
he stepped courteously before the queen.

Er sprach ze sîner frouwen 'nu mîn hêrre sî geriten, 10
He spoke to his lady 'now my lord be ridden,

nu solt du niht zürnen, ich wil dich etewes biten'.
now shalt thou not be-angry, I will thee something ask'.

si sprach gezogenlîchen ‘ich zürne wider dich niht,
she spoke courteously ‘I am-angry against thee not,

wilt du gefüeger dinge muoten, ez geschiht.
(if)-wilt thou fitting things desire, it happens.

11 Du maht aber ûf mîn triuwe solher bete gern,
Thou mayst however on my faith such request desire,

daz ich ê mit dir zurnde, ê ich wolte dich gewern.’
that I rather with thee was-angry, before I would thee grant.’

er sprach valschlîchen ‘diu bete ist ûf geschoben:
he spoke falsely ‘the request is up put-off:

ich getar gên dir niht muoten, du wellest zorn verloben.’
I dare toward thee not desire, unless-thou will wrath forswear.’

12 Dô sprach diu wol gezogene ‘diu bete erloubet sî.
Then spoke the well bred-one ‘the request allowed be.

ich weiz dich sô getriuwen, ich bin lasters von dir frî.
I know thee so faithful, I am of-disgrace from thee free.

dîn hêrr hât mich enpholhen dir ûf die triuwe dîn:
thy lord has me commended to-thee on the faith thine:

ich weiz dich sô getriuwen, du vârest niht der êren mîn.’
I know thee so faithful, thou lurkest not for-the honor mine.’

13 Dô sprach der valsches rîche ‘ich sage dir waz ich wil.
Then spoke the of-falseness rich-one ‘I tell thee what I will.

du hâst urloup mir ze zürnen. nu bite ich ouch niht vil.
thou hast leave to-me to be-angry. now ask I also not much.

ich hân mich mînes hêrren ûf diser verte verzigen:
I have myself of-my lord on this journey renounced:

er kumet doch nimmer widere: nu lâ mich bî dir ligen.’
he comes yet never back: now let me by thee lie.’

Der frouwen dô vor zorne ir herze in jâmer brach. 14
To-the lady then for wrath her heart in sorrow broke.

dô flôz ir von den ougen über die brust ein bach.
then flowed to-her from the eyes over the breast a brook.

si sprach 'du hâst zerbrochen an mir die triuwe dîn.
she spoke 'thou hast broken on me the faith thine.

und sent in got her widere, ich klagez dem hêrren mîn.'
if sends him God hither back, I lament-it to-the lord mine.'

Dô er ir angest hôrte, dô tete er alse ein man 15
When he her fear heard, then did he as a man

der wol mit valschen listen sîn rede verkêren kan.
who well with false arts his speech turn can.

dô sprach er zühticlîchen 'ich het ez niht geruocht:
then spoke he courteously 'I had it not desired:

du solt niht zürnen, frouwe, ich hân dich niuwan dâ mite versuocht.
thou shalt not be-angry, lady, I have thee only there with tested.

Ich hân wol versuochet dîn stæte und dîne tugent. 16
I have well tested thy steadfastness and thy virtue.

du hâst in dînem herzen bêde kiusche und ganze tugent.
thou hast in thy heart both chastity and whole virtue.

swaz ich mit dir geschimpfe, daz solt du mir vertragen.
whatever I with thee jest, that shalt thou me pardon.

du solt keine untriuwe mînem hêrrn von mir niht sagen.'
thou shalt no unfaith to-my lord of me at-all say.'

Si sprach 'hâst duz in spotte gegen mir gereit, 17
She spoke '(if)-hast thou-it in mockery toward me said,

sô wirt es mînem hêrren von mir niht geseit.
so is it to-my lord from me not said.

ich wil dir des mîn triuwe und mîn wîplîch êre geben:
I will to-thee for-that my faith and my womanly honor give:

gewehenest dus ie mêre, ez gêt dir an dîn leben.'
(if)-mentionest thou-it ever more, it goes to-thee at thy life.'

18 Dô hôrte er an ir worten daz ir wille was niht guot.
Then heard he in her words that her will was not good.

er dâhte 'ich hân gehœret daz siz niene tuot.
he thought 'I have heard that she-it never does.

ich getar niht mêre erzürnen hie mite daz schœne wîp,
I dare not more anger here with the fair woman,

und sagt siz mînem hêrren, ez gât mir an den lîp.'
if tells she-it to-my lord, it goes to-me at the life.'

19 Dô nâhente ez dem jâre, daz daz dritte kindelîn
Then neared it to-the year, that the third little-child

geboren solte werden von der edeln künigîn.
born should be from the noble queen.

si was ein heideninne und geloubte doch an got:
she was a heathen-woman and believed yet in God:

swâ si vor vorhte mohte, dâ leist si sîn gebot.
wherever she for fear might, there performed she his command.

20 Si lac eines nahtes in ir bette unde slief.
She lay one night in her bed and slept.

si was niht vol entslâfen, unz ir ein stimme rief
she was not fully fallen-asleep, until to-her a voice called

'frouwe, du solt wachen, diz schrecken mir vertragen:
'lady, thou shalt wake, this fright me pardon:

nu du an got geloubest, ich sol dir guotiu mære sagen.
now thou in God believest, I shall to-thee good tidings tell.

Dîn man und du sît heiden, doch tregest ein kindelîn: 21
Thy husband and thou are heathens, yet bearest a little-child:
got wil dich niht erlâzen, ez müeze cristen sîn.'
God will thee not release, it must Christian be.'
si sprach 'wie gerne ich leiste sîn bete und sîn gebot,
she spoke 'how gladly I perform his request and his command,
sol ich michs an dich lâzen unde an dînen got.'
shall I myself-it to thee leave and to thy God.'

Er sprach 'disiu mære alsô wâriu sint, 22
He spoke 'these tidings so true are,
daz du an dem fünften morgen, frouwe, gewinnst ein kint,
that thou on the fifth morning, lady, gettest a child,
daz dir dîn schepfer under dîn herze hât gefrumt.
which to-thee thy creator under thy heart has wrought.
du solt ouch daz niht lâzen, swann ez zer welde kumt:
thou shalt also that not omit, when it to-the world comes:

Über ein halbe mîle sitzt ein guoter man: 23
Over a half mile sits a good man:
du solt mit dînem kinde ze dem einsidele gân.
thou shalt with thy child to the hermit go.
daz solt du im bringen an einem morgen fruo
that shalt thou to-him bring on a morning early
und solt in des niht irren, swaz er mit dem kindel tuo.'
and shalt him in-that not hinder, whatever he with the little-child does.'

An dem fünften morgen kam si ûz aller nôt. 24
On the fifth morning came she out-of all distress.
dô si sich vermohte, si tete swaz er gebôt.
when she herself was-able, she did whatever he commanded.

si truoc ûz der bürge ir kindelîn verstoln
she carried out-of the castle her little-child stolen

und gienc zem klûsenære verborgen und verholn.
and went to-the anchorite hidden and secret.

25 Si enweste war si solte und gienc doch rehte dar.
She not-knew whither she should and went yet rightly thither.

er was ouch dâ gesezzen mêr danne vierzic jâr.
he was also there settled more than forty years.

als diu küniginne ze dem hiuselîne gienc,
when the queen to the little-house went,

der selbe klûsenære si minniclîche enphienc.
the same anchorite her lovingly received.

26 Er hiez si flîziclîchen gote willekomen sîn.
He bade her diligently to-God welcome be.

'dîn sun sol cristen werden: gip mir daz kindelîn.'
'thy son shall Christian become: give me the little-child.'

si werte sich des lange: daz kint si im doch liez;
she defended herself of-it long: the child she to-him yet left;

si sach daz harte ungerne, daz erz in daz wazzer stiez.
she saw that very unwillingly, that he-it into the water thrust.

27 Dô sach si ob dem wâge schînen kerzen lieht.
Then saw she above the wave shine candles bright.

die ez im hulfen toufen, der ensach si leider niht.
who it him helped baptize, them saw she alas not.

daz kindel er in sîden vil schône dô bewant
the little-child he in silk very fairly then wrapped

und gap ez sîner muoter wider in die hant.
and gave it to-its mother back into the hand.

Dô sprach er zuo der frouwen ‘sî dir liep daz kindelîn, 28
Then spoke he to the lady ‘(if)-be to-thee dear the little-child,

so behalt unz an sîn alter daz toufgewæte sîn.
so keep until to his age the baptismal-garment his.

ich wil dir sagen, frouwe, swaz im dar von geschiht,
I will to-thee tell, lady, whatever to-him there from happens,

und sî dir liep daz kindel, sô vlius daz gwæte niht.
if be to-thee dear the little-child, so lose the garment not.

Swenn du in in sorgen sendest, sô legez an sînen lîp.’ 29
Whenever thou him into cares sendest, so lay-it on his body.’

‘sô wirt ez im ze kleine, fürhte ich’ sprach daz wîp.
‘so becomes it to-him too small, fear I’ spoke the woman.

‘ez wirt in sînem alter ein ungefüeger man:
‘it becomes in his age a monstrous man:

swie enge ab ez dich dunke, sô legt erz doch wol an.
however narrow however it thee seem, so lays he-it yet well on.

Swenn erz in strîte füeret, sô ist sîn lîp gesunt. 30
Whenever he-it into battle leads, so is his body sound.

von deheiner slahte wâfen wirt er nimmer wunt.
from no kind-of weapon becomes he ever wounded.

von wazzer noch von fiure verliust er sînen lîp.’
from water nor from fire loses he his life.’

‘sô wil ich imz gerne behalten’ alsô sprach daz wîp.
‘so will I for-him-it gladly keep’ so spoke the woman.

‘Ich wil dir sagen mêre, wie lange ez dir sol leben. 31
‘I will to-thee tell more, how long it to-thee shall live.

ich wil im ie zem jâre eines mannes sterke geben:
I will to-him ever to-the year a man’s strength give:

von der gotes gâbe wirt er fünfzic jâr alt
from the God's gift becomes he fifty years old
und fünfzic manne sterke hât sîn lîp gewalt.
and fifty men's strength has his body power.

32 Du solt umb in niht sorgen: er kumt vil dicke in nôt,
Thou shalt about him not worry: he comes very often into distress,
er kumet ouch vil ofte daz im nâhen ist der tôt,
he comes also very often that to-him near is the death,
und wil dir sagen mêre, daz er mit sîn eines hant
and will to-thee tell more, that he with his one hand
ein schœne küniginne erstritet unde ein lant.'
a fair queen wins-by-fighting and a land.'

33 Si hete wol geleistet ein bezzer gewant.
She had well provided a better garment.
dô vorhte si des sêre, si wurde drinne erkant.
then feared she of-it sorely, she would-be therein recognized.
daz sol des wurmes vîndes êrste âventiure sîn:
that shall of-the worm's foe's first adventure be:
noch lebte ûf Garte in sorgen diu arme künigîn.
still lived on Garda in cares the poor queen.

Wolfdietrich II

II · THE WOLF'S CHILD

The boy grows so strong that at three and a half he throws against the wall any dog that snatches his bread, and the court calls him a devil's child. The false Saben invents a lie and tells the king he heard the queen wish the devil were with her. The king, though he thinks her guiltless, resolves to have the child killed, and on Saben's advice orders his faithful Berchtung of Meran to do it in secret. Berchtung refuses until the king threatens to hang his sixteen sons and his wife, and then gives his word, asking that the child be handed to him unseen.

Dô wuohs der junchêrre. des phlac sîn muoter wol 34
Then grew the young-lord. of-him took-care his mother well

mit muoterlîcher triuwe, als ein frouwe ir kindes sol.
with motherly faith, as a lady her child shall.

als vil gerne liep den frouwen ir jungiu kindel sint,
as very gladly dear to-the ladies their young little-children are,

der selbe was ir lieber dann ander ir kint.
the same was to-her dearer than other her children.

Si hete in gote ergeben und dem tiuvel gar benomen. 35
She had him to-God given and from-the devil wholly taken.

dô nâhente ez dem jâre, daz der künic solte komen.
then neared it to-the year, that the king should come.

do enweste er niht dâ heime des jungen sunes sîn.
then knew he not there at-home of-the young son his.

dô wuohs ouch volliclîchen daz liebe kindelîn.
then grew also fully the dear little-child.

36 Die boten vaste gâhten gegen dem künege rîch.
The messengers hard hastened toward the king rich.

si sageten im diu mære, diu wâren wünniclîch.
they told him the tidings, they were delightful.

'nu gip uns, hêrre, miete: du hâst ein schœnen suon.'
'now give us, lord, reward: thou hast a fair son.'

mit freuden sprach der Krieche 'daz wil ich gerne tuon.'
with joys spoke the Greek 'that will I gladly do.'

37 Dô was im liep zem wîbe und zem kinde: er hete es reht.
Then was to-him dear to-the woman and to-the child: he had it right.

dô truoc man im engegene den wunniclîchen kneht.
then carried one to-him toward the delightful boy.

daz kint was alsô schœne, daz erz vil gerne sach,
the child was so fair, that he-it very gladly saw,

und freute sich sîn herze, des im sîn muoter jach.
and rejoiced itself his heart, in-what him his mother avowed.

38 Dô sazte man den kleinen, daz er bî der tavele stuont.
Then set one the little-one, that he by the table stood.

dô er geloufen mohte, als noch diu kindel tuont,
when he run might, as still the little-children do,

dô gap man im durch liebe brôt in sîne hant:
then gave one to-him for love bread into his hand:

swelch hunt im aber daz zucte, den warf er an die want.
whatever hound him however that snatched, him threw he against the wall.

39 Dô daz die liute ersâhen, si segenten alle sich.
When that the people saw, they crossed all themselves.

die wîsen alle sprâchen 'got behüete mich!
the wise-ones all spoke 'God guard me!

vil ungefüege sterke hât dîn vierthalbez jâr.'
very monstrous strength has thy three-and-a-half year.'

durch des kindes wunder fuor vil der liute dar.
for the child's wonder went many of-the people thither.

Swer dô des kindes sterke bî der schœne ane sach, 40
Whoever then the child's strength by the beauty at saw,

der segente sich durch wunder: ze dem künege maneger sprach
he crossed himself for wonder: to the king many-a-one spoke

diu wort, als man dâ sprichet, diu gar unnütze sint:
the words, as one there speaks, which wholly useless are:

'hêr künec, nu heizt in tœten: er ist des übeln tiuvels kint.
'sir king, now bid him kill: he is the evil devil's child.

Ir sult daz gelouben, erst von dem tiuvel komen. 41
You shall that believe, he-is from the devil come.

wâ solte er dise sterke anders hân genomen?
where should he this strength otherwise have taken?

læst du den tiuvel wahsen, dir wirt dâ von sorge bekant:
(if)-lettest thou the devil grow, to-thee becomes there from care known:

kumt er ze sînen jâren, er verderbet liute unt lant.'
(if)-comes he to his years, he ruins people and land.'

Der künic disiu mære hôrte ungerne sagen. 42
The king these tidings heard unwillingly tell.

do begunde er an dem kinde schœne und sîn lîp klagen.
then began he on the child beauty and his body lament.

daz erz verrechen solte, daz gienc im an sîn leben:
that he-it avenge should, that went to-him at his life:

vor ungehiuren dingen er wolt im niht fride geben.
before monstrous things he would to-him not peace give.

43 Dô sante er heimlîchen nâch dem ungetriuwen Saben.
Then sent he secretly after the unfaithful Saben.
dô sprach der künec 'ich wæne wir übel gehüetet haben.
then spoke the king 'I think we ill guarded have.
mîn êre muoz ich vliesen und daz kindelîn.
my honor must I lose and the little-child.
ouch sprechent alle liute daz ez nie wurde mîn.'
also speak all people that it never became mine.'

44 Do gedâhte im aber Saben, der ungetriuwe lîp,
Then thought for-himself again Saben, the unfaithful body,
wie er die lüge erfunde, dâ mit er erzurnt daz wîp.
how he the lie invented, there with he angered the woman.
er hete in sînem herzen behalten manegen tac
he had in his heart kept many-a day
wie er irz ûf gehüebe, daz si bî im niht lac.
how he her-it up raised, that she by him not lay.

45 Dô sprach er zuo dem künege 'hêrre, ich sage dir daz,
Then spoke he to the king 'lord, I tell thee that,
swaz ich eins nahtes hôrte, do ich bî der frouwen saz:
what I one night heard, when I by the lady sat:
si sprach "und wolte der tiuvel immer bî mir sîn!"
she spoke "and would the devil ever by me be!"
von den selben sachen ist komen daz kindelîn.'
from the same things is come the little-child.'

46 Dô dâhte er aber widere 'hân ich daz ûf si gelogen,
Then thought he again back '(if)-have I that against her lied,
si saget lîht die wârheit, sô bin ich gar betrogen.
she tells perhaps the truth, so am I wholly deceived.

du solt mich drumb niht melden, daz si sô hât getobet:
thou shalt me therefore not betray, that she so has raged:
ich soltz niht haben gesaget; daz hete ich ir gelobet.'
I should-it not have said; that had I to-her promised.'

Dô sprach der künec 'mich dunket daz unschuldic sî daz wîp. 47
Then spoke the king 'me seems that guiltless be the woman.
doch rât uns, hêrre Saben, daz wir im benemen den lîp.
yet counsel us, lord Saben, that we from-it take the life.
rât wie werde dem kinde sîn schœner lîp benomen,
counsel how be to-the child its fair body taken,
daz ez dem wider werde, von dem ez sî bekomen.'
that it to-him back becomes, from whom it be come.'

Dô sprach der valsche Sabene 'wol ich gerâten kan. 48
Then spoke the false Saben 'well I counsel can.
heize dir gewinnen Berhtungen von Mêrân.
bid thee get Berchtung of Meran.
du hâst ir ninder zwêne, die dir getriuwer sîn.
thou hast of-them nowhere two, who to-thee more-faithful be.
den heiz verholne tœten daz kleine kindelîn.
him bid secretly kill the small little-child.

Geschiht ez offenlîchen, die liute unnütze sint, 49
(If)-happens it openly, the people useless are,
si zîhent dich vil lîhte, du habest ertôt daz kint.
they accuse thee very likely, thou have killed the child.
du solt im verholne heizen nemen sîn leben.'
thou shalt from-it secretly bid take its life.'
er sprach 'ich wil dir volgen, du hâst guoten rât gegeben.'
he spoke 'I will thee follow, thou hast good counsel given.'

50 Dô sprach aber Saben ‘des râts tuon ich mich abe.
Then spoke again Saben ‘of-the counsel do I myself off.

du solt mich des niht zîhen, daz ich dirz gerâten habe.’
thou shalt me of-it not accuse, that I thee-it counseled have.’

ûz dem selben râte er sich dar umbe nam:
out-of the same counsel he himself there for took:

er wolt daz die getriuwen wurden an einander gram.
he would that the faithful became against one-another hostile.

51 Berhtunc der wart heimlîche zuo dem künege brâht.
Berchtung he was secretly to the king brought.

dô sprach der alte wîse ‘wes ist nu gedâht?
then spoke the old wise-one ‘what is now thought?

hêrre, lât mich hœren, waz disiu mære sint.’
lord, let me hear, what these tidings are.’

mit jâmer sprach der Krieche ‘du solt tœten mir mîn kint
with sorrow spoke the Greek ‘thou shalt kill for-me my child

52 Heimlîche und sô verholne, daz sîn niemen werde gewar.’
Secretly and so hidden, that of-it no-one become aware.’

dô sprach der vil getriuwe ‘seht, daz behüete ich gar.
then spoke the very faithful ‘see, that guard-against I wholly.

ich wil an sînem tôde vil gar unschuldic sîn.
I will in his death very wholly guiltless be.

mir wære leit swer tôte den erbehêrren mîn.’
to-me were loath whoever killed the hereditary-lord mine.’

53 Der künec sprach ‘nu gedenke, Berhtunc von Mêrân,
The king spoke ‘now remember, Berchtung of Meran,

daz ich niht sô getriuwes in mînem rîche hân,
that I nothing so faithful in my kingdom have,

und lâz mich des geniezen, daz man dir triuwe giht.
and let me of-it profit, that one to-thee faith avows.
du solt daz kindel tœten.' er sprach 'ich entœt sîn niht.'
thou shalt the little-child kill.' he spoke 'I kill him not.'

'Unser zweier triuwe ie mêre gescheiden sint. 54
'Our two faith ever more parted are.
du hâst ûf Lilienporte sehszehen schœniu kint,
thou hast on Lilienporte sixteen fair children,
unlange junchêrren, unde ein schœnez wîp:
not-long young-lords, and a fair woman:
die heize ich alle tœten, du ennemest dem kinde sînen lîp.
them bid I all kill, thou unless-takest from-the child its life.

Die dir suln liep von rehte und ouch billîche sîn, 55
Who to-thee shall dear by right and also rightly be,
die heize ich alle hâhen an die zinnen dîn,
them bid I all hang on the battlements thine,
und ze aller vorderst dir ouch selben nemen daz leben.'
and at all foremost from-thee also self take the life.'
'ich wil gelt sô grôzen niht wider daz eine geben,'
'I will payment so great not against the one give,'

So gedâhte der getriuwe: 'ez ist niht alsô guot. 56
So thought the faithful-one: 'it is not so good.
ich tuo swaz er mich heize: vil grimme ist sîn muot.
I do whatever he me bids: very grim is his spirit.
ê danne er mich hienge, mîniu kint und mîn wîp,
before than he me hanged, my children and my woman,
wolt er michs niht erlâzen, ich næme im ê den lîp.'
would he me-of-it not release, I would-take from-him rather the life.'

57 Dô sprach er zuo dem künege ‘welt ir michs niht erlân,
Then spoke he to the king ‘(if)-will you me-of-it not release,

sô wil ichz gerne ertœten’ sprach Berhtunc von Mêrân.
so will I-it gladly kill’ spoke Berchtung of Meran.

‘sît ir niht welt erwinden oder ez geschehe,
‘since you not will desist or it happen,

sô solt ir mirz antwurten, daz ez nie man ersehe.’
so shall you to-me-it answer, that it never man see.’

58 Des gâben si dô triuwe an einander dâ.
Of-that gave they then faith to one-another there.

Berhtunc wær aber gerner gewesen anderswâ.
Berchtung were however more-gladly been elsewhere.

daz ist diu ander sorge, daz erleit daz kindelîn.
that is the other care, that suffered the little-child.

noch lebte ûf Garte in jâmer diu arme künigîn.
still lived on Garda in sorrow the poor queen.

Wolfdietrich III

III · AMONG THE WOLVES

Hugdietrich asks the queen whether the child is the devil's and swears it will never inherit. Once she sleeps, he nearly stabs the boy himself, then hands him, still asleep, to Berchtung, who carries him into the wild but cannot kill him. He sets him by a spring full of roses, where the child does not fall in, and that night wolves sit about him without harm. Berchtung tests him with a cross, which the child will not break, names him Wolfdietrich, and leaves him with a huntsman and his wife.

Der künec sprach zuo Berhtungen 'ich hân mich wol bedâht, 59
The king spoke to Berchtung 'I have myself well bethought,

wie wir daz kint gewinnen: du solt wachen dise naht.
how we the child get: thou shalt wake this night.

dir muoz der torwarte als undertænic sîn:
to-thee must the gatekeeper as subject be:

swenne dichs gelustet, er læt dich ûz unt în.
whenever thee-it pleases, he lets thee out and in.

Deheinen kamerære lâz ich ligen vor der tür. 60
No chamberlain let I lie before the door.

alsô daz kint entslæfet, sô solt du treten dar für.
when the child falls-asleep, so shalt thou step there before.

swenne si in der bürge alle entslâfen sint
whenever they in the castle all fallen-asleep are

und mîn frouwe entslæfet, sô gibe ich dir mîn kint.'
and my lady falls-asleep, so give I to-thee my child.'

Dô tete der vil getriuwe, als in der künic hiez. 61
Then did the very faithful, as him the king bade.

er schuof mit dem torwarte, daz ern în und ûz liez.
he arranged with the gatekeeper, that he-him in and out let.

dô tete der vil getriuwe, als in sîn hêrre bat:
then did the very faithful, as him his lord bade:

dô si in der burc entsliefen, für die kemenâte er trat.
when they in the castle fell-asleep, before the chamber he stepped.

62 Dô retten mit einander der man und ouch daz wîp.
Then spoke with each-other the man and also the woman.

si heten grôzen jâmer umbe des kindes lîp.
they had great sorrow about the child's body.

der künec sprach zuo der frouwen 'wâ næm duz kindelîn,
the king spoke to the lady 'where tookest-thou-it the little-child,

du ennæmestz von dem tiuvel?' 'nein' sprach diu künigîn.
thou unless-tookest-it from the devil?' 'no' spoke the queen.

63 Dô sprach der künec mit zorne 'ez sol niht lenger leben.
Then spoke the king with wrath 'it shall not longer live.

ich wil im ouch mîns erbes nimmer halbe stat gegeben.
I will to-it also of-my inheritance never half place give.

im wirt ouch von mir nimmer beidiu burc unt lant:
to-it becomes also from me never both castle and land:

swaz ich im erbes gæbe, daz wær übele gewant.'
whatever I to-it of-inheritance gave, that were ill bestowed.'

64 Dô sprach diu frouwe in zorne 'daz ist als du wilt.
Then spoke the lady in wrath 'that is as thou wilt.

nu ist manec wol geborne, der nimmer füeret schilt.
now is many-a well born-one, who never carries shield.

als muoz er ouch vertrœsten sich lîhte der gâbe dîn.
so must he also renounce himself perhaps of-the gift thine.

der in dâ hât beschaffen, der bewar daz kindelîn.'
who him there has created, he guard the little-child.'

‘Er sol riuten unde bouwen, von arte ist daz sîn reht. 65
‘He shall clear and till, by nature is that his right.

wer liez im sîn künicrîche? er mac niht küneges kneht
who left to-him his kingdom? he may not king’s servant

gesîn mit sînem lîbe: er hât niht küneges muot.
be with his body: he has not king’s spirit.

er sol in dem walde liute morden umbe ir guot.’
he shall in the wood people murder for their goods.’

Dô sprach diu frouwe in jâmer ‘lîhte im baz geschiht: 66
Then spoke the lady in sorrow ‘perhaps to-him better happens:

swes im got wil gunnen, des mac man im nemen niht.
whatever to-him God will grant, that may one from-him take not.

waz ouch ûz im sol werden, daz ist dir unbekant:
what also out-of him shall become, that is to-thee unknown:

sîn eines lîp erstritet ein künegîn unde ein lant.’
his one body wins-by-fighting a queen and a land.’

‘Wilt aber daz gelouben?’ sprach er zer künigîn. 67
‘Wilt however that believe?’ spoke he to-the queen.

si sprach ‘mir ist getroumet, daz ez sol alsô sîn.’
she spoke ‘to-me is dreamed, that it shall so be.’

dô sprach aber der Krieche ‘sol im geschehen daz heil,
then spoke again the Greek ‘(if)-shall to-him happen the luck,

sô lâze er sînen bruodern al hie sîn dritteil.
so leave he to-his brothers all here his third-part.

An einem künicrîche hât er immer lant genuoc, 68
In one kingdom has he ever land enough,

und kan er daz ervehten, sô ist er harte kluoc.
if can he that win-by-fighting, so is he very clever.

ich gibe dir des mîn triuwe und lâze ez ouch wâr,
I give to-thee of-that my faith and let it also true,

daz er aller mîner lande geniuzet nimmer umbe ein hâr,
that he of-all my lands profits never by a hair,

69 Noch nimmer teil gewinnet, und solte er immer leben.
Nor ever part wins, if should he ever live.

ich verbiutz ouch mînen kinden, daz si im ihtes geben,
I forbid-it also to-my children, that they to-him anything give,

swanne sô ich sterbe, dehein des landes mîn.'
whenever so I die, any of-the land mine.'

'sô müeze im got genâden' sprach aber diu künigîn.
'so may to-him God be-gracious' spoke again the queen.

70 Dô swuor bî den zîten dehein künec deheinen eit,
Then swore in the times no king any oath,

swaz er in triuwen lobte, ez wær diu wârheit.
whatever he in faith vowed, it were the truth.

dô kêrte sich hin umbe diu frouwe unde slief,
then turned herself thither about the lady and slept,

und sleich er ûz der decke: Berhtunge er lîse rief.
and crept he out-of the cover: Berchtung he softly called.

71 Er rûnte durch die porte 'Berhtunc, bist du dâ?'
He whispered through the gate 'Berchtung, art thou there?'

dô sprach mit lisem worte der vil getriuwe 'jâ.'
then spoke with soft word the very faithful 'yea.'

'weist du ob in der bürge die liute entslâfen sint?'
'knowest thou whether in the castle the people fallen-asleep are?'

'hêrre, ez wachet niemen, nu emphelhet mir daz kint.'
'lord, there wakes no-one, now commend to-me the child.'

Der künic dennoch vorhte, ez wacht sîn liebez wîp. 72
The king still feared, it woke his dear woman.

dô greif er undr die hülle an ir munt und an ir lîp.
then reached he under the cover on her mouth and on her body.

sîn hant ez allez suochte swaz man an frouwen siht:
his hand it all searched whatever one on ladies sees:

swie dicke ers aber ruorte, si erwachte leider niht.
however often he-her however touched, she woke alas not.

Dô gienc er zuo dem bette, dâ lac daz kindelîn, 73
Then went he to the bed, where lay the little-child,

daz er verstelen wolte der lieben muoter sîn.
which he steal would from-the dear mother its.

do getorste er nie gerüeren daz kleine kindelîn:
then dared he never touch the small little-child:

er vorhte obe erz wacte, ez wact die muoter sîn.
he feared if he-it woke, it woke the mother its.

Er gedâhte in sînem muote 'und wirt daz kindel lût, 74
He thought in his mind 'if becomes the little-child loud,

so erschrîet ouch diu muoter, sô liep ist ir daz trût,
so cries-out also the mother, so dear is to-her the darling,

und bringet mich ze schanden: noch lieber vlüre ichz leben.
and brings me to shames: yet rather would-lose I-the life.

ich wil ez rehte ermorden und wil imz alsô tôtez geben.'
I will it rightly murder and will him-it so dead give.'

Ze sînes bettes houpte suocht er sîn gürtelgwant, 75
At his bed's head sought he his belt-gear,

nâch walhischem site namer ein mezzer an die hant.
after Italian manner took-he a knife into the hand.

er sprach 'wilt du weinen, unreinez kindelîn,
he spoke 'wilt thou weep, unclean little-child,

unz an die hant daz mezzer stich ich in daz herze dîn.'
until to the hand the knife thrust I into the heart thine.'

76 Dô zucte er ûz dem bette daz kint, dâ er ez vant.
Then snatched he out-of the bed the child, where he it found.

durch sînen tôt daz mezzer truoc er an der hant.
for its death the knife carried he in the hand.

got gap im dâ ze heile daz daz kindel slief:
God gave to-him there to luck that the little-child slept:

anders het erz ermordet. Berhtunc im aber rief
otherwise had he-it murdered. Berchtung to-him again called

77 'Wie lange wilt du bîten? ez ist gên dem tage.
'How long wilt thou wait? it is toward the day.

gip mir daz kint bî zîten, daz ich ez fürder trage,
give me the child in time, that I it further carry,

ê dan diu frouwe erwache und uns melde des morgens schîn.'
before than the lady wake and us betray the morning's shine.'

vil sanfte sprach der Krieche 'nu nim hin daz kindelîn.'
very softly spoke the Greek 'now take away the little-child.'

78 Berhtunc der getriuwe sînen hêrren enphienc.
Berchtung the faithful his lord received.

von der kemenâten er vil lîse gienc.
from the chamber he very softly went.

do er kam für daz gewelbe, dô gienc er nâher baz
when he came before the vault, then went he nearer better

unz für die burcporten: ûf daz ros er gesaz.
until before the castle-gate: onto the horse he sat.

In sînen regenmantel want er daz kindelîn. 79
In his rain-cloak wrapped he the little-child.

er sprach ze dem torwarten ‘und gewehenest du mîn,
he spoke to the gatekeeper ‘if mentionest thou me,

ich slahe dir abe daz houbet und wirf dich in den graben:
I strike to-thee off the head and throw thee into the moat:

verswigst ab du die reise, du maht sîn frum gehaben.’
(if)-keepest-silent however thou the journey, thou mayst of-it profit have.’

Swie ebene ab er sich sazte, der reise in doch verdrôz. 80
However evenly however he himself sat, of-the journey him yet wearied.

der torwarte im legte daz kindel in die schôz.
the gatekeeper to-him laid the little-child into the lap.

er reit über die brücke, im lûhte des morgens schîn:
he rode over the bridge, to-him shone the morning’s shine:

reht an der burclîten erwacht daz kindelîn.
right at the castle-slope awoke the little-child.

Dô rief ez in den sorgen, alse ein kindel tuot, 81
Then called it in the cares, as a little-child does,

daz ouch ze solhem tôde hât deheinen muot.
which also to such death has no mind.

ez sprach erbermiclîche ‘muoter, decke mich.’
it spoke pitifully ‘mother, cover me.’

der alte sprach in zorne ‘ich enruoche, und friuset dich.’
the old-one spoke in wrath ‘I never-mind, if freezes thee.’

Als im der liehte morgen und ouch diu sunne erschein, 82
When to-him the bright morning and also the sun appeared,

er gedâhte an sîne triuwe, dô was er alters ein.
he thought on his faith, then was he all alone.

als der sunnen blicke durch die liehten wolken brach,
when the sun's gleam through the bright clouds broke,

er was geriten sô verre, daz in niemen sach.
he was ridden so far, that him no-one saw.

83 Die stîge und ouch die strâze er durch vorhte vermeit.
The paths and also the road he for fear shunned.

durch walt und durch gevilde er mit im schâches reit.
through wood and through field he with it athwart rode.

do erwachete in den stunden vil gar daz kindelîn.
then woke in the hours very wholly the little-child.

do vergaz ez sînes frostes und spilte mit den ringen sîn.
then forgot it its frost and played with the rings his.

84 Alsô daz kleine kindel sîner sorgen gar vergaz,
As the small little-child of-its cares wholly forgot,

dô greif ez an die ringe und sprach 'waz ist daz?'
then grasped it at the rings and spoke 'what is that?'

des halsperges schœne daz kindel nie verdrôz.
of-the hauberk's beauty the little-child never wearied.

daz ersach der Krieche: sîn jâmer wart vil grôz.
that saw the Greek: his sorrow became very great.

85 Ez lûhte im under d'ougen sîn lîp als der snê:
There shone to-him under the-eyes its body as the snow:

swaz daz kint gelachte, daz tete dem alten wê.
whatever the child laughed, that did to-the old-one woe.

er dâhte 'ob ich dich tôte, daz ergie mir nimmer wol.
he thought 'if I thee kill, that went to-me never well.

mîn herze ist sô betrüebet, ich wæn mit dir ersterben sol.'
my heart is so troubled, I think with thee die shall.'

Dô fuorte erz ûf die heide an ein vil grüenez gras 86
Then led he-it onto the heath to a very green grass
in ein frömde wilde, dâ niemen bî in was.
into a strange wild, where no-one by them was.
er sazte ez ûf den anger, dô zôch er ûz daz swert:
he set it onto the meadow, then drew he out the sword:
daz kint wolt er des tôdes durch den hêrren hân gewert.
the child would he of-the death for the lord have granted.

Daz swert begunde er schouwen, dô was sîn herze verzagt. 87
The sword began he behold, then was his heart daunted.
daz habet ir wol gehœret, vil dicke ist daz gesagt:
that have you well heard, very often is that said:
swem got sîn leben wil fristen, niht leides dem geschiht.
to-whom God his life will preserve, nothing harmful to-him happens.
sîn hende ez wolden tœten, dô gestatz sîn herze niht.
his hands it would kill, then allowed-it his heart not.

Dô sprach er wider sich selben 'wie ist mir sô geschehen? 88
Then spoke he against himself self 'how is to-me so happened?
ich hân vor mîner hende wol hundert man gesehen,
I have before my hand well hundred men seen,
die ich alle hân ertœtet und mit mîner hant erslagen:
whom I all have killed and with my hand slain:
daz ich nu bin sô blœde, daz wil ich gote klagen.
that I now am so timid, that will I to-God lament.

Daz ich dich niht tar tœten, wâ von kumet mir daz?' 89
That I thee not dare kill, where from comes to-me that?'
daz kindel er dô fuorte mit zorne fürbaz.
the little-child he then led with wrath further.

er gedâhte in sînem herzen ‘ez hât dir got gegeben.
he thought in his heart ‘it has to-thee God given.

du bist wæn alsô sælic, du solt behalten dîn leben.
thou art I-think so blessed, thou shalt keep thy life.

90 Ê danne ich von dir scheide, doch wirt dir dîn lîp benomen.
Before than I from thee part, yet is from-thee thy life taken.

ich wil durch dîn sterben ze einem brunnen komen.
I will for thy dying to a spring come.

du muost dich selbe ertrenken in dem wazzer, liebez kint:
thou must thyself self drown in the water, dear child:

daz kumt von liehten rôsen, die enmitten drinne sint.
that comes from bright roses, which in-the-middle therein are.

91 Ich weiz wol daz dich triuget dîn jungiu kintheit,
I know well that thee deceives thy young childhood,

daz dîn tœrschiu jugent dich dar in verjeit.
that thy foolish youth thee there into chases.

der brunne ist tief al umbe, und wil du, kindelîn,
the spring is deep all around, if wilt thou, little-child,

die rôsen brechen drinne, zwâr du vellst dar în.
the roses pluck therein, truly thou fallest there in.

92 Sô wil ich danne schouwen, wie der tôt dir sî beschert.
So will I then behold, how the death to-thee be granted.

ist dann dîn vater ein tiuvel, er hât dich schiere ernert.’
(if)-is then thy father a devil, he has thee soon saved.’

mit grimmigem muote kam er dar gerant
with grim spirit came he thither running

an eine wîsen grüene, dâ er den brunnen vant.
to a meadow green, where he the spring found.

Mit jâmerlîchem herzen erbeizte er ûf daz gras. 93
With woeful heart dismounted he onto the grass.

dennoch im harte swære umb des kindes sterben was.
still to-him very heavy for the child's dying was.

er sazte ez über den brunnen: het aber daz kindelîn
he set it over the spring: had however the little-child

gegriffen nâch den rôsen, sô wærz gevallen dar în.
grasped after the roses, so were-it fallen there in.

Ez kam von sîner sælde, die rôsen ez vermeit. 94
It came from its bliss, the roses it shunned.

dô gienc ez von dem brunnen hin ûf den anger breit.
then went it from the spring thither onto the meadow broad.

durch sîne kurzwîle viel ez ûf daz grüene gras.
for its pastime fell it onto the green grass.

ez ahtes harte kleine daz ez alters ein dâ was.
it heeded-it very little that it all alone there was.

Berhtunc der getriuwe was listic unde karc. 95
Berchtung the faithful was cunning and shrewd.

sîn ros in loubes dicke und sich selben er verbarc.
his horse in foliage's thickness and himself self he hid.

er sprach 'nu wære ich gerne disen tac bî dir:
he spoke 'now were I gladly this day by thee:

ich fürhte, ob dir iht werre, du vliehest her ze mir.
I fear, if thee anything troubles, thou fleest hither to me.

Ich wil doch bî dir wachen zwâre dise naht. 96
I will yet by thee wake truly this night.

du muost benamen sterben, so ich dich als verr hân brâht.
thou must surely die, since I thee so far have brought.

ich wil grôz wunder hînte an dînem lîbe sehen:
I will great wonder tonight on thy body see:

und gelebest ouch du unz morgen, ez mac fürbaz geschehen.'
if livest also thou until tomorrow, it may further happen.'

97 Daz kint was alters eine und hete kumbers niht.
The child was all alone and had of-trouble nothing.

ez warte des genâden von dem man wunder siht.
it awaited of-that grace from whom one wonder sees.

der phlac sîn wol mit triuwen, sîn helfe ez niht betrouc.
he took-care of-it well with faith, his help it not deceived.

daz wîp was im ze verre, der brüstelîn ez souc.
the woman was to-it too far, whose little-breast it sucked.

98 Er saz unz an den âbent, diu sunne gar verswant.
He sat until to the evening, the sun wholly vanished.

dô brach der liehte mâne durch die wolken sâ ze hant.
then broke the bright moon through the clouds at-once at hand.

dô huop sich zuo dem brunnen durch hitze manic wilt.
then raised itself to the spring for heat many-a beast.

dô was aber niemen des kindes frideschilt.
then was however no-one the child's peace-shield.

99 Swaz wildes ezzen niuzet, daz mac wazzers niht enbern.
Whatever of-game food takes, that may water not forgo.

genas daz kleine kindel, des muoste ez got gewern.
survived the small little-child, that must it God grant.

zuo dem brunnen liefen lewen bern wiltswîn:
to the spring ran lions bears wild-boars:

mitten under dem gewilde saz daz kindelîn.
in-the-middle among the game sat the little-child.

Swaz wildes wazzer wolte, daz muoste et allez dar. 100
Whatever of-game water would, that must just all thither.

ze jungest kam geloufen der wolve ein michel schar
at last came running of-the wolves a great troop

in starkem hungers gîte, als man si loufen siht.
in strong hunger's greed, as one them run sees.

der hunger twanc si sêre und tâten dem kinde niht.
the hunger constrained them sorely and did to-the child nothing.

Von süezes lîbes smacke wart in daz kindel kunt. 101
From sweet body's smell became to-them the little-child known.

von grôzer hungers nœte iegelîches wolves munt
from great hunger's distress each wolf's mouth

daz kindelîn beginte: undr in allen ez dâ saz.
the little-child gaped-at: among them all it there sat.

sô sat wart iegelîcher, daz er des kindes niht enaz.
so sated became each-one, that he of-the child not ate.

Si sâzen zeinem ringe umb daz kint ûf daz gras. 102
They sat in-a ring around the child on the grass.

Berhtunc durch daz wunder hin nâch geslichen was.
Berchtung for the wonder thither after crept was.

er sprach 'nu muoz ich schouwen, daz ich noch nie gesach:
he spoke 'now must I behold, what I yet never saw:

mich wundert daz die wolve dir tuont kein ungemach.'
me wonders that the wolves to-thee do no harm.'

Diu ougen in ir houpten brunnen alse ein kerzenlieht. 103
The eyes in their heads burned like a candle-light.

der arme was ein tôre und vorht sîne vinde niht.
the poor-one was a fool and feared his foes not.

er gienc ze iegelîchem und greif im mit der hant,
he went to each-one and grasped him with the hand,

wâ er ir liehtiu ougen in ir kopfen vant.
where he their bright eyes in their heads found.

104 Swes er mit in begunde, des muostens im vertragen.
Whatever he with them began, that must-they him bear.

sus gienc er undr in umbe, unz ez begunde tagen.
thus went he among them around, until it began dawn.

swelher sich sîn dâ werte, den sluoc er daz er dâ lac.
whichever himself from-him there defended, him struck he that he there lay.

der wunder lacht dô Berhtunc die naht unz an den tac.
of-the wonder laughed then Berchtung the night until to the day.

105 Mit jâmer sprach der wîse ‘dirst der lîp vil unbenomen.
With sorrow spoke the wise-one ‘to-thee-is the body very untaken.

dir müezen disiu zeichen von gotes güete komen.
to-thee must these signs from God's goodness come.

ich wil daz wol gelouben, und wærst du's tiuvels barn,
I will that well believe, if wert thou the-devil's child,

du wærest von den wolven erstorben und vervarn.
thou wert by the wolves died and perished.

106 Ob ich nu hete den willen daz ich gerne tôte dich,
If I now had the will that I gladly killed thee,

des ist mir niht ze muote, ich fürhte ez riuwe mich.
of-that is to-me not to mind, I fear it rues me.

sît dir die argen wolve fride habent gegeben,
since to-thee the wicked wolves peace have given,

wes solte ab ich dich zîhen, ichn lieze ouch dich nu leben.’
of-what should however I thee accuse, I-not let also thee now live.’

Dô in der morgen lûhte, dô mêrt sich sîn gewin, 107
When to-them the morning shone, then increased itself his gain,
des armen ûf der heide: die wolve liefen hin.
of-the poor-one on the heath: the wolves ran away.
dô sprach der reine guote 'ich wil fristen dînen lîp:
then spoke the pure good-one 'I will preserve thy body:
ich wil durch dich wâgen mîniu kint und ouch mîn wîp.'
I will for thee venture my children and also my woman.'

Er sprach 'ich weste et gerne, von wem du wære behuot. 108
He spoke 'I knew just gladly, by whom thou were guarded.
ich wil dich doch versuochen, als man die kristen tuot'.
I will thee yet test, as one the Christians does'.
er macht von holze ein kriuze und stiez daz in den sant.
he made of wood a cross and thrust that into the sand.
er sprach 'und bist ein tiuvel, sô brichet ez dîn hant.'
he spoke 'if art a devil, so breaks it thy hand.'

Für ez in die erde er daz kriuze stiez. 109
Before it into the earth he the cross thrust.
daz kint was sô gehiure, daz ezz niht stecken liez.
the child was so gentle, that it-it not sticking let.
ez schowetz in manegen enden, vil lange ezz ane sach
it beheld-it at many ends, very long it-it at saw
und hete ez in der hende, daz ez niht zerbrach.
and had it in the hand, that it not broke.

'Ich sihe wol daz der tiuvel an dir unschuldec ist. 110
'I see well that the devil in thee guiltless is.
ich wâne du sîst kristen, dich hât beschaffen Crist.
I think thou be Christian, thee has created Christ.

bist aber du ein heiden, doch wil ichz lâzen sîn.
(if)-art however thou a heathen, yet will I-it let be.

ich wil dich lenger fristen, vil liebez kindelîn.
I will thee longer preserve, very dear little-child.

111 Nu versuonen wir uns hiute, ich was dir gester gram.'
Now reconcile we ourselves today, I was to-thee yesterday hostile.'

daz kint er von der erde ûf sînen arm nam:
the child he from the earth onto his arm took:

'dô du under disen wolven bist beliben gesunt,'
'since thou among these wolves art remained sound,'

er sprach 'du lebest noch lenger' und kustez an den munt.
he spoke 'thou livest yet longer' and kissed-it on the mouth.

112 'Ich wil durch dînen willen mich vertrîben lân,
'I will for thy sake myself drive-out let,

und wil ouch durch dich wâgen allez daz ich hân.
and will also for thee venture all that I have.

ich wil durch dich nu wâgen mîn wîp und mîniu kint,
I will for thee now venture my woman and my children,

die stete und ouch die bürge, die mir undertænic sint.
the cities and also the castles, which to-me subject are.

113 Ich weiz wol daz diz zeichen von guoten dingen vert,
I know well that this sign from good things goes,

daz du under disen wolven den lîp hâst ernert.
that thou among these wolves the body hast saved.

ân dînes vater willen wirst du noch ein künic rîch:
without thy father's will becomest thou yet a king rich:

nu muost ouch immer mêre heizen der Wolf hêr Dietrîch.'
now must also ever more be-called the Wolf sir Dietrich.'

Er truoc in zuo dem rosse, ûf er dô mit im saz. 114
He carried him to the horse, up he then with him sat.

vor sînes hêrren vorhte wurden im diu ougen naz.
for his lord's fear became to-him the eyes wet.

er sprach 'mir möht noch lieber sîn dîn eines tôt,
he spoke 'to-me might yet dearer be thy one death,

dan ich und mîn geslehte lîden immer mêre nôt.'
than I and my lineage suffer ever more distress.'

Sus reit er in den sorgen und fuorte den hêrren sîn 115
Thus rode he in the cares and led the lord his

ze einem wildenære, der hete ein hiuselîn,
to a huntsman, who had a little-house,

sô sîne jegere dicke daz gejeit ze lange triben
when his hunters often the hunt too long drove

und in dem walde benahten, daz si danne dâ beliben.
and in the wood benighted, that they then there remained.

Dô reit er ze dem hûse und klopfete an die want. 116
Then rode he to the house and knocked on the wall.

dô kam der wildenære an die strâze dâ zehant.
then came the huntsman to the road there forthwith.

do enphienc er vlîziclîchen den vil getriuwen degen:
then received he diligently the very faithful thane:

wan er mit freuden dicke was in dem hûse dâ gelegen.
for he with joys often was in the house there lain.

Er sprach zem wildenære 'guot man, wâ ist dîn wîp? 117
He spoke to-the huntsman 'good man, where is thy woman?

nu wil ich versuochen iuwer zweier lîp.
now will I test your two body.

durch iuwer beider triuwe bin ich ze iu geriten:
for your both faith am I to you ridden:

ich wil durch hôhe miete iuch betelîcher dinge biten.
I will for high reward you of-requestable things ask.

118 Den hof hab dir für eigen, dâ du inne bist gewesen,
The farm have for-thyself as own, where thou in art been,

und swaz du von dem walde nutzes maht gelesen;
and whatever thou from the wood of-profit mayst gather;

daz dorf daz hie zuo hœret, daz sol dîn eigen sîn,
the village that here to belongs, that shall thy own be,

daz du mir nu behaltest daz schœne kindelîn.
that thou for-me now keepest the fair little-child.

119 Ob dich die liute frâgen, wâ du habest daz kint genomen,
If thee the people ask, where thou have the child taken,

ich meine ob ez sî funden, des lâ dich niht überkomen
I mean whether it be found, of-that let thyself not overcome

daz ich ez her fuorte; daz solt ouch niemen sagen.
that I it hither led; that shall also no-one say.

du solt des swern tiure, ez hab dîn wîp bî dir getragen.
thou shalt of-it swear dearly, it have thy woman by thee borne.

120 Du solt im ouch mit teilen daz beste daz du hâst.
Thou shalt to-it also with share the best that thou hast.

frouwe, ich wil dirs lônen, daz duz niht verderben lâst.'
lady, I will to-thee-it reward, that thou-it not perish lettest.'

daz kindel sî dô nâmen, dan reit der fürste rîch:
the little-child they then took, thence rode the prince rich:

nu ist ûz der dritten sorgen der Wolf Dietrîch.
now is out-of the third care the Wolf Dietrich.

Wolfdietrich IV

IV · BERCHTUNG ACCUSED

The queen finds her child gone and accuses the king of its death; he answers that the one she had it from has taken it back. Saben persuades the king that Berchtung murdered the boy. Berchtung, lured to court with his men by the promise of a knighting, first has the child's whole story written down. The queen refuses to cry murder against him until the king threatens her life; then the cry is raised in the hall, and Berchtung and his men are seized and thrown into a dungeon.

Als ez mit grôzem jâmer wart der frouwen tac, 121
When it with great sorrow became to-the lady day,

dô greif si an daz bette, dâ daz kint ê vordes lac.
then grasped she at the bed, where the child before earlier lay.

dô lûhte ir mit jâmer der schœne morgen lieht:
then shone to-her with sorrow the fair morning bright:

si suochte ir liebez kindel: dô vant siz leider niht.
she sought her dear little-child: then found she-it alas not.

Si warf an sich ein hemede, ûz dem bette se spranc: 122
She threw on herself a shift, out-of the bed she sprang:

ir kindelîn si suochte under bette und under banc.
her little-child she sought under bed and under bench.

mit jâmer sprach diu frouwe 'owê deich ie wart geborn!
with sorrow spoke the lady 'alas that-I ever was born!

war sol ich gotes arme? ich hân mîn kint verlorn.'
whither shall I God's poor-one? I have my child lost.'

Vor leide dô diu frouwe viel ûf den estrîch. 123
For sorrow then the lady fell onto the floor.

ir klage unde ir weinen was alsô jâmerlîch:
her lament and her weeping was so woeful:

si sprach ‘war sol ich arme? daz ich sô unsælic bin!
she spoke ‘whither shall I poor-one? that I so unblessed am!

waz touc ich nu ze lebene? Tôt, nu nim mich al hin.’
what avail I now to living? Death, now take me all away.’

124 Si schrei mit lûter stimme, daz man ir wart gewar.
She cried with loud voice, that one of-her became aware.

die in der bürge wâren, die liefen alle dar.
who in the castle were, they ran all thither.

die si dâ ane griffen, die kunden ir niht gehaben:
who her there on grasped, they could her not hold:

si viel under si dar nidere, daz man si muoste laben.
she fell among them there down, that one her must revive.

125 ‘Getörste ich dich schelten, vil ungetriuwer man,
‘Dared I thee revile, very unfaithful man,

unreinez küneges künne, war hâst mîn kint getân?
unclean king’s kin, where hast my child put?

ez ist erstorben leider, und ist daz gewesen dîn rât.
it is died alas, and is that been thy counsel.

du valscher ungehiure, wie wol du weist werz hât!’
thou false monstrous-one, how well thou knowest who-it has!’

126 ‘Du zihest mich unrehte’ sprach der künic rîch.
‘Thou accusest me wrongly’ spoke the king rich.

‘solt ich mîn kint ertœten, daz wære unmügelîch.
‘should I my child kill, that were impossible.

wilt du michs niht erlâzen, ich sage dir, warz ist komen:
(if)-wilt thou me-of-it not release, I tell thee, whither-it is come:

von dem duz hâst erworben, der hât ez ouch zuo im genomen.’
from whom thou-it hast gotten, he has it also to him taken.’

‘Iezuo sprichst du rehte’ alsô sprach diu künigîn. 127
‘Now speakest thou rightly’ so spoke the queen.

‘ich hânz von keinem manne erworben: ez was dîn.
‘I have-it from no man gotten: it was thine.

du hâst michs ouch beroubet. daz erbarme got!
thou hast me-of-it also robbed. that pity God!

swenn ez diu welt gefreischet, sô bist du der liute spot,
whenever it the world hears, so art thou the people’s mockery,

Und bist ouch zeinem künege immer mêre enwiht. 128
And art also as-a king ever more naught.

sô man ander künege prîset, sô hât man dich verniht.
when one other kings praises, so has one thee scorned.

und gibe dir des mîn triuwe, daz du mirz hâst benomen:
and give to-thee of-that my faith, that thou from-me-it hast taken:

dar umbe ich an dîn bette wil nimmer mêre komen.’
there for I to thy bed will never more come.’

Dô wart dem künege leide, diu frouwe quelte ir lîp. 129
Then became to-the king loath, the lady tormented her body.

er weste wol ir übel; vil zornic was daz wîp.
he knew well her ill; very wrathful was the woman.

in heimlîchem râte er dô ze Sabenen sprach
in secret counsel he then to Saben spoke

‘nu müeze ez got erbarmen, daz ichs kindes ie gesach!’
‘now may it God pity, that I-of-the child ever saw!’

Mit zorne sprach dô Sabene ‘Berhtunc von Mêrân, 130
With wrath spoke then Saben ‘Berchtung of Meran,

der hât an dem kinde und an dir übel getân,
he has on the child and on thee ill done,

daz er dirz hât ermordet und im genomen daz leben:
that he for-thee-it has murdered and from-it taken the life:
und bist du rehte sinnic, du solt nimmer imz vergeben.'
if art thou rightly sensible, thou shalt never him-it forgive.'

131 'Owê' sprach der Krieche, 'war umbe redest du daz?
'Alas' spoke the Greek, 'where for speakest thou that?
nu erbat ich in des kûme; wurd ich im nu gehaz,
now besought I him of-it hardly; became I to-him now hostile,
daz wære ein grôze untriuwe, und bræhtest duz dar zuo,
that were a great unfaith, if broughtest thou-it there to,
ich hân es lützel êre, swaz ich im dar umbe getuo.'
I have of-it little honor, whatever I to-him there for do.'

132 'Jâ wil ich dich berihten' sprach der ungetriuwe Saben.
'Yea will I thee inform' spoke the unfaithful Saben.
'er möht wol iuwer beider dâ mite geschônet haben.
'he might well you both there with spared have.
er soltz wol hân gefristet doch einen halben tac.
he should-it well have preserved yet a half day.
ze solhen untriuwen niemen wol gesprechen mac.
of such unfaiths no-one well speak may.

133 Ich gibe dir des mîn triuwe, Berhtunc ist dir gram.
I give to-thee of-that my faith, Berchtung is to-thee hostile.
swie sêre er sich des werte, er tæt aber eime alsam.
however sorely he himself of-it defended, he did however to-one likewise.
er ist als ungetriuwe, hêr Huge Dietrîch,
he is so unfaithful, sir Hug Dietrich,
daz er geruowet nimmer, im enwerd dîn künicrîch.'
that he rests never, to-him unless-become thy kingdom.'

Dô sprach der künec mit zorne ‘gip mir dînen rât. 134
Then spoke the king with wrath ‘give me thy counsel.
sît er die untriuwe an mîm kinde erzeiget hât
since he the unfaith on my child shown has
und ir noch gert ze tuonne, wie ich mich gerechen müge,
and of-it yet desires to do, how I myself avenge may,
daz ich in alsô verderbe, daz er niht mêre entüge.’
that I him so ruin, that he not more avails.’

‘Daz wil ich dir râten: send einen boten dar, 135
‘That will I thee counsel: send a messenger thither,
bit in durch dînen willen daz er ze hove var.
bid him for thy sake that he to court go.
enbiut im, du welst machen ritter, dêst mîn rât,
announce to-him, thou wilt make knights, that-is my counsel,
so beginnt er mit im füeren die tiuristen die er hât.’
so begins he with him to-lead the dearest whom he has.’

Der bote ûf Lilienporte ze Berhtunge wart gesant. 136
The messenger onto Lilienporte to Berchtung was sent.
Berhtunc der gelobete die hovevart al zehant.
Berchtung he promised the court-journey all forthwith.
er sprach ‘wir suln schouwen mînes hêrren hôchzît:
he spoke ‘we shall behold my lord’s feast:
wol dan mit mir, junchêrren, ob ir gerne ritter sît!’
well thence with me, young-lords, if you gladly knights be!’

Von maneger hande varwe gap er rôt gel unde blâ. 137
Of many-a kind color gave he red yellow and blue.
hundert swertdegene die wolte er machen dâ.
hundred sword-thanes them would he make there.

ze hove er der getriuwe und ouch der milte hiez,
at court he the faithful and also the bountiful was-called,

dâ von daz er sich niemen dâ überschallen liez.
there from that he himself by-no-one there outshine let.

138 Do gedâhte im der wîse ‘ez mac sô niht gesîn.
Then thought for-himself the wise-one ‘it may so not be.

ob mich beginnet frâgen mîn hêrre umbz kindelîn,
if me begins ask my lord about-the little-child,

sô muoz ich heizen schrîben wâ von ez sî genesen,
so must I bid write where from it be survived,

ob er iht deste holder sînem kinde welle wesen.’
whether he anything the-more favorable to-his child will be.’

139 Do gewan er ein getriuwen, der im daz allez schreip,
Then got he a faithful-one, who for-him that all wrote,

von welher hande sache dem kindez leben beleip,
from which kind cause to-the child-the life remained,

von êrste unz zuo dem lesten allez bediuticlîch,
from first until to the last all clearly,

und daz er wart geheizen der Wolf hêr Dieterîch.
and that he was called the Wolf sir Dietrich.

140 Dô kam ze hove der fürste und wart enphangen wol,
Then came to court the prince and was received well,

als noch ein biderbe dicke von einem künege sol.
as still a worthy-one often by a king shall.

er kam sô werdiclîche daz er schône wart vernomen:
he came so worthily that he fairly was heard-of:

der künic sprach ze Saben ‘Berhtunc der ist komen.
the king spoke to Saben ‘Berchtung he is come.

Nu solt du mir aber râten, wâ von daz geschehe, 141
Now shalt thou me again counsel, where from that happen,

daz wir in sô betriegen, daz man in gevangen sehe.
that we him so deceive, that one him captive see.

Berhtunc hât von liuten ze hove grôzen schal.'
Berchtung has from people at court great noise.'

'deheiner slahte wâfen lâ du in tragen in den sal.
'no kind-of weapon let thou them carry into the hall.

Berhtunc ist sô kreftic, und setzt er sich ze wer, 142
Berchtung is so strong, if sets he himself to defense,

ê dan man in gevâhe, er lestert al dîn her.
before than one him catches, he disgraces all thy host.

und wil dir râten mêre: swenn er ze tische gât,
and will thee counsel more: whenever he to table goes,

daz er sich nider gesetzet und dîn truhsæze vor im stât,
that he himself down sets and thy steward before him stands,

Sô solt du disiu mære sagen der künigîn, 143
So shalt thou these tidings tell the queen,

daz si über Berhtunc schrîe, er ertôt dîn kindelîn.
that she over Berchtung cry, he killed thy little-child.

ir sult bêde wâfen schrîen drîstunt.
you shall both alarm cry three-times.

ir sult ez mit geschreie tuon den liuten allen kunt.
you shall it with crying make to-the people all known.

Sô sols an dîner hende den sal al umbe gân. 144
So shall-she at thy hand the hall all around go.

vor Berhtunges tische hebt daz dritte rüefen an:
before Berchtung's table raise the third calling on:

"wâfen über Berhtunc hât ermort daz kindelîn!"
"alarm over Berchtung has murdered the little-child!"

sehzic halsperge heiz dringen nâch dir în.'
sixty hauberks bid press after thee in.'

145 In den palas wîten sazt man die tavel breit.
In the palace wide set one the table broad.

wîziu tischlachen spæhe wurden dar ûf geleit.
white tablecloths fine were there on laid.

dô hiez man Berhtunge, den fürsten von Mêrân,
then bade one Berchtung, the prince of Meran,

und ouch die hêrren alle in den palas ezzen gân.
and also the lords all into the palace eat go.

146 Dô stuonden kamerære, der maneger umbe sluoc
Then stood chamberlains, of-them many-a-one around struck

und werten daz man'n helden ir swert niht nâch truoc.
and forbade that one-to-the heroes their swords not after carried.

alse iegelîcher gesaz an sîne stat,
as each-one sat at his place,

der künec mit valschem muote Berhtungen sitzen bat.
the king with false spirit Berchtung sit bade.

147 Er sprach 'Berhtunc, sitze, edel fürste, und bîte mîn:
He spoke 'Berchtung, sit, noble prince, and wait for-me:

sô wil ich zuo dir setzen dîn frowen, die künigîn.'
so will I to thee set thy lady, the queen.'

Berhtunc ims wol dancte; der künec der gie zehant
Berchtung him-for-it well thanked; the king he went forthwith

in eine kemenâten, dâ er die küniginne vant.
into a chamber, where he the queen found.

Er sprach ‘ir sult iuch rechen, vil edeliu künigîn. 148
He spoke ‘you shall yourselves avenge, very noble queen.

ich wil dich ûf den wîsen, der ermort dîn kindelîn.’
I will thee onto him show, who murdered thy little-child.’

mit jâmer sprach diu frouwe ‘jâ, hêrre, wer ist daz?
with sorrow spoke the lady ‘yea, lord, who is that?

zwâr dem sul wir beide mit willen tragen haz.
truly to-him shall we both with will bear hate.

Maht du an die wârheit bringen, wer mir hât daz leit getân? 149
Mayst thou to the truth bring, who to-me has the sorrow done?

‘ich wil iu in nennen, ez ist Berhtunc von Mêrân.
‘I will to-you him name, it is Berchtung of Meran.

den sul wir hiute vâhen und benemen dar umbe den lîp.’
him shall we today catch and take there for the life.’

‘du tuost im vil unrehte’ sprach daz tugenthafte wîp.
‘thou dost to-him very wrong’ spoke the virtuous woman.

‘Si habent dîner êren wênic danne gedâht, 150
‘They have of-thy honors little then thought,

die dich mit lügemæren habent ûf den fürsten brâht.
who thee with lying-tales have onto the prince brought.

du volgest allez Sabenen, der wirt iu nimmer holt.
thou followest all Saben, he becomes to-you never favorable.

Berhtungen den getriuwen du nihtes zîhen solt.
Berchtung the faithful thou of-nothing accuse shalt.

Weist du waz dir Berhtunc, der fürste von Mêrân, 151
Knowest thou what to-thee Berchtung, the prince of Meran,

êren unde guotes und vil liebes hât getân?
of-honors and of-goods and very-much dear has done?

ob er niht mêre hête, wan daz er mich dir gap,
if he not more had, than that he me to-thee gave,

du solts im immer danken unz an dîn selbes grap.
thou shouldst-it to-him ever thank until to thy own grave.

152 In mîne kemenâten het in sîn zuht gewent.
Into my chamber had him his courtesy accustomed.

Botelunge mînem bruoder wart ich von im entspent.
from-Botelung my brother was I by him enticed.

do erwarp er mich im selben, sich, und gap mich dir dô:
then won he me for-him self, see, and gave me to-thee then:

wilt du des niht gedenken, wie tuost du danne sô,
(if)-wilt thou of-that not think, how dost thou then so,

153 Swenn du des Berhtungen niht geniezen lâst,
Whenever thou of-that Berchtung not profit lettest,

daz du lant und bürge und dîn êre von im hâst.
that thou land and castles and thy honor from him hast.

swenn dir Berhtunc aleine mit triuwen abe gât,
whenever to-thee Berchtung alone with faith off goes,

sô wizz daz al dîn êre gar ein ende hât.'
so know that all thy honor wholly an end has.'

154 Dô sprach der künec mit zorne 'er giltet disen mort,
Then spoke the king with wrath 'he pays this murder,

swie wol du habest gesprochen hiut disen tac sîn wort.
however well thou have spoken today this day his word.

du muost doch über in schrîen: er nam dir dîn kindelîn.'
thou must yet over him cry: he took from-thee thy little-child.'

'nein ich ûf mîne triuwe' alsô sprach diu künigîn.
'no I on my faith' so spoke the queen.

‘Jâ wil ich im niht râten an sîn êr noch an sîn leben. 155
‘Yea will I him not counsel against his honor nor against his life.

bist an dem kinde schuldic, daz wil ich dir vergeben,
(if)-art in the child guilty, that will I thee forgive,

durch daz ez Berhtunge an sîn êre niht engê:
for that it to-Berchtung at his honor not go:

ich wil an dînem bette dar umbe slâfen alse ê.’
I will at thy bed there for sleep as before.’

Dô sprach der künic rîche ‘des maht du mir niht versagen. 156
Then spoke the king rich ‘that mayst thou me not refuse.

ich hôrt dich sô jæmerlîche dîn liebez kindel klagen:
I heard thee so woefully thy dear little-child lament:

wilt du niht über in schrîen, ich nime dir dînen lîp.’
(if)-wilt thou not over him cry, I take from-thee thy life.’

‘ich riefe ê fünfstunt wâfen’ sprach daz schœne wîp.
‘I called rather five-times alarm’ spoke the fair woman.

Dô sprach der künec zer frouwen ‘nu bereitet iuch dar zuo.’ 157
Then spoke the king to-the lady ‘now prepare yourself there to.’

‘nu sol daz got wol wizzen, daz ichz vil ungerne tuo.’
‘now shall that God well know, that I-it very unwillingly do.’

do zewarf si ir gebende und zefuorte ouch ir hâr:
then tore she her headdress and tousled also her hair:

von klegelîcher swære wart si übele gevar.
from lamentable heaviness became she ill colored.

Der künec schrei dô vil lûte und mit im diu künigîn, 158
The king cried then very loudly and with him the queen,

dô si zuo des sales porte mitalle drungen în,
when they to the hall’s door all-together pressed in,

‘wâfen über Berhtunc hât ermordet unser kint!
‘alarm over Berchtung has murdered our child!

daz klage wir gote von himele und allen den die hinnen sint.’
that lament we to-God of heaven and to-all those who herein are.’

159 Daz dritte rüefen lûte vor Berhtunge geschach.
The third calling loudly before Berchtung happened.

die halsperge dringen man nâch dem künege sach.
the hauberks press one after the king saw.

dô saz ir iegelîcher und sach den andern an:
then sat of-them each-one and looked the other at:

der künec hiez Berhtunc vâhen und alle sîne man.
the king bade Berchtung catch and all his men.

160 Dô man Berhtungen in sînen zühten vie,
When one Berchtung in his courtesies caught,

zehant sprach der guote ‘nu bin ich übele hie.
forthwith spoke the good-one ‘now am I ill here.

ich wânde daz mir dienest und triuwe solte fromen:
I thought that to-me service and faith should profit:

nu enmac mir hie dewederez ze deheinen staten komen.
now may to-me here neither to any advantage come.

161 Ich muoz durch triuwe lîden, swaz ze liden mir geschiht.
I must for faith suffer, whatever to suffer to-me happens.

swie man die an mir brichet, so enbriche ich ir doch niht.
however one it on me breaks, so break I it yet not.

nu wænent alle liute, ich hab mînen hêrrn erslagen:
now think all people, I have my lord slain:

west ich von im iht guotes, des wolt ich iu doch niht sagen.’
knew I of him anything good, that would I to-you yet not tell.’

Berhtungen den getriuwen man in ein kerker stiez. 162
Berchtung the faithful one into a dungeon thrust.

der sînen liute deheinen man ungevangen liez.
of his people none one uncaptured let.

alrêrst het Berhtunc sorge durch den lieben hêrren sîn,
first-of-all had Berchtung care for the dear lord his,

und lebte noch ûf Garte diu arme künigîn.
and lived still on Garda the poor queen.

Wolfdietrich V

V · THE LETTER READ

Berchtung lies captive four months, and the king calls a court to judge him with Saben as judge, forbidding anyone to speak for him. Baltram of Bulgaria arrives armed, cuts his bonds, and declares that Berchtung will fight any accuser, the king or Saben. Saben will not fight, and the king, unable to prove the charge, sets Berchtung free. Berchtung has given the queen a letter, and when the frightened priests will not read it, a chaplain, threatened by the queen, reads it out: the child is alive and was spared by the wolves. The king owns his guilt, says Saben bade it, and renounces him.

Berhtunc dô gevangen mit sînen helden lac. 163
Berchtung then captive with his heroes lay.

diu reine küniginne ir aller schône phlac.
the pure queen of-them all fairly took-care.

âne des küneges willen hetens alles des genuoc,
without the king's will had-they of-all of-that enough,

des man ûf ir tavele ezzen oder trinken truoc.
of-what one on her table to-eat or to-drink carried.

164 Sus lâgen si gevangen vier mânôt oder mê.
Thus lay they captive four months or more.

Berhtungen tet der kumber durch sîne triuwe wê.
to-Berchtung did the trouble for his faith woe.

der künic hiez gebieten durch elliu sîniu lant,
the king bade proclaim through all his lands,

daz si ze hove kæmen, den gerihte wære erkant,
that they to court came, to-whom judgment were known,

165 Hin ze Kunstenopele für die burc ûf den plân;
Thither to Constantinople before the castle onto the plain;

dâ wolte er heizen rihten über Berhtunc von Mêrân.
there would he bid judge over Berchtung of Meran.

er verbôt den hêrren allen daz si kæmen gar,
he forbade the lords all that they came wholly,

noch dehein gewæfen bræhten mit in dar.
nor any weapons brought with them thither.

166 Den künic muostens fürhten, wan er in gewaltic was.
The king must-they fear, for he over-them mighty was.

in sîdîner wæte erbeiztens ûf daz gras.
in silken raiment dismounted-they onto the grass.

dô fuorte ouch niemen ringe wan der küene Baltram,
then wore also no-one rings but the bold Baltram,

Berhtunges swâger, dem was der künic gram.
Berchtung's brother-in-law, to-him was the king hostile.

167 Der was ouch dâ verholne, daz in dâ niemen sach.
He was also there secretly, that him there no-one saw.

ze liebe und ze hilfe ez Berhtunge geschach.
for love and for help it to-Berchtung happened.

der künec erbarmiclîche im dô rihten bat.
the king pitiably him then judge bade.
den ungetriuwen Saben sazt der künec an sîne stat.
the unfaithful Saben set the king at his place.

Der saz ûf sînem stuole, die krône er im verlêch. 168
He sat on his throne, the crown he to-him lent.
sînes künicrîches er sich durch in verzêch.
of-his kingdom he himself for him renounced.
der vil ungetriuwe Saben winkt im mit der hende dar:
the very unfaithful Saben beckons to-him with the hand thither:
er rûnte im in sîn ôre 'nu nim vil rehte war:
he whispered to-him into his ear 'now take very rightly heed:

Læst du im vorsprechen, sô mac er vil wol genesen. 169
(If)-lettest thou for-him advocate, so may he very well survive.
er hât im selbe schiere die besten ûz gelesen.'
he has for-himself self soon the best out chosen.'
der künic dô die sînen bat und ouch gebôt,
the king then the his-own bade and also commanded,
daz nieman mit worten hulfe Berhtungen ûz der nôt.
that no-one with words helped Berchtung out-of the distress.

Dô sâzens ame gerihte, die man welte dâ zer kür. 170
Then sat-they at-the court, whom one chose there for-the election.
Saben gebôt dem künege daz er Berhtunc bræhte für
Saben commanded the king that he Berchtung brought forth
mit ruofen und mit geschreie, als er ê het getân,
with calling and with crying, as he before had done,
und daz er die küniginne ouch hieze mit im gân.
and that he the queen also bade with him go.

171 Der künec sich niht ensûmte: ûf sîn burc er dô getrat,
The king himself not delayed: onto his castle he then stepped,

die huotære ûf Kunstenobele er vlîziclîchen bat
the guards on Constantinople he diligently bade

daz si ze liehte bræhten den gevangen man,
that they to light brought the captive man,

und in gebunden bræhten für sîn gerihte dan.
and him bound brought before his court thence.

172 Dô sprach zuo dem künege diu edel künigîn
Then spoke to the king the noble queen

'nu lâz in noch geniezen der guoten triuwe sîn.
'now let him yet profit by-the good faith his.

er hât dir wol gedienet, des solt in geniezen lân:
he has thee well served, of-that shalt him profit let:

lâ mich Berhtunge sprechen, ich wil eine zuo im gân.'
let me with-Berchtung speak, I will alone to him go.'

173 Dô sprach der künec mit zorne 'frouwe, ich gan ius wol.'
Then spoke the king with wrath 'lady, I grant you-it well.'

dô gienc diu küniginne zuo im über daz hol.
then went the queen to him over the hole.

dô brâhte man Berhtungen ûz der vinster an daz lieht:
then brought one Berchtung out-of the darkness to the light:

diu frouwe gruozte in schône: dô antwurt er ir aber dâ niht.
the lady greeted him fairly: then answered he her however there not.

174 'Wilt du mir niht danken?' alsô sprach diu künigîn.
'Wilt thou me not thank?' so spoke the queen.

'wes möhte mich gelusten, vil liebiu frouwe mîn?
'of-what might me please, very dear lady mine?

het ich die welt versenket, ich wære genuoc beschrît.
had I the world sunk, I were enough decried.
nu sihe ich wol, frouwe, daz ir ungetriuwe sît.'
now see I well, lady, that you unfaithful be.'

'Jâ solt du mirz niht verwîzen, jâ tete ichz âne danc. 175
'Yea shalt thou me-it not blame, yea did I-it without consent.
dir ist leider niht gewizzen, daz michs dîn herre betwanc.
to-thee is alas not known, that me-to-it thy lord constrained.
swaz ich habe begangen, daz solt du mir vergeben
whatever I have committed, that shalt thou me forgive
und sage mir diu mære, ob daz kint habe sîn leben.'
and tell me the tidings, whether the child have its life.'

Dô kêrte er sich hin umbe und enbôt ir kleinen gruoz. 176
Then turned he himself thither about and offered her little greeting.
'hâst du sîn êre, ich valle dir an dînen fuoz.'
'(if)-hast thou of-it honor, I fall to-thee at thy foot.'
dô wolte zuo der erde diu frouwe sîn gesigen:
then would to the earth the lady be sunk:
lachende sprach der alte 'ich lâze iuch dâ niht ligen.
laughing spoke the old-one 'I let you there not lie.

Seht waz ir mir dar umbe ze einer miete gebet: 177
See what you me there for as a reward give:
ich gibe iu des mîn triuwe, daz iuwer kint noch lebet.'
I give to-you of-that my faith, that your child still lives.'
si halsete unde kusten mê danne tûsent stunt:
she embraced and kissed-him more than thousand times:
si sprach 'ûf dîne triuwe, und ist er aber noch gesunt?'
she spoke 'on thy faith, and is he however still sound?'

178 ‘Ir klaget dan ander swære, ir sult daz kint niht klagen.
‘You lament then other heaviness, you shall the child not lament.
frouwe, ich liez ez lebendic, ir sultz ab niemen sagen.
lady, I left it living, you shall-it however to-no-one say.
in mîner vancnüsse ich deste senfter slief,
in my captivity I the-more gently slept,
daz ich in lebendic weste: nu nemet hin disen brief.
that I him living knew: now take away this letter.

179 Den sult ir mir behalten, ich sül sterben oder genesen.
That shall you for-me keep, I shall die or survive.
swenn ich iuch iuwer triuwe ermane, sô heizt in lesen.’
whenever I you of-your faith remind, so bid it read.’
der künec rief lûte ‘ist er noch niht ûz der steinwant?’
the king called loudly ‘is he yet not out-of the rock-wall?’
die hende man im vaste hinder sînen rucken bant.
the hands one to-him fast behind his back bound.

180 Er sprach ‘sol man mich binden als ein übersagten diep?
He spoke ‘shall one me bind as a convicted thief?
swie übele man mich handelt, daz ist mînem hêrren liep.
however ill one me handles, that is to-my lord dear.
nu engilte ich anders niht wan der triuwen mîn.
now pay I otherwise nothing but for-the faith mine.
swaz ich begie ie übeles, daz was in dem dienste sîn.’
whatever I committed ever of-ill, that was in the service his.’

181 Man fuorte für gerihte den fürsten von Mêrân.
One led before court the prince of Meran.
dô muoste er für Saben mit gebunden handen stân.
then must he before Saben with bound hands stand.

si schriwen als si vor tâten, umbe ir kindelîn,
they cried as they before did, about their little-child,

und swaz vor hete geweinet, daz lacht dar nâch diu künigîn.
and whatever before had wept, that laughed there after the queen.

Die frouwen hiez man sitzen. dô muoste der künic klagen 182
The ladies bade one sit. then must the king accuse

über den getriuwen, er het im sîn kint erslagen.
over the faithful-one, he had to-him his child slain.

dô sprach der ungetriuwe, des küneges vormunt:
then spoke the unfaithful, the king's deputy:

'lougenst oder gihstu, Berhtunc? daz tuo uns nu kunt.'
'deniest or avowest-thou, Berchtung? that make to-us now known.'

Mit witzen sprach der alte 'owê, geselle Saben, 183
With wits spoke the old-one 'alas, companion Saben,

ir sît ze künege worden, ir sult mîn gnâde haben.
you are to king become, you shall my grace have.

des mich mîn hêrre zîhet, dâ bin ich unschuldec an.
of-what me my lord accuses, there am I guiltless of.

ich getar gereden niht mêre, nu gebt mir einen man,
I dare speak not more, now give me a man,

Der mit sînen worten si hiut mîn frideschilt.' 184
Who with his words be today my peace-shield.'

dô sprach aber Sabene 'sô nim swen du nu wilt.'
then spoke again Saben 'so take whomever thou now wilt.'

vil wê tet sînem herzen, daz die hende heten bant.
very woe did to-his heart, that the hands had bonds.

dô suochte er undr in allen: deheinen man er vant,
then sought he among them all: no man he found,

185 Der sîn wort torste gesprechen; nieman er brâhte dar.
Who his word dared speak; no-one he brought thither.

si sprâchen heimlîchen 'ez ist uns verboten gar.'
they spoke secretly 'it is to-us forbidden wholly.'

dô stuont er vor gerihte als ein vil ellender man:
then stood he before court as a very forsaken man:

er sprach 'swie wol ich selbe mîn wort gesprechen kan,
he spoke 'however well I self my word speak can,

186 Sô wil ez niemen hœren. wâfen über die friunde mîn,
So will it no-one hear. alarm over the friends mine,

daz si mich alters eine in disen nœten lâzen sîn!'
that they me all alone in these distresses let be!'

dô kam ouch zuo der sprâche hêr Baltram gerant:
then came also to the speaking sir Baltram running:

im volgten hundert ritter, die fuorten alle stahelgewant.
him followed hundred knights, they wore all steel-gear.

187 Mit hundert halsbergen erbeizte er ûf daz gras.
With hundred hauberks dismounted he onto the grass.

der künec sach im vil leide, daz er alsô wol dâ was.
the king saw him very loath, that he so well there was.

sîn halsberc im vor zorne an sînem lîbe erklanc:
his hauberk to-him for wrath on his body rang:

durch die rote für gerihte er zuo Berhtungen dranc.
through the troop before court he to Berchtung pressed.

188 'Bist du verteilet iezuo, Berhtunc von Mêrân?'
'Art thou condemned now, Berchtung of Meran?'

'nein, ich stân hie gebunden als ein helfelôser man.'
'no, I stand here bound as a helpless man.'

er sprach ‘bist du gebunden, und hâst mir daz verholn,
he spoke ‘(if)-art thou bound, and hast from-me that concealed,

gelîche einem diebe, wâ ist daz du hâst verstoln?’
like a thief, where is that thou hast stolen?’

Dô sprach der vil getriuwe ‘si sagent ûf mich mort. 189
Then spoke the very faithful ‘they say on me murder.

des entredete ich mich vil gerne, niemen sprechen wil mîn wort.’
of-that clear I myself very gladly, no-one speak will my word.’

‘owê’ sprach der küene, ‘war zuo sol fürsten lant?’
‘alas’ spoke the bold-one, ‘where to shall princes’ land?’

Baltram sneit mit zorne Berhtungen abe diu bant.
Baltram cut with wrath from-Berchtung off the bonds.

Dô rief von Bulgerîe der küene Baltram 190
Then called of Bulgaria the bold Baltram

‘jâ habent des edele fürsten immer laster unde scham,
‘yea have of-that noble princes ever disgrace and shame,

daz si verderben lâzen einen fürsten guot.
that they ruin let a prince good.

und tuot man im daz hiute, daz man iu morgen tuot.’
if does one to-him that today, what one to-you tomorrow does.’

Daz im iemen helfen wolte, des wurdens alle frô. 191
That him anyone help would, of-that became-they all glad.

si gestuonden alle gelîche Baltramen dô.
they stood-by all alike Baltram then.

er sprach ‘swerz gerne tæte, man möht wol ûf mich sagen
he spoke ‘whoever-it gladly did, one might well on me say

daz ich alle künege und keiser hete erslagen.’
that I all kings and emperors had slain.’

192 Dô sprach vil zorniclîche der küene Baltram
Then spoke very wrathfully the bold Baltram

'swaz küniges gerihtes ich aber ie vernam,
'whatever of-king's judgment I however ever heard,

sô dûht mich zwâr kein teidinc alse ungereht.
so seemed to-me truly no court-day so unjust.

hêr künec, des solte iu hengen weder ritter noch der kneht,
sir king, that should you allow neither knight nor the servant,

193 Daz ir Saben volget, einem ungetriuwen man,
That you Saben follow, an unfaithful man,

der bî Botelunge fürsten ambet nie gewan.
who by Botelung prince's office never got.

jâ wart er zen Hiunen nie grâven genôz.
yea was he among-the Huns never of-a-count peer.

daz ir in hie über uns ziehet, daz ist ein laster grôz.
that you him here over us raise, that is a disgrace great.

194 Zwâre ir müezet hœren mînes swâgers wort:
Truly you must hear my brother-in-law's word:

mit swerte muoz er rechen daz ir in zîhet mort.
with sword must he avenge that you him accuse of-murder.

daz müezt ûf in erziugen oder gên im behaben.
that must on him prove or against him maintain.

nu bestêt er iuwer einen, ir sît ez oder Saben.
now attacks he of-you one, you be it or Saben.

Mit swerte und ouch mit schilte wil er sich des mordes wern: 195
With sword and also with shield will he himself of-the murder defend:

swer in des hiute zîhet, ûf des hals wil er daz bern
whoever him of-that today accuses, on his neck will he that prove

daz er des nie gedâhte, oder er wirt schuldic gar.'
that he of-it never thought, or he becomes guilty wholly.'

die rîchen zuo den armen sprâchen 'er hât wâr.'
the rich to the poor spoke 'he has true.'

Der künic sprach heimlîchen 'wiltu vehten mit im, Saben?' 196
The king spoke secretly 'wilt-thou fight with him, Saben?'

'nein, hêrre, dez kint ist iuwer, ir sultz ûf in behaben.'
'no, lord, the child is yours, you shall-it on him maintain.'

dô sprach der künec mit zorne 'nu sint die ræte enwiht.
then spoke the king with wrath 'now are the counsels naught.

daz kint hiez ich in tœten: ich viht mit im dar umbe niht.'
the child bade I him kill: I fight with him there for not.'

Dô sprach aber Saben 'sô sult irn der rede begeben. 197
Then spoke again Saben 'so shall you-him of-the speech give-up.

wir kunnen mit keinem rehte dem manne benemen daz leben.
we can with no right from-the man take the life.

du sprichst, du welst in lâzen gar unschuldic sîn,
thou speakest, thou wilt him let wholly guiltless be,

ob er halt hete ermordet daz kleine kindelîn.'
if he even had murdered the small little-child.'

Dô sprach der künec mit witzen 'Berhtunc, mir ist vil leit, 198
Then spoke the king with wits 'Berchtung, to-me is very loath,

daz ich dir hân geholfen in dise arbeit.
that I to-thee have helped into this toil.

ich enweiz, hâst du schulde: ich wil dich ledec lân sîn.
I not-know, hast thou guilt: I will thee free let be.

swaz ich nu drumbe tæte, sô wær doch vlorn daz kindelîn.'
whatever I now for-it did, so were yet lost the little-child.'

199 Berhtunc rief vil lûte 'nu sî des got gelobt,
Berchtung called very loudly 'now be of-that God praised,

hêr künec, daz irs gedenket und niht immer tobt!
sir king, that you-it remember and not ever rage!

unverdientez laster tuot den getriuwen wê.
undeserved disgrace does the faithful woe.

frou künegîn, nu heizt sehen waz an iuwerm brieve stê.'
lady queen, now bid see what on your letter stand.'

200 Dô suochts in in dem stûchen. dô si den brief vant,
Then sought-she it in the sleeve. then she the letter found,

einem kappelâne gap si'n in die hant.
to-a chaplain gave she-it into the hand.

als er den brief schouwete und vor ir ûf gebrach,
as he the letter beheld and before her up broke,

der frouwen gap ern widere, dô er die schrift ersach.
to-the lady gave he-it back, when he the writing saw.

201 Diu frouwe sprach mit zorne 'ir sît ein müelîch man.
The lady spoke with wrath 'you are a troublesome man.

habt ir den brief geschouwet, sagt uns waz stêt dar an.'
(if)-have you the letter beheld, tell us what stands there on.'

'sô wunderlîche ræte dar ane mîn ouge siht:
'so wondrous counsels there on my eye sees:

tuot swaz ir wellet, frouwe, ich lîse iu dise brieve niht.'
do whatever you will, lady, I read to-you this letter not.'

Swaz pfaffen si in dô zeiget, die tâten alle sam, 202
Whatever priests she to-them then showed, they did all likewise,

und wurden in ir herzen dem künege drumbe gram.
and became in their heart to-the king for-it hostile.

si torsten vor dem künege des brieves niht gelesen.
they dared before the king the letter not read.

si gedâhten 'er ist zornic und læt uns niht genesen.'
they thought 'he is wrathful and lets us not survive.'

Einem kappelâne gap diu frouwe den brief dar. 203
To-a chaplain gave the lady the letter there.

si sprach 'nu nemet des brieves durch mînen willen war.'
she spoke 'now take of-the letter for my sake heed.'

si sprach 'ir sult mir sitzen hie vil nâhen bî.
she spoke 'you shall to-me sit here very near by.

hêr pfafe, nu saget mir rehte waz dar ane geschriben sî.
sir priest, now tell me rightly what there on written be.

Und saget ir mir niht rehte waz an dem brieve stê, 204
If tell you me not rightly what on the letter stand,

ich nim iu iuwer pfarre und tuo iu dar zuo vil wê.
I take from-you your parish and do to-you there to very woe.

und sult in sagen sô lûte, daz man in wol verneme,
and shall it say so loudly, that one it well hear,

hab iemen misserâten, daz er sich hiute scheme.'
(if)-has anyone miscounseled, that he himself today be-ashamed.'

Dô sprach der pfaffe lûte 'an disem brieve stât geschriben 205
Then spoke the priest loudly 'on this letter stands written

daz unser junchêrre noch lebendic ist belîben.
that our young-lord still living is remained.

ez genas ab nie sô kûme ein kleinez kindelîn.'
it survived however never so hardly a small little-child.'

'daz sint vil guotiu mære' sprach aber diu künigîn.
'those are very good tidings' spoke again the queen.

206 'Frouwe, ez ist von dem künege unserm hêrren komen,
'Lady, it is from the king our lord come,

daz dem kleinen kinde der lîp solt sîn benomen.
that from-the small child the life should be taken.

der gebôt ez Berhtunge, daz er im neme den lîp,
he commanded it to-Berchtung, that he from-it take the life,

od er hieng vor Lilienporte sîn kint und ouch sîn wîp.
or he hanged before Lilienporte his children and also his woman.

207 Mîn hêrre ûz sînem bette daz kindelîn verstal
My lord out-of his bed the little-child stole

und gap ez Berhtunge, der truoc ez durch den sal.
and gave it to-Berchtung, he carried it through the hall.

dô fuorte erz ûz der bürge. do ez ertôt solt haben sîn hant,
then led he-it out-of the castle. when it killed should have his hand,

do enmohte er vor der triuwe, die er in sîm herzen vant.
then not-might he for the faith, which he in his heart found.

208 Er fuorte ez zeinem brunnen, der stuont rôsen vol,
He led it to-a spring, it stood of-roses full,

daz ez sich hete ertrenket; daz bewarte ez aber vil wol.
that it itself had drowned; that guarded it however very well.

het ez gesuocht die rôsen, ez wære gevallen drîn.
had it sought the roses, it were fallen therein.

dô huop sich von dem brunnen daz kleine kindelîn.
then raised itself from the spring the small little-child.

Ungâz und ungetrunken saz ez eine einen tac 209
Uneaten and undrunk sat it alone a day

in regen und in winte, daz sîn leider niemen phlac.
in rain and in wind, that of-it alas no-one took-care.

ân aller slahte hilfe saz ez als ein weiselîn.'
without any kind-of help sat it as a little-orphan.'

'des müeze ez got ergetzen' sprach diu künigîn.
'for-that may it God requite' spoke the queen.

'Dô saz ez undern wolven, frouwe, ein lange naht. 210
'Then sat it among-the wolves, lady, a long night.

wolt got deheines tôdes dô an im hân gedâht,
would God of-any death then on it have thought,

sô wære ez dâ erstorben: die wolve tâten im niht.
so were it there died: the wolves did to-it nothing.

swie kûme ez sich gefüege, ez hât noch an freuden pfliht.
however hardly it itself befit, it has yet in joys share.

Berhtunc stuont sô nâhen, daz er diu wunder sach, 211
Berchtung stood so near, that he the wonders saw,

daz alsô menegiu zeichen an dem kinde geschach.
that so many signs on the child happened.

dô huop er von der erde daz kleine kindelîn
then raised he from the earth the small little-child

und kuste ouch vil dicke den lieben hêrren sîn.
and kissed also very often the dear lord his.

Er sprach "swie mir gelinge, dir ist der lîp ernert. 212
He spoke "however to-me succeeds, to-thee is the body saved.

ich weiz wol daz diz zeichen von guoten dingen vert.
I know well that this sign from good things goes.

du erstirbest nimmer, du gewinnst ein künicrîch."
thou diest never, thou winnest a kingdom."

dâ von wart er geheizen der Wolf hêr Dieterîch.'
there from was he called the Wolf sir Dietrich.'

213 Dô wart under der krône Saben alsô heiz,
Then became under the crown Saben so hot,

daz im durch die stirne vor vorhte dranc der sweiz.
that to-him through the forehead for fear pressed the sweat.

er wære michels gerner alswar gewesen:
he were much more-gladly anywhere-else been:

'frowe, bî iuwern hulden, der brief ist gar gelesen.'
'lady, by your favors, the letter is wholly read.'

214 Dô sprach der künec mit witzen ze Berhtunge von Mêrân
Then spoke the king with wits to Berchtung of Meran

'ich vienc dich ze unrehte, ich bin selbe schuldic dran.
'I caught thee to wrong, I am self guilty of-it.

ich bin selbe schuldic an mînem lieben sun.
I am self guilty on my dear son.

nu rîch dich swie du wellest: mich hiez ez Saben tuon.
now avenge thyself however thou wilt: me bade it Saben do.

215 'Solt ich in diser welte leben tûsent jâr,
'Should I in this world live thousand years,

sô wolte ich mich an Saben niht lâzen umbe ein hâr.
so would I myself on Saben not leave by a hair.

er kumt ouch nimmer mêre an die hulde mîn.'
he comes also never more to the favor mine.'

nu ist Berhtunc erlœset ûz der grôzen sorge sîn.
now is Berchtung released out-of the great care his.

Wolfdietrich VI

VI · SABEN SPARED

The king bids Berchtung avenge himself on Saben, and the queen wants him put to death; led out to the gallows with no one to plead for him, Saben begs for his life, Berchtung wins his pardon, and Saben forswears the land and rides to the Huns. Berchtung brings Wolfdietrich to court among his sixteen sons. The king, sworn at the boy's mother's word to give him no share, keeps armor, a sword, and a horse for him, bids Berchtung help him win his third part from his brothers, and commends the queen and his estate to Berchtung's faith.

Dô sprach der künec mit zorne 'nu rîch dich an dem man 216
Then spoke the king with wrath 'now avenge thyself on the man

und lâz in des engelten, des er uns hât getân.
and let him of-it pay, what he to-us has done.

er hete drîe tôde ûf dînen lîp bereit.
he had three deaths for thy body prepared.

ez wirt ouch im von rehte, daz er dir ûf hete geleit.'
it becomes also to-him by right, what he to-thee on had laid.'

'Du solt dich an im rechen' sprach diu künigîn. 217
'Thou shalt thyself on him avenge' spoke the queen.

'jâ gruop er dir die gruoben, dâ muoz er selbe in,
'yea dug he for-thee the pit, there must he self in,

radebrechen oder hâhen oder brennen ûf der hurt:
break-on-the-wheel or hang or burn on the hurdle:

zuo der marter alle wolt er dich hân gefuort.'
to the tortures all would he thee have led.'

218 Berhtunc nam dô Saben und fuorte in von dan.
Berchtung took then Saben and led him from thence.

niuwan durch sîne schœne beweinte in manic man.
only for his beauty bewept him many-a man.

dô wiste er im den galgen, die hurt und ouch daz rat:
then showed he to-him the gallows, the hurdle and also the wheel:

er was als ungetriuwe, daz nieman umb in dô bat.
he was so unfaithful, that no-one for him then asked.

219 Dô sprach Berhtunc der guote 'wie nu, geselle Saben?
Then spoke Berchtung the good 'how now, companion Saben?

nu muost du in die gruobe, die du mir hâst gegraben.
now must thou into the pit, which thou for-me hast dug.

dar in hât dich gevellet dîn ungetriuwer site.
there into has thee felled thy unfaithful manner.

du hâst des niht gedienet, daz iemen umb dich bite.'
thou hast of-that not deserved, that anyone for thee ask.'

220 Dô sprach der ungetriuwe 'ich enruoch waz mir geschiht,
Then spoke the unfaithful-one 'I not-care what to-me happens,

wilt du dich erbarmen über mîn leben niht.
(if)-wilt thou thyself pity over my life not.

bist aber du getriuwe, so erbarmest lîhte dich:
(if)-art however thou faithful, so pitiest perhaps thyself:

geselle unde hêrre, erbarm dich über mich.'
companion and lord, pity thyself over me.'

221 'Wir sîn von kindes jugende gesellen her gewesen,
'We are from child's youth companions hither been,

und gunte es mir mîn hêrre, ich liez dich gerne genesen'
if granted it to-me my lord, I let thee gladly survive'

alsô sprach der vil getriuwe Berhtunc von Mêrân,
so spoke the very faithful Berchtung of Meran,

'und wolte ouch verkiesen, daz du mir hâst getân.'
'and would also pardon, what thou to-me hast done.'

Dô sprach aber Saben 'gesell, wilt du mich nern 222
Then spoke again Saben 'companion, (if)-wilt thou me save

durch geselliclîche triuwe, lâz dir daz lant verswern,
for companionly faith, let to-thee the land forswear,

nimmer dar ze komene, die wîle und du lebest,
never thither to come, the while and thou livest,

daz du durch dîne triuwe mir disen mort vergebest.
that thou for thy faith to-me this murder forgivest.

Und tuoz durch dîne güete und erner mir mînen lîp. 223
And do-it for thy goodness and save for-me my life.

habe dir mîn fürsten ambet, lâ mich und ouch mîn wîp
have for-thyself my prince's office, let me and also my woman

von allem mînem erbe mit einem stabe gân.'
from all my inheritance with a staff go.'

'jâ hât mir' sprach der guote 'diu frouwe niht getân.'
'yea has to-me' spoke the good-one 'the lady nothing done.'

Dô nam er sîn gesellen und fuorte in bî der hant, 224
Then took he his companion and led him by the hand,

dâ er den künic sitzent und ander fürsten vant.
where he the king sitting and other princes found.

er sprach zuo dem künege 'lâ mîn gesellen leben.
he spoke to the king 'let my companion live.

ich hân mînen zorn lâzen, nu solt du im ouch vergeben.'
I have my wrath left, now shalt thou to-him also forgive.'

225 Dô sprach der künec mit zorne ‘ich enruoch waz du’m getuost.
Then spoke the king with wrath ‘I not-care what thou-to-him dost.

ich sag dir daz du dich immer vor im hüeten muost.
I tell thee that thou thyself ever before him guard must.

swaz du in nu langer fristest, daz ist ûf den schaden dîn.’
whatever thou him now longer preservest, that is to the harm thine.’

‘er muoz entriuwen hangen’ sô sprach diu künigîn.
‘he must in-faith hang’ so spoke the queen.

226 Dô sprach Berhtunc mit zühten ‘frowe, lât iuwern zorn.
Then spoke Berchtung with courtesies ‘lady, leave your wrath.

ich wilz nu wider bringen, daz ir hetet von im verlorn.
I will-it now back bring, what you had through him lost.

des lât mich geniezen, edel küniginne rîch,
of-that let me profit, noble queen rich,

und nert mir mîn gesellen, als liep iu sî Wolf Dieterîch.’
and save for-me my companion, as dear to-you be Wolf Dietrich.’

227 Dô sprach diu küniginne ‘wilt du daz ich in ner,
Then spoke the queen ‘(if)-wilt thou that I him save,

sô solt du im gebieten daz er diu lant verswer
so shalt thou him command that he the lands forswear

und ouch den hof mir rûme; anders mac ez niht geschehen.
and also the court for-me vacate; otherwise may it not happen.

ich wil in mit mîn ougen nimmer ane gesehen.’
I will him with my eyes never at see.’

Dô sprach der künec in zorne ‘er sol verswern diu lant. 228
Then spoke the king in wrath ‘he shall forswear the lands.

…
(lacuna)

sîn lant habe dir ze lêhen und die dar inne sint.’
his land have for-thyself as fief and who there in are.’

‘nein ich’ sprach der getriuwe, ‘sîn wîp diu tregt ein kint.
‘no I’ spoke the faithful-one, ‘his woman she bears a child.

Ich wil mich underwinden der frowen die wil si lebet, 229
I will myself take-charge of-the lady the while she lives,

und wil daz ir des kindes erbe eht niemen gebet.
and will that you of-the child’s inheritance just no-one give.

ich wil si beide ziehen. stirbt aber daz kindelîn,
I will them both raise. dies however the little-child,

sô teile ich mit der muoter; daz ander sî ouch mîn.’
so share I with the mother; the other be also mine.’

Des dankete im der valsche: diu lant er dô verswuor. 230
For-that thanked him the false-one: the lands he then forswore.

urloup nam er zen fürsten, zen Hiunen er dô fuor.
leave took he from-the princes, to-the Huns he then went.

dô danktens alle gelîche Berhtunge von Mêrân,
then thanked-they all alike Berchtung of Meran,

daz er an sîme gesellen het alsô wol getân.
that he to his companion had so well done.

Berhtunc sich berihte und fuor heim in sîn lant. 231
Berchtung himself prepared and went home into his land.

sînen junchêrren nam er da’r in vant.
his young-lord took he there-he him found.

er kleite in liehter wæte den lieben hêrren sîn,
he clad in bright raiment the dear lord his,

neben im vil gelîche sîn sehzehen kindelîn.
beside him very alike his sixteen little-children.

232 Dô kam er mit freuden wider ûf den hof geriten,
Then came he with joys back onto the court ridden,

als dô die fürsten phlâgen, in fürstenlichen siten.
as then the princes were-wont, in princely manners.

aller fürsten schallen was gegen im ein wint,
all princes' noise was against him a wind,

dô er ze Cunstenobele brâht diu sibenzehen kint.
when he to Constantinople brought the seventeen children.

233 Vil rehte frœlichen enphiengs diu künigîn.
Very rightly joyfully received-them the queen.

si sprach 'nu sage an, guoter, wâ ist mîn kindelîn?'
she spoke 'now say on, good-one, where is my little-child?'

dô sprach der getriuwe 'nu seht wâ er dort gât,
then spoke the faithful-one 'now see where he there goes,

der lengist und der grœzist, der undr in allen stât!
the longest and the greatest, who among them all stands!

234 Die andern sint dîn dienest unde ouch mîniu kint,
The others are thy service and also my children,

diu wol in niun jâren über in elter sint.
who well by nine years over him older are.

sô wol hât er gewendet sîniu kleinen jâr,
so well has he turned his small years,

daz er sich mit in allen roufen wol getar.
that he himself with them all fight well dares.

Ich wil iu sagen, frouwe, ein armman in zôch, 235
I will to-you tell, lady, a poor-man him raised,
den er vil harte roufte, daz er z'walde vor im flôch.
whom he very hard fought, that he to-wood before him fled.
swenn er in iht erzurnte, er sluoc im einen slac,
whenever he him anything angered, he struck him a blow,
swann er in mohte erlangen, daz er vor im lac.
when he him might reach, that he before him lay.

Sich verbarc ouch vor im dicke des armmannes wîp. 236
Herself hid also before him often the poor-man's woman.
si klagten ouch mir beide, si behielten kûme den lîp.
they lamented also to-me both, they kept hardly the life.
dem tiuvel ûz der helle wurdens nie sô gram:
to-the devil out-of the hell became-they never so hostile:
si kusten mich vor liebe, do ich in von in dâ nam.'
they kissed me for love, when I him from them there took.'

Sîn vater wolte in triuten, er was im liep genuoc: 237
His father would him fondle, he was to-him dear enough:
daz kint in niht erkande, den vater ez von im sluoc
the child him not knew, the father it from it struck
und stiez im mit dem fuoze ein ungefüegen stôz:
and thrust to-him with the foot a monstrous thrust:
'jâ kumst du nimmer mêre' sprach der vater 'ûf mîne schôz.'
'yea comest thou never more' spoke the father 'onto my lap.'

Berhtunc gedâhte an sîn êrste hovevart. 238
Berchtung thought on his first court-journey.
sîne helde er dô für brâhte, mit den er gevangen wart.
his heroes he then forth brought, with whom he captive was.

er sprach 'hêr künec, ergetzet dise geste ir schaden.
he spoke 'sir king, requite these guests their harm.

si wurden mit mir gevangen, ich hete si ouch her geladen.
they were with me captive, I had them also hither invited.

239 Si wolten harte gerne dô hie ritter worden sîn.'
They would very gladly then here knights become be.'

'ich wils ir schaden ergetzen' alsô sprach diu künigîn.
'I will-them their harm requite' so spoke the queen.

swaz ritter haben solden, des wurden si bereit,
whatever knights have should, of-that became they prepared,

satel unde schilde und drîer hande kleit.
saddles and shields and three kinds clothes.

240 Diu kastelân ieglîchem wurden gegeben starc,
The castilians to-each-one were given strong,

dar zuo knehte, kleider, ieglîchem vierzic marc.
there to servants, clothes, to-each-one forty marks.

diu hôchzît dâ werte wol fünfzehen tage.
the feast there lasted well fifteen days.

do vergaz diu küniginne ir jâmerlîchen klage.
then forgot the queen her woeful lament.

241 An dem fünfzehenden morgen sprach diu küniginne rîch
On the fifteenth morning spoke the queen rich

'wem welle wir enphelhen, der dâ heizt Wolf Dieterîch?'
'to-whom will we commend, him-who there is-called Wolf Dietrich?'

dô sprach der künec mit witzen 'ir sult Berhtunge biten,
then spoke the king with wits 'you shall Berchtung ask,

daz er den knaben ziehe: er hât doch vil nôt durch in erliten,
that he the boy raise: he has yet much distress for him suffered,

Do er sîner triuwen êrste an im niht vergaz. 242
When he of-his faith first toward him not forgot.

des sul wir im bêde danken, wan sîn phliget ouch niemen baz.'
for-that shall we to-him both thank, for of-him takes-care also no-one better.'

im gap diu küniginne den junchêrren an die hant.
to-him gave the queen the young-lord into the hand.

dô sprach der vil getriuwe 'zwiu sol er mir âne lant?
then spoke the very faithful 'to-what shall he to-me without land?

Swaz ir mir bevelhet an im, dâst niht verlorn'. 243
Whatever you to-me commend in him, that-is not lost'.

dô sprach der künic 'zwâre, Berhtunc, ich hânz versworn.
then spoke the king 'truly, Berchtung, I have-it forsworn.

sîn teil gæb ich im gerne, ich entar vor'n eiden mîn.
his part would-give I to-him gladly, I not-dare for-the oaths mine.

daz ichz verswuor als sêre, daz macht diu muoter sîn.
that I-it forswore so sorely, that made the mother his.

Diu sprach, er solte ervehten ein künegîn unde ein lant. 244
She spoke, he should win-by-fighting a queen and a land.

zwiu solte im dann daz mîne? alsô sprach ich sâ zehant'.
to-what should to-him then the mine? so spoke I at-once forthwith'.

diu frouwe sprach mit zorne 'solt er mir anders leben,
the lady spoke with wrath 'should he for-me otherwise live,

er nimt im lîhte selbe, well wir im niht geben.'
he takes for-himself perhaps self, (if)-will we to-him not give.'

Dô sprach der künec mit witzen 'swaz er behaben kan, 245
Then spoke the king with wits 'whatever he hold can,

des solt du dich underwinden, Berhtunc von Mêrân.
of-that shalt thou thyself take-charge, Berchtung of Meran.

kumt er ze sînen jâren, ist daz er strîtes gert,
(if)-comes he to his years, (if)-is that he of-battle desires,

sô hân ich im behalten ein harnasch unde ein swert,
so have I for-him kept an armor and a sword,

246 Dâ er sich sîner vinde vil wol inne erwert,
Wherein he himself of-his foes very well within defends,

und ein ros, dâ in niemen ouch gâhes ûf ervert.
and a horse, wherein him no-one also hastily up overtakes.

und gebent im sîne bruoder niht swaz im rehte sol,
and give to-him his brothers not whatever to-him rightly shall,

und ist er danne biderbe, er gewinntz in abe vil wol.
if is he then worthy, he wins-it from-them off very well.

247 Dar zuo solt du im helfen, ich enphilh dirn umbe daz,
There to shalt thou him help, I commend to-thee-him for that,

bit in daz er belîbe mit sîn bruodern âne haz.
bid him that he remain with his brothers without hate.

bit si dazs im ouch gerne geben sîn dritten teil,
bid them that-they to-him also gladly give his third part,

od si werden im lîht alle, und sol er haben heil.
or they become to-him perhaps all, if shall he have luck.

248 Ich bevilh dir nâch mîm tôde allez daz ich hân,
I commend to-thee after my death all that I have,

fürste vil getriuwer, daz sî dir undertân,
prince very faithful, that be to-thee subject,

daz du ez rehte teilest under mîniu kindelîn,
that thou it rightly sharest among my little-children,

und bevilhe dir dîn frouwen ouch ûf die triuwe dîn'.
and commend to-thee thy lady also on the faith thine'.

Dô sprach Berthunc mit witzen ‘sô gibe ich im diu kint, 249
Then spoke Berchtung with wits ‘so give I to-him the children,

diu mîn und mînes wîbes von gotes genâden sint:
who mine and my woman’s from God’s grace are:

vil lieber junchêrre, diu sîn iu undertân,
very dear young-lord, they be to-you subject,

dar zuo dien ich iu selbe, und wahset ir ze man.’
there to serve I you self, if grow you to man.’

Berhtunc bat urloubes, des werte man in dô. 250
Berchtung asked of-leave, that granted one him then.

dô fuor er mit sîn kinden ze lande und was vil frô,
then went he with his children to land and was very glad,

daz er behalten hête daz leben dem künege rîch.
that he kept had the life for-the king rich.

nu ist aber ûz einer sorgen der Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
now is again out-of a care the Wolf sir Dietrich.

Wolfdietrich VII

VII · THE QUEEN CAST OUT

Berchtung raises the boy, who is so wild that he must often be bound. Hugdietrich dies, and Saben wins the queen's favor against Berchtung's advice, has Berchtung put out of the council, and tells the two elder sons that Wolfdietrich is a bastard. They drive their mother out, and she rides, poor, to Berchtung's castle. There Wolfdietrich learns from her and from Berchtung's letter who he is, thanks Berchtung for his life, and vows to win a kingdom.

251 Berhtunc nam mit triuwen daz liebe kindelîn
Berchtung took with faith the dear little-child

und bevalh ez ûf die sêle der lieben frouwen sîn.
and commended it on the soul of-the dear lady his.

er sprach 'der selben triuwen du imer geniezen muost,
he spoke 'of-the same faith thou ever profit must,

daz du unserm erbehêrren als dînem kinde tuost.'
that thou to-our hereditary-lord as to-thy child dost.'

252 Dô was ouch Berhtunge harte wol dâ mite.
Then was also to-Berchtung very well there with.

er lachete vaste dicke sînes hêrren site,
he laughed very often at-his lord's manner,

daz er in der bürge niemen niht vertruoc,
that he in the castle no-one anything endured,

daz er sô manegen starken roufete unde sluoc.
that he so many-a strong-one fought and struck.

253 Ouch wart er in der bürge sô frevel und müelîch,
Also became he in the castle so bold and troublesome,

daz si alle wâfen schriuwen über den Wolf Dietrîch.
that they all alarm cried over the Wolf Dietrich.

swenn in hêr Berhtunc wolte umb sîn ungefüege slân,
whenever him sir Berchtung would for his outrage strike,

sô muosten si in immer rehte binden unde vân.
so must they him ever rightly bind and catch.

Als si in ouch gebunden, sô sluoc er in ze fromen: 254
When they him also bound, so struck he him to profit:

des muoste er der unfuoge deste schierer abe komen.
of-that must he of-the misconduct the sooner off come.

er sluoc in harte dicke, die slege im tâten wê.
he struck him very often, the blows to-him did woe.

swaz er im ouch verlobte, daz brach er nimmer mê.
whatever he to-him also forswore, that broke he never more.

Sus nâhete ez dem tôde, als ez noch vil dicke tuot, 255
Thus neared it to-the death, as it still very often does,

daz si alle müezen sterben, si sîn übel oder guot,
that they all must die, they be evil or good,

arme betelære und edele künege rîch:
poor beggars and noble kings rich:

als lac ouch an sîm ende Huge Dieterîch.
so lay also at his end Hug Dietrich.

Dô bevalh er Berhtunge bürge unde lant, 256
Then commended he to-Berchtung castles and land,

sîne süne alle drîe und die frouwen bî der hant.
his sons all three and the lady by the hand.

dô sprach gezogenlîchen Berhtunc von Mêrân
then spoke courteously Berchtung of Meran

'swer mir niht envolget, umb den nime ich mich niht an.'
'whoever me not follows, about him take I myself not on.'

257 Sus wart der künec vil schiere verklaget und ouch verswigen.
Thus was the king very soon lamented-enough and also silenced.

des muoste vil der lande nâch im verwüestet ligen.
of-that must many of-the lands after him wasted lie.

dô der trôst des landes verschiet und ouch verstarp,
when the comfort of-the land departed and also died,

der ungetriuwe Saben umb sîner frouwen hulde warp.
the unfaithful Saben for his lady's favor wooed.

258 Dô wart dem lande jâmer und mort alrêrste gefrumt.
Then was to-the land sorrow and murder first-of-all wrought.

owê daz man die frouwen sô lîhte überkumt!
alas that one the ladies so easily overcomes!

si frâgete Berhtunge, ob er hulde solte haben:
she asked Berchtung, whether he favor should have:

ez wurbe umbe ir hulde der ungetriuwe Saben.
there wooed for her favor the unfaithful Saben.

259 Dô sprach Berhtunc mit zorne 'welt ir im nu vergeben,
Then spoke Berchtung with wrath 'will you to-him now forgive,

unde wolt in, frouwe, vor niht lâzen leben?
and would him, lady, before not let live?

und gewinnt er hulde, iuch und iuwer kint
if wins he favor, you and your children

er verderbet mich und alle, die iu holt mit triuwen sint.'
he ruins me and all, who to-you favorable with faith are.'

260 Dô sprach diu küniginne 'sol ich dâ von getreten?
Then spoke the queen 'shall I there from step?

die hôhsten in dem lande habent mich umb in gebeten,
the highest in the land have me for him asked,

daz ich im gebe hulde, swaz dich nu dunke guot.'
that I to-him give favor, whatever thee now seems good.'

'ez gerouwet iuch alrêrste, frouwe, ob ir ez tuot.'
'it rues you first-of-all, lady, if you it do.'

'Sît daz du mirz verbiutest, sô wil ouch ichz niht tuon.' 261
'Since that thou me-it forbiddest, so will also I-it not do.'

'und tuot irz, er verderbet iuch und iwern sun.'
'if do you-it, he ruins you and your son.'

daz si imz verlobte und im doch hulde gap,
that she him-it forswore and to-him yet favor gave,

des muoste si verliesen den rehten leitestap.
for-that must she lose the right guiding-staff.

Als der ungetriuwe ir hulde dô gewan, 262
When the unfaithful-one her favor then got,

dô begunde er râten ûf Berhtunc von Mêrân,
then began he to-plot against Berchtung of Meran,

und begunde ouch râten ûf die edel künigîn,
and began also to-plot against the noble queen,

wie er die verstieze und ir vil liebez kindelîn.
how he her cast-out and her very dear little-child.

Dô sprach der vil getriuwe 'nu si im hulde hât gegeben, 263
Then spoke the very faithful 'now she to-him favor has given,

nu ræt er ûf mich sêre, daz ez mir gêt an mîn leben.
now plots he against me sorely, that it to-me goes at my life.

nu sol man nimmer mêre gelouben an ein wîp.
now shall one never more believe in a woman.

wâfen über mich selben, wan nam ich im niht sînen lîp?
alarm over me self, why took I from-him not his life?

264 Swer die argen diebe und ungetriuwen spart,
Whoever the wicked thieves and unfaithful spares,

die verkêrent sich vil selten, daz solt ich wol hân bewart.
they turn themselves very seldom, that should I well have guarded.

zwiu wolte ich den ze neren, der mir ungetriuwe was?
to-what would I him to save, who to-me unfaithful was?

nu muoz ez gote erbarmen, daz er vor mir ie genas.'
now must it to-God pity, that he before me ever survived.'

265 Do verstiez man Berhtunge von dem râte sâ zehant.
Then cast-out one Berchtung from the council at-once forthwith.

der frouwen und der kinde sich Saben underwant.
of-the lady and of-the children himself Saben took-charge.

er truoc an mit den hêrren beidiu tac und naht:
he plotted on with the lords both day and night:

dâ erz hin bringen wolde, dâ hete erz schiere brâht.
where he-it thither bring would, there had he-it soon brought.

266 Zuo den junchêrren sprach er dô alle zît
To the young-lords spoke he then all time

'ir sult vil rehte wizzen, hêrre, wer ir sît.
'you shall very rightly know, lords, who you are.

von iuwer muoter valsche ist der dritte künec enwiht;
from your mother's falseness is the third king naught;

dens iu dâ zelt ze bruoder, der ist iuwer bruoder niht.
whom-she to-you there counts as brother, he is your brother not.

267 Si traht ûf iuwer êre beidiu naht unt tac,
She plots against your honor both night and day,

und ist stæte an dem râte wie si iuch verderben mac.
and is steadfast in the counsel how she you ruin may.

verstôzt si von der bürge, s' ist ûf iuwern schaden hie,
cast-out her from the castle, she is to your harm here,

und nemet ir al daz erbe, daz ir iuwer vater lie.
and take you all the inheritance, which to-you your father left.

Dâ von ir in den landen die liute hazzic sint. 268
There from you in the lands the people hostile are.

des si iu dâ giht ze bruoder, der ist ein kebeskint.
whom she to-you there avows as brother, he is a concubine's-child.

dâ mite wart zerstœret iuwers lieben vater ê.
there with was destroyed your dear father's marriage.

got gebe daz ir geschaffet, daz ez ir übele gê.'
God grant that you bring-about, that it to-her ill go.'

Die junchêrrn beide wânden, er hete des wâr. 269
The young-lords both thought, he had of-it truth.

des wart daz wîp verderbet von sînen lügen gar.
of-that was the woman ruined by his lies wholly.

und ouch dem armen kinde verriet er sîn künicrîch:
and also to-the poor child betrayed he his kingdom:

diu künegîn ward verstôzen und ir sun Wolf Dietrîch.
the queen was cast-out and her son Wolf Dietrich.

Die junchêrrn bêde sprâchen zuo ir muoter dô 270
The young-lords both spoke to their mother then

'wir sîn eines dinges worden harte unfrô:
'we are of-one thing become very unglad:

sol der Wolf Dietrîch niht unser bruoder sîn?'
shall the Wolf Dietrich not our brother be?'

'jâ er ûf mîne triuwe' sprach aber diu künigîn.
'yea he on my faith' spoke again the queen.

271 ‘Er ist niht vaterhalp, muoter, mînes vater kint.
‘He is not father’s-side, mother, my father’s child.

daz sagent uns die liute, die des wol bewîset sint.
that tell us the people, who of-it well informed are.

wir enmügen ouch uns entriuwen vor dir niht bewarn.’
we may also ourselves in-faith from thee not guard.’

dô sprach der elter bruoder ‘du solt von dem hûse varn.
then spoke the elder brother ‘thou shalt from the house go.

272 Waz solt dir küneges erbe? du bist niht künigîn.
What shall to-thee king’s inheritance? thou art not queen.

daz du bî grôzem gelte den lieben vater mîn
that thou by great payment the dear father mine

und uns sô hâst verhuoret, daz sol dir niht gefromen:
and us so hast whored-against, that shall thee not profit:

nu hebe dich zuo dem manne, den du dir dâ hâst genomen’.
now raise thyself to the man, whom thou to-thyself there hast taken’.

273 Mit jâmer sprach diu frouwe ‘nu sî ez gote geklagt,
With sorrow spoke the lady ‘now be it to-God lamented,

daz du mich des solt zîhen; wer hât dir daz gesagt?
that thou me of-that shalt accuse; who has to-thee that said?

owê mir, ach daz Sabene mîn hulde ie gewan,
alas me, ah that Saben my favor ever got,

und daz ich niht envolgte Berhtunge von Mêrân.’
and that I not followed Berchtung of Meran.’

274 ‘Got erbarme’ sprach der junge ‘daz ir unser muoter bint
‘God pity’ spoke the young-one ‘that you our mother are

alsô rehte unreine und daz wir ie wurden kint.
so rightly unclean and that we ever became children.

habt ir im niht gevolget, daz wirt wol widertân:
(if)-have you him not followed, that is well undone:

hebt iuch gên Lilienporten und volgt Berhtungen von Mêrân.'
raise yourselves toward Lilienporte and follow Berchtung of Meran.'

Mit jâmer sprach diu frouwe 'sun, lâ mich bî dir hie 275
With sorrow spoke the lady 'son, let me by thee here

unde ouch bî dem erbe, daz mir dîn vater lie.
and also by the inheritance, which to-me thy father left.

het ich man bî sînem lebene, des wolt ich mich harte schemen:
had I husband in his life, of-that would I myself very be-ashamed:

wan ich wil nâch sînem tôde zwâre deheinen nemen.'
for I will after his death truly none take.'

Dô sprach der künec mit zorne 'ich sage dir waz du tuo. 276
Then spoke the king with wrath 'I tell thee what thou do.

du belibest hie niht langer danne unz morgen fruo.
thou remainest here not longer than until tomorrow early.

dîn rîchiu morgengâbe ist mîns bruoder unde mîn:
thy rich morning-gift is my brother's and mine:

du wirst ûf diser bürge nie mêre künigîn.'
thou becomest on this castle never more queen.'

'Nu müeze ez gote erbarmen daz ich Saben ie gesach, 277
'Now may it to-God pity that I Saben ever saw,

daz ich von sînen schulden hân disen ungemach!'
that I from his guilts have this harm!'

swen si gebiten mohte, daz was gar verlorn:
whomever she ask might, that was wholly lost:

die junchêrren wolten nie gelâzen iren zorn.
the young-lords would never leave their wrath.

278 Man liez ir vil kûme ir ros und ir gewant.
One let her very hardly her horse and her clothing.
swaz sô man in der kamere des rîchen schatzes vant,
whatever so one in the chamber of-the rich treasure found,
des wolte man der frouwen niht einer marke lân.
of-that would one to-the lady not one mark leave.
si muoste als arme rîten ze Berhtunge von Mêrân.
she must as poor-one ride to Berchtung of Meran.

279 Si reit vil barmiclîchen unz zuo der porten în.
She rode very pitifully until to the gate in.
dô sagete man Berhtungen 'dâ kumt diu künigîn.'
then told one Berchtung 'there comes the queen.'
er sprach 'sô lît enwâge swaz wir der erbe haben.
he spoke 'so lies at-stake whatever we of-the inheritance have.
ich wæn, si habe verstôzen der ungetriuwe Saben.'
I think, her have cast-out the unfaithful Saben.'

280 Iedoch er gegen der frouwen mit sînen helden gienc
Yet he toward the lady with his heroes went
und ouch mit sînem wîbe die künegîn er enphienc.
and also with his woman the queen he received.
dô sprach er zuo dem kinde 'nu wol dan, hêrre mîn!
then spoke he to the child 'now well thence, lord mine!
mit mir du solt enpfâhen die lieben muoter dîn.'
with me thou shalt receive the dear mother thine.'

281 Dô sprach der junchêrre 'nu ist doch mîn muoter hie.
Then spoke the young-lord 'now is yet my mother here.
si kam in einem jâre für Lilienporte nie.'
she came in a year before Lilienporte never.'

er wânde ez wær sîn muoter daz Berhtunges wîp:
he thought it were his mother the Berchtung's woman:

von dem selben wâne beswâret wart sîn lîp.
from the same supposition burdened was his body.

Dô sprach der vil getriuwe 'zwâr s'ist dîn muoter niht, 282
Then spoke the very faithful 'truly she-is thy mother not,

und dient dir doch vil gerne, swâ dir sîn nôt beschiht.
and serves thee yet very gladly, wherever to-thee of-it need befalls.

als tuon ouch ich zewâre, swâ dir sîn wirdet nôt:
as do also I truly, wherever to-thee of-it becomes need:

der aber dîn vater solt heizen von rehte, der ist tôt.'
who however thy father should be-called by right, he is dead.'

Sus wart der rede ir beider vor jâmer gar geswigen. 283
Thus became of-the speech of-them both for sorrow wholly silent.

diu freude in ir herzen diu muoste gar geligen.
the joy in their heart that must wholly lie.

iedoch was im vil leide, swie er wære ein kindelîn.
yet was to-him very loath, however he were a little-child.

dô lief er für die porte und enphienc die muoter sîn.
then ran he before the gate and received the mother his.

Berhtunc mit schœnen zühten zuo der frouwen sprach 284
Berchtung with fair courtesies to the lady spoke

'waz welt ir, küniginne, in mîn armez obedach?'
'what will you, queen, in my poor shelter?'

si sprach 'wir müezen suochen die friunde als wir si haben:
she spoke 'we must seek the friends as we them have:

mîn kint hânt mich verstôzen und hât in daz gerâten Saben.'
my children have me cast-out and has to-them that counseled Saben.'

285 ‘Des lône im got von himele, daz er iuch verstôzen hât.
‘For-that reward him God of heaven, that he you cast-out has.
er tuot an iu vil rehte, sît iu versmâht mîn rât.
he does to you very right, since to-you scorned my counsel.
swer getriuwen friunden volget, des volgen wirt vil guot:
whoever faithful friends follows, of-him follows becomes very good:
wer sol sich an den lâzen, der nie gewan getriuwen muot?’
who shall himself on him rely, who never got faithful spirit?’

286 ‘Mir ist geschehen übele’ sprach dô diu künigîn.
‘To-me is happened ill’ spoke then the queen.
‘gedenke an dîne triuwe und lâ mich bî dir sîn,
‘think of thy faith and let me by thee be,
und lâz mich bî dir lîden, fürst, swaz dir geschiht.’
and let me by thee suffer, prince, whatever to-thee happens.’
‘entriuwen’ sprach der alte, ‘ir belîbet bî mir niht.
‘in-faith’ spoke the old-one, ‘you remain by me not.

287 Iuwer süne bêde die habent mêr dan ich.
Your sons both they have more than I.
Saben hât daz rîche, des bestât nu lützel mich.
Saben has the realm, that concerns now little me.
ir woltet mir niht volgen, nu habt ouch iu den schaden.
you would me not follow, now have also yourself the harm.
der mich ie hete ze vinde, den habt ir ze hûs geladen.’
who me ever had as foe, him have you to house invited.’

288 Dô sprach erbarmiclîchen diu küniginne hêr
Then spoke pitifully the queen lordly
‘nu tuo mir swaz du wellest, ich hân et niemen mêr.’
‘now do to-me whatever thou wilt, I have just no-one more.’

mit zühten sprach der alte ‘ir sult gote wilkomen sîn.
with courtesies spoke the old-one ‘you shall to-God welcome be.
nu sît in mînem lande frouwe und künigîn.’
now be in my land lady and queen.’

Mit zühten sprach der junge ‘frowe, ir sult sîn wilkomen 289
With courtesies spoke the young-one ‘lady, you shall be welcome
ze mînes vater hûse. swaz ich iu mac gefromen,
at my father’s house. whatever I to-you may profit,
und daz ich iu mac gedienen, daz tuon ich alle zît.
and that I to-you may serve, that do I all time.
ich diene iu deste gerner daz ir mîn muoter sît.’
I serve you the-more gladly that you my mother be.’

Diu frowe gesweic vor jâmer, daz si nie wort gesprach. 290
The lady was-silent for sorrow, that she never word spoke.
dô trôste si der alte und fuorts an ir gemach.
then comforted her the old-one and led-her to her ease.
mit guoter handelunge man dô der frouwen phlac.
with good handling one then of-the lady took-care.
der junge erbeite kûme, unz ez wart des morgens tac.
the young-one awaited hardly, until it became of-the morning day.

Do betwanc in ouch der alte daz im vorhte was bekant, 291
Then constrained him also the old-one that to-him fear was known,
daz er im alle morgen muost reichen sîn gewant.
that he to-him every morning must hand his clothing.
er tete ez durch sîn liebe, swa er sich an im vergaz,
he did it for his love, wherever he himself toward him forgot,
daz in in frömden landen dienstes luste dester baz.
that him in foreign lands of-service pleased the better.

292 Des morgens vor dem bette er eines mâles stuont
In-the morning before the bed he one time stood
und warte im mit dienste, als die kamerære tuont,
and waited to-him with service, as the chamberlains do,
unz er alles dinges ze der kirchen was bereit:
until he of-all things for the church was ready:
swaz er haben solde, daz hete er ane geleit.
whatever he have should, that had he on laid.

293 Ûz der kemenâte wolte er vor im gân.
Out-of the chamber would he before him go.
mit zühten sprach der junge ‘hêrr, ir sult stille stân:
with courtesies spoke the young-one ‘sir, you shall still stand:
ir müezet mînes dienstes ie mêre wesen frî,
you must of-my service ever more be free,
ir saget mir wer ich selbe und mîn geslehte sî.’
you tell me who I self and my lineage be.’

294 Lachende sprach der alte ‘nu bist duz doch mîn kint.
Laughing spoke the old-one ‘now art thou-it yet my child.
du bist mir zwâre lieber dann dîne bruoder sint.’
thou art to-me truly dearer than thy brothers are.’
‘swîget’ sprach der junge, ‘der schimpf ist gar enwiht.
‘be-silent’ spoke the young-one, ‘the jest is wholly naught.
sît ir mîn vater hiute und wârt sîn gester niht?
are you my father today and were of-it yesterday not?

295 Ich wil iuch frâgen, hêrre, ir sult mich berihten gar,
I will you ask, lord, you shall me inform wholly,
in welhem lande ich rehte nâch mînem vater var,
into which land I rightly after my father go,

oder wâ i'n tôten vinde; der reise ist mir vil gâch.
or where I-him dead find; of-the journey is to-me very hasty.

bin ich von edelem künne, ich wil ouch tuon dar nâch.'
(if)-am I of noble kin, I will also do there after.'

Dô werte des der alte, wan er's tôdes wære gewert. 296
Then refused that the old-one, for he-it of-death were granted.

er truoc under üehsen des edeln fürsten swert.
he carried under armpits the noble prince's sword.

er sprach 'nu frag die frouwen diu gester în dâ reit:
he spoke 'now ask the lady who yesterday in there rode:

diu erkennt wol dîn geslehte und saget dir die wârheit.'
she knows well thy lineage and tells thee the truth.'

Von im begunde er strîchen, nihtes niht er in dô bat. 297
From him began he to-creep, nothing at-all he him then asked.

sich freute dô der alte daz der junge von im trat:
himself rejoiced then the old-one that the young-one from him stepped:

ûz der kemenâten er von sînem meister gie.
out-of the chamber he from his master went.

iedoch sprach er mit vorhten 'daz swert daz lâz et hie.'
yet spoke he with fears 'the sword that let just here.'

'Entriuwen' sprach der junge, 'daz wil ich iu widersagen: 298
'In-faith' spoke the young-one, 'that will I to-you refuse:

warnt iuch eins andern swertes, ditz wil ich selbe tragen.'
provide yourself of-an other sword, this will I self carry.'

er truoc vil zorniclîche daz swert in sîner hant:
he carried very wrathfully the sword in his hand:

hin gie er in daz münster, dâ er sîn muoter vant.
thither went he into the minster, where he his mother found.

299 Er sprach ‘nu saget mir, frouwe, und heizt ir ein künigîn,
He spoke ‘now tell me, lady, if are-called you a queen,

wizzt ir ob ir erkennet den lieben vater mîn?
know you whether you know the dear father mine?

sît aber ir mîn muoter und bin ich iuwer kint,
(if)-are however you my mother and am I your child,

ir sult mich dar wîsen dâ mîne friunde sint.’
you shall me thither show where my friends are.’

300 ‘Ir vart sô zorniclîchen’ sprach diu frouwe guot,
‘You go so wrathfully’ spoke the lady good,

‘und bin doch des geloubic daz ir mir niht entuot:
‘and am yet of-that believing that you to-me nothing do:

ich kan dir niht bewîsen nu mêre der friunde dîn,
I can thee not show now more of-the friends thine,

wan ich bin dîn muoter und du mîn kindelîn.’
but I am thy mother and thou my little-child.’

301 ‘Mac aber ein kint von muoter âne vater komen?’
‘May however a child from mother without father come?’

‘entriuwen’ sprach diu frouwe, ‘des hân ich niht vernomen.
‘in-faith’ spoke the lady, ‘that have I not heard.

von vater und von muoter wirt wol ein kint geborn:
from father and from mother is well a child born:

den vater den aber du hête, den hâst du leider vlorn.’
the father whom however thou hadst, him hast thou alas lost.’

302 ‘Sô saget mir wâ der sturbe oder wâ der sî gewesen,
‘So tell me where he died or where he be been,

und saget ir mir unrehte, ich lâze iuch niht genesen.’
if tell you me wrongly, I let you not survive.’

si sprach 'vil lieber hêrre, ir sult mir niht entuon:
she spoke 'very dear lord, you shall to-me nothing do:
von allen vier enden sît ir eins küneges sun.
from all four ends are you a king's son.

Dîn vater und dîn muoter was künec und künigîn. 303
Thy father and thy mother was king and queen.
du solt ouch von rehte gewalteger künic sîn.
thou shalt also by right mighty king be.
dîn vater was ze Kriechen ein gewalteger künic rîch:
thy father was in Greece a mighty king rich:
der saz ûf Cunstenobele und hiez Huge Dietrîch.'
who sat on Constantinople and was-called Hug Dietrich.'

Si sprach 'ir sît gelêret, nu nemet den brief enhant.' 304
She spoke 'you are learned, now take the letter in-hand.'
sîn leben und sîn sterben er dran geschriben vant;
his life and his dying he thereon written found;
wie Berhtunc in ernerte, an dem brieve er daz las,
how Berchtung him saved, on the letter he that read,
wâ von er was verrâten und wâ von er genas.
where from he was betrayed and where from he survived.

Dô neigte er sîner muoter daz houbet in die schôz. 305
Then bowed he to-his mother the head into the lap.
dô wart ir beider weinen und ouch ir jâmer grôz:
then became of-them both weeping and also their sorrow great:
er halstes unde kustes, ir kleider wurden naz.
he embraced-her and kissed-her, her clothes became wet.
durch sînes meisters liebe des swertes er vergaz.
for his master's love the sword he forgot.

306 Der muoter er die tavele in den buosem wider stiez.
To-the mother he the tablet into the bosom back thrust.

dô suochte er Berhtungen, daz swert er ligen liez.
then sought he Berchtung, the sword he lie let.

dô bôt er sînem meister vil senelîchen gruoz:
then offered he to-his master very longing greeting:

er kuste im an die hende und neic im ûf den fuoz.
he kissed him on the hands and bowed to-him to the foot.

307 'Got müeze dir vergelten, fürste von Mêrân,
'God may thee repay, prince of Meran,

meister unde hêrre, daz du mir hâst getân.
master and lord, what thou to-me hast done.

ich hân von dîn genâden mîn êre und ouch mîn leben.
I have from thy graces my honor and also my life.

ich wil mich, lieber meister, in dîne genâde geben.
I will myself, dear master, into thy grace give.

308 Ich hân vil rehte erfrâget, von wanne ich bin bekomen.
I have very rightly asked, from whence I am come.

mir wart unbillîchen mîn erbeteil genomen.
to-me was unjustly my inheritance-share taken.

weiz got, mir giltet Sabene den ungetriuwen rât,
knows God, to-me pays Saben the unfaithful counsel,

daz er mich und mîne muoter alsô verstôzen hât!
that he me and my mother so cast-out has!

309 Sô bin ouch ich gewahsen vil nâch zeim starken man.
So am also I grown very near to-a strong man.

man muoz ouch mir von rehte mîn erbeteil verlân.
one must also to-me by right my inheritance-share leave.

zwâr ich geruowe ouch nimmer, ich gewinne ein künicrîch.'
truly I rest also never, unless-I win a kingdom.'

alrêrst wil in die sorge Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
first-of-all will into the care Wolf sir Dietrich.

Wolfdietrich VIII

VIII · THE BATTLE WITH THE BROTHERS

Berchtung tries to keep Wolfdietrich out of the fighting, since Greek custom allows no one a sword before he is twenty-four, and the boy refuses. Berchtung gives him his sixteen sons, each with a thousand knights, and they march into Greece, burning as they go. In the battle Wolfdietrich breaks through his brothers' troops, but Saben escapes with the two kings, and six of Berchtung's sons lie dead. Wolfdietrich begs Berchtung to kill him for the loss and tries to fall on his sword, and the old man takes it from him.

Mit jâmer sprach der alte 'du hâst manheit unde tugent: 310
With sorrow spoke the old-one 'thou hast manhood and virtue:

in dînem grôzen lîbe hâst du ze kleine jugent.
in thy great body hast thou too little youth.

ez schadet dînen sælden in dîner kintheit,
it harms thy blisses in thy childhood,

daz du strebest alze früeje nâch seneder arbeit.'
that thou strivest all-too early after longing toil.'

Mit zühten sprach der junge 'swer gerne hât gemach, 311
With courtesies spoke the young-one 'whoever gladly has ease,

der versuochet selden frömdez obedach.
he tries seldom foreign shelter.

swer aber in dem alter wil mit gemache leben,
whoever however in the age will with ease live,

der muoz in sîner jugende nâch dem hûsrâte streben.
he must in his youth after the household strive.

312 Du solt mich des niht irren al die wîle ich tüge,
Thou shalt me in-that not hinder all the while I avail,

ich versuoche in mîner jugende waz ich erwerben müge.
I try in my youth what I win may.

ez müezen mîne bruoder mîne vînde sîn,
there must my brothers my foes be,

si enlâzen mir mîn erbe und ouch der muoter mîn.'
unless-they leave to-me my inheritance and also to-the mother mine.'

313 Mit jâmer sprach der alte 'swaz ich sage, daz ist wâr.
With sorrow spoke the old-one 'whatever I say, that is true.

ich was vor urlouge geruowet vierzic jâr.
I was from warfare rested forty years.

ich muoz in mînem alter mit dir haben ungemach.
I must in my age with thee have hardship.

nu muoz ez gote erbarmen daz ich Saben ie gesach!
now must it to-God pity that I Saben ever saw!

314 Ûf den wil ich dir helfen und ûf die bruoder dîn,
Against him will I thee help and against the brothers thine,

si tuon dir danne rehte und der frouwen mîn.
they do to-thee then right and to-the lady mine.

sol aber ez dir iht helfen, (du wilt nâch strîte toben
shall however it thee anything help, (thou wilt after battle rage

dâ vor der ezîte,) du solt mir daz verloben
there before the time,) thou shalt to-me that forswear

315 Daz du iht vehtest, swâ wir komen in den strît.
That thou anything fightest, wherever we come into the battle.

ich sæhe ab ez vil gerne, nu ist sîn noch niht zît.
I would-see however it very gladly, now is of-it yet not time.

des habe wir site ze Kriechen, er muoz volwahsen gar,
of-that have we custom in Greece, he must full-grow wholly,

daz im iemen swert erloube, ern hab vier und zweinzic jâr.'
that him anyone sword allow, unless-he have four and twenty years.'

'Nu swîc' sprach der junge, 'und sih ich dich in der nôt, 316
'Now be-silent' spoke the young-one, 'if see I thee in the distress,

ê ich dich sterben lieze, ich læge ê bî dir tôt.
before I thee die let, I would-lie rather by thee dead.

ich wil entriuwen vehten umb mîn selbes künicrîch:
I will in-faith fight for my own kingdom:

ich erloube mir ez selbe' sprach Wolf Dietrîch.
I allow me it self' spoke Wolf Dietrich.

'Triuwen' sprach der alte, 'ich tar ez dir niht wern. 317
'Truly' spoke the old-one, 'I dare it thee not forbid.

wir kumen doch wol widere, wil uns got von himele nern.
we come yet well back, (if)-will us God of heaven save.

uns dien daz lant ze Kriechen oder wir verliesenz leben.
to-us serves the land of Greece or we lose-the life.

alrêrst muost du nu hœren waz ich dir wil ze stiure geben.
first-of-all must thou now hear what I to-thee will as aid give.

Sehzehen junchêrren, die liebsten die ich hân: 318
Sixteen young-lords, the dearest whom I have:

mîne süne sint si alle und sint dir undertân:
my sons are they all and are to-thee subject:

si müezen aber alle mit dir füeren sturmgewant,
they must however all with thee lead battle-gear,

iegelîcher tûsent ritter und ein vanen an der hant.
each-one thousand knights and a banner in the hand.

319 Ouch wil ich, lieber hêrre, dir mêren dîne schar
Also will I, dear lord, to-thee increase thy troop
in snêwîzen ringen ouch mit tûsent dar.
in snow-white rings also with thousand there.
ich gibe dir die helde unde ein banier lieht:
I give to-thee the heroes and a banner bright:
die sint sô ûz gesuochet, daz si dir entwîchent niht.
they are so out chosen, that they from-thee flee not.

320 In der zwelften wochen sint si dir bereit.
In the twelfth week are they for-thee prepared.
sô rechen wir mit zorne beide unser leit,
so avenge we with wrath both our sorrow,
ez enkume von ungelücke, man geb uns ein künicrîch.'
it unless-come from misfortune, one give us a kingdom.'
'got lône dir der gâbe' sprach Wolf Dieterich.
'God reward thee for-the gift' spoke Wolf Dietrich.

321 Dô muosten sich bereiten die recken in die nôt.
Then must themselves prepare the warriors into the distress.
si kâmen ûf Lilienporten des tages, als er gebôt,
they came onto Lilienporte on-the day, as he commanded,
die edelen und die küenen, die Berhtunc dâ gerne sach:
the noble and the bold, whom Berchtung there gladly saw:
ir deheinem eines ringes noch eins riemen nie gebrach.
to-them none of-a ring nor of-a strap ever lacked.

322 Mit freuden sprach der junge 'si sint vil frœlîch komen,
With joys spoke the young-one 'they are very joyfully come,
und wird ich ze hêrren immer, ez sol in allen fromen:
if become I to lord ever, it shall to-them all profit:

swes ir einer muotet, des wil ich im niht versagen.
whatever of-them one desires, that will I to-him not refuse.

nu welhez ist diu brünne, die ich sol selbe tragen?'
now which is the mail-shirt, which I shall self wear?'

Er sprach 'ich gæb dir gerne dînes vater swert. 323
He spoke 'I would-give thee gladly thy father's sword.

dâ wærest du ze strîte vil wol mite gewert.
there wert thou for battle very well with granted.

des solt du mich erlâzen, des mac niht gesîn:
of-that shalt thou me release, that may not be:

got vellet dich vil lîhte, füerstuz ûf die bruoder dîn.'
God fells thee very likely, (if)-carriest-thou-it against the brothers thine.'

'Triuwen' sprach der Krieche, 'ich bin ouch mîns vater sun. 324
'Truly' spoke the Greek, 'I am also my father's son.

doch wil ich in mit dem swerte deheinen schaden tuon.'
yet will I to-them with the sword no harm do.'

dô hiez er im gewinnen ein ander klingen lieht
then bade he for-him get an other blade bright

und einen halsberc guoten, der was aber sô veste niht.
and a hauberk good, it was however so firm not.

Do urloubte er in den ringen sich von der muoter sîn. 325
Then took-leave he in the rings himself from the mother his.

dô sprach diu küniginne 'nu schône der bruoder dîn.
then spoke the queen 'now spare the brothers thine.

lâz si des niht entgelten, ob si ungetriuwe sint:
let them of-it not pay, if they unfaithful are:

ir sît doch alle drîe wan zweier liute kint.
you are yet all three but of-two people children.

326 Swaz ich dir hân behalten, daz ist dir noch niht guot,
Whatever I for-thee have kept, that is to-thee yet not good,
sît daz du ûf dîne bruoder hâst urlouges muot.'
since that thou against thy brothers hast warfare's spirit.'
'möhten wir si twingen, daz tet mînem herzen wol.
'might we them constrain, that did to-my heart well.
wol mich' sprach Wolf Dietrîch, 'daz ich mit in vehten sol!
well me' spoke Wolf Dietrich, 'that I with them fight shall!

327 Iedoch leist ich vil gerne, muoter, dîn gebot.'
Yet perform I very gladly, mother, thy command.'
dô kuste si den lieben und bevalh in dicke got.
then kissed she the dear-one and commended him often to-God.
vil lûte rief der alte 'junchêrre, rûmt daz loch.
very loudly called the old-one 'young-lord, vacate the hole.
waz tuot ir tâlanc drinne? sûgt ir iuwer muoter noch?
what do you today therein? suck you your mother yet?

328 Ich hân iuwern bruodern offenlîche widerseit.
I have your brothers openly challenged.
si bringent vil der vînde ûf daz gemerke breit.
they bring many of-the foes onto the march broad.
wir vehten nâch dem rehte, daz sol uns got beschern:
we fight according-to the right, that shall to-us God grant:
mit drîzic tûsent helden wil man uns daz gemerke wern.'
with thirty thousand heroes will one us the march forbid.'

329 'Nu lât die vanen fliegen mit freuden über velt.
'Now let the banners fly with joys over field.
mir wirt an den tôten mîner lande widergelt.
to-me becomes on the dead of-my lands payment.

gan mir got gelückes, mir wirt ein künicrîch.
(if)-grants me God fortune, to-me becomes a kingdom.

nu sul wir mit freuden vehten!' sprach Wolf hêr Dieterîch.
now shall we with joys fight!' spoke Wolf sir Dietrich.

Diu schœnen castelâne si den recken zugen. 330
The fair castilians they to-the warriors led.

die vanen über die heide gewalticlîche flugen.
the banners over the heath mightily flew.

dâ muoste man gedranges sîn ûf den staten:
there must one of-thronging be on the shores:

baz dan über ein raste kôs man der schefte schaten.
better than over a league saw one of-the shafts' shadow.

Mitten in Kriechen si gewalticlîche rîten, 331
In-the-middle in Greece they mightily rode,

daz si des niemen irrte, vil gar ungestriten.
that they in-that no-one hindered, very wholly unfought.

'entriuwen, mir gît niemen' sprach der Krieche 'ein künicrîch.
'in-faith, to-me gives no-one' spoke the Greek 'a kingdom.

ich wil mînen teil verbrennen' sprach Wolf Dietrîch.
I will my part burn' spoke Wolf Dietrich.

Dô fuorens unverborgen durch der Kriechen lant: 332
Then went-they unbidden through the Greeks' land:

den âbent und den morgen huop sich roup und brant,
in-the evening and in-the morning raised itself plunder and burning,

unz an dem vierden tage gên dem morgen fruo,
until on the fourth day toward the morning early,

dô zugen ouch die künege mit grôzer menege zuo.
then marched also the kings with great multitude to.

333 Vil gewalticlîche kreftic was ir her.
Very mightily strong was their host.

si fuorten in der dicke drîzic tûsent oder mêr.
they led in the thick thirty thousand or more.

gên dem morgensterne, als der tac ûf brach,
toward the morning-star, as the day up broke,

ietwedere ir beider huote man ûf einander stên sach.
each of-them both guards one against each-other stand saw.

334 'Seht ir' sprach zuo dem künige der ungetriuwe Saben,
'See you' spoke to the king the unfaithful Saben,

'waz wir an Berhtungen her geheien haben?
'what we in Berchtung hither fostered have?

mit solher schar grôzer dient er iuwerm vater nie mêr;
with such troop great served he your father never more;

und sol er leben lange, er tuot uns grôz herzensêr.'
if shall he live long, he does us great heart-sore.'

335 Dô sprach mit frömdem muote Berhtunc von Mêrân
Then spoke with strange spirit Berchtung of Meran

'nu suln ouch wir die Kriechen ûf die rede bestân.
'now shall also we the Greeks at the speech attack.

des sol sich hiute getrœsten der ritter und der kneht,
of-that shall himself today console the knight and the servant,

daz uns got immer danket, wir strîten umb daz reht.'
that us God ever thanks, we fight for the right.'

336 Die schar bêdenthalben zesamene kêrten dô.
The troops on-both-sides together turned then.

die sich dô strîtes trôsten, die wurden alle frô.
who themselves then of-battle consoled, they became all glad.

zesamene si dô drungen, die schefte brâchens gar:
together they then pressed, the shafts broke-they wholly:

ir wîse si dô sungen in beidenthalp der schar.
their tune they then sang in on-both-sides the troop.

Dô huop sich beidenthalben angest unde nôt. 337
Then raised itself on-both-sides fear and distress.

dâ muosten liehte ringe von bluote werden rôt,
there must bright rings from blood become red,

dâ gegen einander drungen die schar gemeiniclich:
there toward each-other pressed the troops in-common:

dô streit vor Berhtungen der Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
then fought before Berchtung the Wolf sir Dietrich.

Die sprîzen gên den wolken in von den handen flugen. 338
The splinters toward the clouds them from the hands flew.

dô si die schefte brâchen, diu scharfen swert si zugen,
when they the shafts broke, the sharp swords they drew,

und erbeizten von den rossen nider ûf daz gras.
and dismounted from the horses down onto the grass.

si muosten alle wîchen swâ Wolf Dietrîch was.
they must all yield wherever Wolf Dietrich was.

Er hiuw dâ bêdenthalben lucken unde phat. 339
He hewed there on-both-sides gaps and paths.

si nâmen alle ir ende, swenn der junge hin getrat.
they took all their end, whenever the young-one thither stepped.

die schar durchbrach der Krieche und Berhtunc dâ drîstunt:
the troop broke-through the Greek and Berchtung there three-times:

swen er niht sluoc ze tôde, der wart doch sêre wunt.
whomever he not struck to death, he was yet sorely wounded.

340 Unz ûf den swertvezzel sluoc er manegen durch den helm.
Until to the sword-belt struck he many-a-one through the helmet.

dô wart mit mannes bluote begozzen gar der melm.
then was with man's blood drenched wholly the dust.

'nu fliebe wir' sprach Saben zuo dem künege rîch,
'now flee we' spoke Saben to the king rich,

'ditz ist der übel tiuvel, ez wart nie Wolf Dietrîch.'
'this is the evil devil, it was never Wolf Dietrich.'

341 Dô wurden liehte ringe von bluote rôt gevar.
Then became bright rings from blood red colored.

des muoste ouch im entwîchen diu krefticlîche schar.
of-that must also from-him yield the mighty troop.

doch rach er mit grimme alrêrste sînen zorn:
yet avenged he with fury first-of-all his wrath:

dô wuot er durch die tôten in bluote unz über die sporn.
then waded he through the dead in blood until over the spurs.

342 Dô wart von lebenden liuten diu heide schiere blôz.
Then became of living people the heath soon bare.

daz bluot durch liehte ringe vast ûf die erde gôz.
the blood through bright rings hard onto the earth poured.

über den jungen Kriechen dô vil maneger schrei:
over the young Greek then very many-a-one cried:

des tages sluoc Wolf Dietrîch vil manigem sîn houpt enzwei.
on-that day struck Wolf Dietrich to-very many-a-one his head in-two.

343 Berhtunc und sîn hêrre die gâhten über velt,
Berchtung and his lord they hastened over field,

si wolten Saben suochen: dô was lære sîn gezelt.
they would Saben seek: then was empty his tent.

dô si in niht enfunden, grôz was ir ungehabe:
when they him not found, great was their grief:

si sluogen nider die hütten und den rossen die hahsen abe.
they struck down the tents and from-the horses the hocks off.

Swaz si der flieher funden, ir deheiner der genas. 344
Whatever they of-the fleers found, of-them none he survived.

si betungten mit den tôten daz velt und ouch daz gras.
they manured with the dead the field and also the grass.

die vînde jagete niemen wan Berhtunc von Mêrân
the foes hunted no-one but Berchtung of Meran

und sîner süne zehene: daz wârn sîn einlif dienstman.
and of-his sons ten: those were his eleven ministerials.

Als si beidenthalben vaste mit einander strîten, 345
As they on-both-sides hard with each-other fought,

dô was ouch mit den künegen Saben ûf daz velt geriten.
then was also with the kings Saben onto the field ridden.

si warten wie ez ergienge dem krefticlîchen her:
they watched how it went to-the mighty host:

dar ane si sâhen beide, dazz flôch ân alle wer.
there on they saw both, that-it fled without any defense.

Sus habeten ûf der heide die zwêne künege rîch. 346
Thus halted on the heath the two kings rich.

'nu wer sint jene drîe' sprach Wolf hêr Dietrîch,
'now who are yonder three' spoke Wolf sir Dietrich,

'die ich dort ûf der warte sihe bî einander haben?'
'whom I there on the watch-height see by each-other halt?'

'jâ sint ez dîne bruoder und der ungetriuwe Saben.'
'yea are they thy brothers and the unfaithful Saben.'

347 ‘Si mugen uns niht entrinnen’ sprach er, ‘nu wol dan!’
‘They may us not escape’ spoke he, ‘now well thence!’

‘du maht ir niht errîten’ sprach Berhtunc von Mêrân.
‘thou mayst them not overtake’ spoke Berchtung of Meran.

‘daz aber ich Sabene hête’ sprach Wolf hêr Dietrîch,
‘that however I Saben had’ spoke Wolf sir Dietrich,

‘dar umb wolt ich verliesen ze Kriechenz künicrîch.’
‘there for would I lose in Greece-the kingdom.’

348 Swie vil man im ez werte, doch reit er über velt.
However much one to-him it forbade, yet rode he over field.

dô rîten ouch die drîe baz vor im danne enzelt.
then rode also the three better before him than ambling.

Wolf Dietrîch rief vil lûte ‘ungetriuwer Saben,
Wolf Dietrich called very loudly ‘unfaithful Saben,

ich wil dir fride gebieten, du maht wol stille haben.’
I will to-thee peace offer, thou mayst well still halt.’

349 Dô sprach der ungetriuwe ‘des mac nu niht gesîn.
Then spoke the unfaithful-one ‘that may now not be.

jâ fürhte ich Berhtungen und die untriuwe dîn.’
yea fear I Berchtung and the unfaith thine.’

mit zorne sprach der Krieche ‘wer gap dir aber heil,
with wrath spoke the Greek ‘who gave to-thee however luck,

daz du mir solt verirren mîn rehtez erbeteil?
that thou me shalt deprive-of my right inheritance-share?

350 Oder wer hât dir erloubet über mîne muoter zuht?
Or who has to-thee allowed over my mother’s breeding?

daz muost du mir büezen, und hilft dich niht dîn fluht.’
that must thou to-me atone, if helps thee not thy flight.’

dô sprach aber Saben ‘man hât dich wol gewert.
then spoke again Saben ‘one has thee well granted.

dir hât der künec geschaffen sîn harnasch und sîn swert.
for-thee has the king assigned his armor and his sword.

Dâ hâst du, mordære, immer ane genuoc. 351
There hast thou, murderer, ever on enough.

dar zuo ist dir bevolhen sîn ros daz in dâ truoc.
there to is to-thee commended his horse that him there carried.

diu gâbe ist dir nützer dan elliu künicrîch.’
the gift is to-thee more-useful than all kingdoms.’

‘mir sol noch mêre werden’ sprach Wolf Dietrîch.
‘to-me shall yet more become’ spoke Wolf Dietrich.

Dô sprach aber Sabene ‘reit dan ûf unser leben. 352
Then spoke again Saben ‘ride thence on our life.

dir und Berhtunge well wir fride geben
to-thee and to-Berchtung will we peace give

und welln dir mite teilen, daz man dir des besten giht.’
and will to-thee with share, that one to-thee of-the best avows.’

Berhtunc sprach ‘valscher hovewart, er gert dins frides niht.’
Berchtung spoke ‘false court-dog, he desires thy peace not.’

Sus wart ein michel schelten mit zorne under in. 353
Thus became a great reviling with wrath among them.

dô kêrten dise widere und jene rîten hin.
then turned these back and yonder rode away.

vil lûte rief dô Saben ‘ich sage dir waz du tuo:
very loudly called then Saben ‘I tell thee what thou do:

helt, ob du ie biderbe wurdest, nu bit uns hie unz morgen fruo.’
hero, if thou ever worthy becamest, now wait for-us here until tomorrow early.’

354 ‘Entriuwen’ sprach der Krieche, ‘daz wil ich wol bewarn.’
‘In-faith’ spoke the Greek, ‘that will I well guard.’

sîn ros was erstrecket, er kunde ir niht ervarn.
his horse was exhausted, he could them not overtake.

do er sîn niht mohte errîten noch der künege rîch,
when he him not might overtake nor the kings rich,

dô weinte alrêrst vor zorne der Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
then wept first-of-all for wrath the Wolf sir Dietrich.

355 Dô rîten die hergesellen wider ûf daz wal.
Then rode the army-companions back onto the field.

swaz si der vînde funden, die sluogen si ze tal.
whatever they of-the foes found, them struck they to dale.

mit zorne sprach der junge ‘und wilt du meister mîn,
with wrath spoke the young-one ‘if wilt thou master mine,

wir suln der vînde biten und hie unz morgen sîn.’
we shall for-the foes wait and here until tomorrow be.’

356 ‘Daz wil ich widerrâten’ sprach Berhtunc von Mêrân.
‘That will I advise-against’ spoke Berchtung of Meran.

‘si bringent fruo here baz danne tûsent man,
‘they bring early hither better than thousand men,

die halsberge füerent und tuont uns grôzen schaden.
who hauberks wear and do us great harm.

ich wæne wir sîn bêde ûf grôzen jâmer her geladen.’
I think we are both onto great sorrow hither invited.’

357 ‘Verzaget niht als schiere’ sprach der Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
‘Despair not so soon’ spoke the Wolf sir Dietrich.

‘ich muoz den lîp verliesen, ichn gewinne ein künicrîch.’
‘I must the life lose, unless-I win a kingdom.’

mit zorne sprach der alte ‘sol ich dir die wârheit sagen?
with wrath spoke the old-one ‘shall I to-thee the truth tell?

die wir ze strîte brâhten, die sint alle erslagen.
whom we to battle brought, they are all slain.

Ich fuorte dir ze strîte sehzehen mîniu kint: 358
I led for-thee to battle sixteen my children:

diu sint bî dir erstorben. daz ir wan zehene sint.
they are by thee died. that of-them but ten are.

wilt du nu selbe zwelfte ein ganzez her bestân?
wilt thou now self twelfth a whole host attack?

nu viht mit swem du wellest, du hâst wæn einlif man.’
now fight with whom thou wilt, thou hast I-think eleven men.’

Nu enwelle got von himele’ sprach Wolf Dietrîch, 359
Now not-will God of heaven’ spoke Wolf Dietrich,

‘daz die sô hôhe kouften mîn armez künicrîch!
‘that they so high bought my poor kingdom!

mir sol niht an den mînen sô grôzer schade geschehen.
to-me shall not on the mine so great harm happen.

ich geloube niht ir tôdes, du lâzest michs ê sehen.’
I believe not their death, thou lettest me-it before see.’

Dô fuorte sâ der wîse sînen hêrren bî der hant, 360
Then led at-once the wise-one his lord by the hand,

dâ er gesach die tôten: die het er schiere erkant.
where he saw the dead: them had he soon recognized.

dô er ir antlitze als sêre verschrôten sach,
when he their faces so sorely hewn saw,

er viel ûf iegelîchen: vor leide er niht ensprach.
he fell on each-one: for sorrow he not spoke.

361 Dô brach ern abe die helme, si wârn ze tôde wunt.
Then broke he-them off the helmets, they were to death wounded.
do enliez er ir deheinen, er kuste in an den munt.
then let he of-them none, he kissed him on the mouth.
sîn herze was betrüebet, sîn ougen wurden naz:
his heart was troubled, his eyes became wet:
Berhtunc durch sînen hêrren der kinde gar vergaz.
Berchtung for his lord the children wholly forgot.

362 Dô zôch er den jungen von sînen kinden hin.
Then drew he the young-one from his children away.
dô sprach er zuo dem hêrren 'wâ ist nu iuwer sin?
then spoke he to the lord 'where is now your mind?
welt ir die hêrrn beweinen, die mir dâ sint erslagen?
will you the lords bewail, who to-me there are slain?
mîniu kint si wâren, lât mich diu selbe klagen.'
my children they were, let me them self lament.'

363 Mit jâmer sprach der Krieche 'jâ riuwet mich mîn leben.
With sorrow spoke the Greek 'yea rues me my life.
die wîle daz ich lebte hetest du mirs gegeben:
the while that I lived hadst thou to-me-them given:
ich wolte ez nemen für Kriechen und für elliu künicrîch,
I would it take for Greece and for all kingdoms,
daz mîne gesellen lebten' sprach Wolf Dietrîch.
that my companions lived' spoke Wolf Dietrich.

364 'Sît aber du die hêrren von mir hâst verlorn,
'Since however thou the lords through me hast lost,
Berhtunc, lieber meister, rîch an mir dînen zorn:
Berchtung, dear master, avenge on me thy wrath:

du hâst von mînen schulden vlorn dîniu kindelîn.
thou hast from my guilts lost thy little-children.

dir sî vor gote erloubet, slah mir abe daz houbet mîn.
to-thee be before God allowed, strike to-me off the head mine.

Durch got solt du mich tœten, sît ich des hân begert.' 365
For God shalt thou me kill, since I of-that have desired.'

dô wolte er durch sich selben gestochen hân sîn swert.
then would he through himself self stabbed have his sword.

vil schiere gesach der alte daz im sîn ernest was:
very soon saw the old-one that to-him his earnest was:

dô zucte er im die klingen und warf si ûf daz gras.
then snatched he from-him the blade and threw it onto the grass.

Er sprach ze sînem hêrren 'des jâmers ist genuoc. 366
He spoke to his lord 'of-the woe is enough.

lât si die frowen beweinen diu si in ir lîbe truoc.'
let them the lady bewail who them in her body bore.'

der junge sprach 'mîn swære was ie unklegelîch.
the young-one spoke 'my heaviness was ever unlamentable.

alrêrst bin ich in sorgen' sprach Wolf hêr Dieterîch.
first-of-all am I in cares' spoke Wolf sir Dietrich.

Wolfdietrich IX

IX · THE SIEGE OF LILIENPORTE

Berchtung leads the survivors back toward Lilienporte, and on the way Wolfdietrich scatters a camp of foes. Berchtung's wife mourns her six sons, and Berchtung bids her comfort Wolfdietrich instead. Five days later the brothers' host of five thousand lays siege to the castle.

367 Mit zorne sprach der alte 'nu lâz die klage sîn:
With wrath spoke the old-one 'now let the lament be:

mîn und mînes wîbes wârn diu kindelîn.
mine and my woman's were the little-children.

nu hilf mir selbe râten und lâzen wir den zorn:
now help me self counsel and let we the wrath:

swaz wir dar umbe tæten, doch wæren si verlorn.
whatever we there for did, yet were they lost.

368 Ja ist unser beider helfe an in niht verdorben gar.
Yea is our both help on them not ruined wholly.

uns wahsent ander liute und koment ouch andriu jâr.
to-us grow other people and come also other years.

ez kan uns niht gehelfen, swaz wir weinen diu kint.
it can us not help, whatever we weep the children.

si werdent ouch niht lebendic, die erstorben sint.'
they become also not living, who died are.'

369 'Ich sage dir' sprach der alte, 'wilt du nu volgen mir
'I tell thee' spoke the old-one, 'wilt thou now follow me

(nu volge mir mit willen, daz beste râte ich dir):
(now follow me with will, the best counsel I thee):

ich wil mit dir verderben, dir enwerd dîn künicrîch.'
I will with thee perish, to-thee unless-become thy kingdom.'

'ich tuon swaz du gebiutest' sprach Wolf Dietrîch.
'I do whatever thou commandest' spoke Wolf Dietrich.

'Ich sage dir' sprach der alte, 'und beweinest du diu kint, 370
'I tell thee' spoke the old-one, 'if bewailest thou the children,

diu in dînem dienste alhie erstorben sint,
who in thy service here died are,

wilt du si langer weinen, ich diene dir nie mêr.'
(if)-wilt thou them longer weep, I serve thee never more.'

'sô muoz ich mit dir lachen' sprach der künic hêr.
'so must I with thee laugh' spoke the king lordly.

'Ditz wal wir müezen rûmen' sprach Berhtunc von Mêrân. 371
'This field we must vacate' spoke Berchtung of Meran.

'du hâst ûf diser erde niuwan einlif dienstman.
'thou hast on this earth only eleven ministerials.

dâ mite sul wir entwîchen, ez ist nu fliehens zît:
there with shall we withdraw, it is now of-fleeing time:

uns kument wol tûsent ritter, den hab wir deheinen strît.'
to-us come well thousand knights, to-them have we no battle.'

Mit jâmer sprach der junge 'solt ich nu dîniu kint 372
With sorrow spoke the young-one 'should I now thy children

ungerochen lâzen, diu bî mir erstorben sint,
unavenged leave, who by me died are,

wem lieze ich mîne gesellen und mîne dienstman?'
to-whom left I my companions and my ministerials?'

'wir suln niht stætes zürnen' sprach Berhtunc von Mêrân.
'we shall not steadfastly be-angry' spoke Berchtung of Meran.

373 ‘Ich sage dir’ sprach der alte, ‘sî wir hie unz ûf den tac,
‘I tell thee’ spoke the old-one, ‘(if)-are we here until onto the day,
sô kumet sô vil der vînde, daz in niemen entrinnen mac.
so comes so many of-the foes, that them no-one escape may.
nu flieh wir z’unser vesten, daz ist wîslîch.’
now flee we to-our fortress, that is wise.’
‘ich fliuhe vil ungerne’ sprach Wolf Dietrîch.
‘I flee very unwillingly’ spoke Wolf Dietrich.

374 ‘Du solt von rehte fliehen, wir haben deheine wer.
‘Thou shalt by right flee, we have no defense.
du hâst ouch wol gehœret: zwên sint eines her.
thou hast also well heard: two are of-one host.
sô koment vil lîhte tûsent und vehtent alle ûf dich.
so come very likely thousand and fight all on thee.
war umbe wilt du tœten dich selben unde mich?
where for wilt thou kill thyself self and me?

375 Wir suln ze walde fliehen’ sprach Berhtunc von Mêrân.
We shall to wood flee’ spoke Berchtung of Meran.
‘du maht mit eilf gesellen niht tûsent man bestân,
‘thou mayst with eleven companions not thousand men attack,
unde habe wir danne ouch deheinen ganzen schilt.’
and have we then also no whole shield.’
mit jâmer sprach der Krieche ‘ich volg dir swes du wilt.’
with sorrow spoke the Greek ‘I follow thee in-whatever thou wilt.’

376 ‘Sô sul wir’ sprach der alte ‘ûf die burc ze Lilienport.
‘So shall we’ spoke the old-one ‘onto the castle at Lilienporte.
wir haben an den Kriechen begangen grôziu mort.’
we have on the Greeks committed great murders.’

‘ja enruochte ich’ sprach Wolf Dietrîch ‘und werden si mir holt,
‘yea not-cared I’ spoke Wolf Dietrich ‘if become they to-me favorable,
wær Kunstenopel mîn eigen und aller Kriechen golt.’
were Constantinople my own and all Greeks’ gold.’

‘Ich sage dir’ sprach der alte, ‘ich hân alles des genuoc, 377
‘I tell thee’ spoke the old-one, ‘I have of-all of-that enough,
des man hundert rittern ûf tavele ie getruoc.
of-what one to-hundred knights onto table ever carried.
des gibe ich dir dâ heime vil genuoc wol fünf jâr:
of-that give I to-thee there at-home very enough well five years:
welt aber ir iht mêre, daz bringet selbe dar.
(if)-will however you anything more, that bring self thither.

Die wîle uns wert diu spîse, diu lîpnar und der wîn, 378
The while to-us lasts the food, the provisions and the wine,
sô sul wir vor den vînden alles stürmens sicher sîn.
so shall we before the foes of-all storming safe be.
ist daz man uns besetzet, wir gemüen daz künicrîch.’
(if)-is that one us besieges, we trouble the kingdom.’
‘ûf der burc wil ich ersterben’ sprach Wolf Dietrîch.
‘on the castle will I die’ spoke Wolf Dietrich.

Si bewâgen sich der genge die naht unz an den tac. 379
They ventured themselves on-the going the night until to the day.
dô gienc in vor der alte, der sîner kinde phlac.
then went to-them before the old-one, who of-his children took-care.
si erstrichen daz gebirge, daz was et hôch genuoc:
they crossed the mountains, that was just high enough:
Berhtungen muoten sêre die ringe die er truoc.
Berchtung troubled sorely the rings which he wore.

380 ‘Du maht mir niht gevolgen’ alsô sprach hêr Dietrîch. —
‘Thou mayst me not follow’ so spoke sir Dietrich.—

‘ich enruoch waz mir geschæhe, hetest du ein künicrîch.’ —
‘I not-care what to-me happened, hadst thou a kingdom.’—

‘swîc’ sprach der junge ‘und nim vil rehte war:
‘be-silent’ spoke the young-one ‘and take very rightly heed:

ich sihe ein fiuwer blicken, dâ ligt wæn der vînde schar.
I see a fire gleam, there lies I-think the foes’ troop.

381 Ê ich ûf Lilienporte hin în kume geriten,
Before I onto Lilienporte thither in come ridden,

wærn ez niht guote friunde, mit in wurde gestriten.’
were they not good friends, with them would-be fought.’

‘entriuwen’ sprach ein ander, ‘ich sihe ouch dort ein lieht.
‘in-faith’ spoke an other, ‘I see also there a light.

sint ez die rehten vînde, so geniset ir einer niht.’
(if)-are they the right foes, so survives of-them one not.’

382 ‘Zwâre ich sol ersterben, ich besehe dan wer si sint.’
‘Truly I shall die, unless-I look then who they are.’

er spranc in sîner brünne spilnde alse ein kint
he sprang in his mail-shirt playing as a child

ze tal die hôhen lîten huop er sich vor in dan,
to dale the high slopes raised he himself before them thence,

daz im gevolgten kûme sîn einlif dienstman.
that him followed hardly his eleven ministerials.

383 Dô dûhten in ie cleine die ronen und ouch die graben:
Then seemed to-him ever small the fallen-trees and also the ditches:

ê si im ze helfe kâmen, er hete den strît erhaben.
before they to-him for help came, he had the battle begun.

Berhtunges süne gemeine nâch im die lîten spranc:
Berchtung's sons together after him the slopes sprang:

do ervorhten in die vînde, dâ sô manic brünne erklanc.
then feared them the foes, where so many-a mail-shirt rang.

Ê si sich ûf gerihten ze strîte al gelîch, 384
Before they themselves up raised for battle all alike,

dô hete ouch si erschrecket Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
then had also them frightened Wolf sir Dietrich.

si liezen bî den fiuwern ir halsberge unde ir ros:
they left by the fires their hauberks and their horses:

si vorhten niuwan des lîbes und entrunnen ûf ein mos.
they feared only for-the body and escaped onto a bog.

Fünfzic kastelâne si funden dâ stân, 385
Fifty castilians they found there stand,

der namen niuwan einlif die einlif dienstman.
of-them took only eleven the eleven ministerials.

den zwelften nam ouch selbe der Wolf Dietrîch.
the twelfth took also self the Wolf Dietrich.

si liezen dâ den vînden manegen halsberc wünniclîch.
they left there to-the foes many-a hauberk delightful.

Mit jâmer sprach der alte 'wir suln gên der veste varn. 386
With sorrow spoke the old-one 'we shall toward the fortress go.

wir vinden morgen geste, des müge wir niht bewarn.
we find tomorrow guests, that may we not guard-against.

aller mîner lande ich nie mêre geniezen mac:
of-all my lands I never more profit may:

man besitzt uns ûf der bürge, ê ez morgen werde tac.'
one besieges us on the castle, before it tomorrow become day.'

387 In was gelâget hiute; doch kômens ûf Lilienport.
To-them was lain-in-wait today; yet came-they onto Lilienporte.

vil schiere der wahtære vernam des meisters wort.
very soon the watchman heard the master's word.

ouch hôrte in ûf der zinne wol diu frouwe sîn:
also heard him on the battlement well the lady his:

si zelte durch die porten niuwan zehen kindelîn.
she counted through the gate only ten little-children.

388 Den eilften si dô frâgte 'Berhtunc, wâ'st unser her?'
The eleventh she then asked 'Berchtung, where-is our host?'

mit jâmer sprach der alte 'wir haben iezuo niht mêr.
with sorrow spoke the old-one 'we have now not more.

swaz uns ist erstorben, daz ist unklagelîch.
whatever to-us is died, that is unlamentable.

gehabe dich vil wol, frouwe: ez lebt noch Wolf Dietrîch.'
bear thyself very well, lady: there lives yet Wolf Dietrich.'

389 Si sprach vil klagelîche 'wâ sint nu mîniu kint?'
She spoke very lamentably 'where are now my children?'

mit zorne sprach der alte 'ich weiz wol wâ si sint.
with wrath spoke the old-one 'I know well where they are.

si habent wol vergolten ir tôdes herzensêr.
they have well repaid their death's heart-sore.

ich wirf dich über die mûre, gedenkst ir immer mêr.
I throw thee over the wall, (if)-rememberest-thou them ever more.

390 Swaz wir zwei klagen solten, daz wirt er eine klagen.
Whatever we two lament should, that will he alone lament.

nu trœste mînen hêrren, dem müeze wirz vertragen,
now comfort my lord, to-him may we-it pardon,

daz er der kinde tôde vergezze durch uns zwei.
that he of-the children's deaths forget for us two.

mich müet der jâmer immer, daz er sô lûte ob in schrei.'
me troubles the sorrow ever, that he so loudly over them cried.'

Sus volgete im diu frouwe, der kinde si vergaz. 391
Thus followed him the lady, of-the children she forgot.

verborgenlîchen tougen wurden ir ougen naz.
hidden secret became her eyes wet.

dô wart in der bürge diu klage unmâzlîch:
then became in the castle the lament immeasurable:

niemen klagte als sêre, als der Wolf Dietrîch.
no-one lamented as sorely, as the Wolf Dietrich.

Sus werte ir aller jâmer unz an den fünften tac. 392
Thus lasted of-them all sorrow until to the fifth day.

doch verklagten si die tôten, die niemen erwecken mac.
yet lamented-enough they the dead, whom no-one wake may.

an dem fünften morgen huop sich ein grôzer schal:
on the fifth morning raised itself a great noise:

von den argen vînden wart vol dâ berc unt tal
of the wicked foes became full there hill and dale

Geleit unde erfüllet, die burc al umbelegen. 393
Laid and filled, the castle all besieged.

si muosten von der veste der reise sich bewegen.
they must from the fortress of-the journey themselves renounce.

die wahter riefen lûte 'nu wacht und hüetet wol!
the watchmen called loudly 'now wake and guard well!

daz velt und daz gebirge ist allez vînde vol.'
the field and the mountains is all of-foes full.'

394 Do erschrac an sînem bette der fürste von Mêrân.
Then took-fright on his bed the prince of Meran.

dô trat er in daz venster und erkante manegen man,
then stepped he into the window and recognized many-a man,

vil manigen der geste, die fuorten frömdez dach.
very many-a-one of-the guests, who bore strange roof.

sîn herze erschrac vil sêre, dô er sô vil der geste ersach.
his heart took-fright very sorely, when he so many of-the guests saw.

395 Dô gienc er über daz bette, dâ sîn hêrre ûf lac.
Then went he over the bed, where his lord on lay.

den weckete er vil sanfte 'nu wol ûf, ez ist tac.
him woke he very softly 'now well up, it is day.

dîne bruodr uns habent besezzen, alrêrste geschiht uns wê:
thy brothers us have besieged, first-of-all happens to-us woe:

ez ligent vor mîner bürge fünf tûsent oder mê.'
there lie before my castle five thousand or more.'

396 Dô warf er einen mantel über sîne brust blôz.
Then threw he a mantle over his breast bare.

si trâten in daz venster, die menege sâhens grôz,
they stepped into the window, the multitude saw-they great,

die vor der mûre lâgen, die zwêne künege rîch:
who before the wall lay, the two kings rich:

'nu bin ich êrste in sorgen' sprach Wolf Dietrîch.
'now am I first in cares' spoke Wolf Dietrich.

Wolfdietrich X

X · WOLFDIETRICH RIDES OUT

The besieged hold off the attackers in sallies. At a parley Saben offers Berchtung his life for the castle and his young lord, and Berchtung refuses, and the siege lasts into a fourth year. Wolfdietrich resolves to seek help from King Ortnit of Lombardy, whose death no one there knows of, and Berchtung, failing to hold him back, gives him his father's horse Falcon and his father's arms. His mother gives him the shirt he was baptized in, he swears to take no wife before he frees Berchtung and his sons, Berchtung gives him thirty marks of gold, and he turns alone toward the besiegers.

397

'Swîc' sprach der alte 'und gehabe dich noch wol.
'Be-silent' spoke the old-one 'and bear thyself yet well.

sînes leides niemen sich ze übele gehaben sol.
of-his sorrow no-one himself too ill bear shall.

der man sol sînes liebes ouch niht sîn ze frô.
the man shall of-his joy also not be too glad.

swaz wir dar umbe tæten, sô wære im doch alsô.'
whatever we there for did, so were to-him yet so.'

398

Mit zorne sprach der junge 'sît mir got hât gegeben,
With wrath spoke the young-one 'since to-me God has given,

daz si kumen sint sô nâhen, sô wil ouch ich mîn leben
that they come are so near, so will also I my life

wâgen und mîn êre umb mîn künicrîch.
venture and my honor for my kingdom.

got lât mich niht verderben' sprach Wolf hêr Dieterîch.
God lets me not perish' spoke Wolf sir Dietrich.

399 Die in der bürge wâren, die rihten sich ze strît,
Who in the castle were, they prepared themselves for battle,

und was doch ungesperret ir tor ze aller zît.
and was yet unbarred their gate at all time.

si liezen nider die brucke und giengen für daz tor:
they let down the bridge and went before the gate:

swes si in der bürge luste, daz funden si dâ vor.
whatever them in the castle pleased, that found they there before.

400 Swie grôz ir menege wære, doch was ez ungelîch.
However great their multitude were, yet was it unequal.

dâ sigete ouch vil dicke Wolf Dietrîch.
there won also very often Wolf Dietrich.

von starker patalje huop sich vil ofte nôt.
from strong battle raised itself very often distress.

die vînde gestriten selten, ir belîbe wol zweinzic tôt.
the foes fought seldom, of-them remained well twenty dead.

401 Sus wart von den wirten der geste vil gevalt.
Thus was by the hosts of-the guests many felled.

die wunt dannen kâmen, die lâze ich ungezalt.
who wounded thence came, them leave I uncounted.

alsô erwerten die wirte den frömden gar,
so defended the hosts against-the strangers wholly,

daz dô durch sturmes willen kam deheiner dar.
that then for assault's sake came none thither.

402 Dô wart ein fride gemachet und ein gesprâchtac.
Then was a peace made and a parley-day.

Saben der teidinge und meister Berhtunc phlac.
Saben of-the negotiations and master Berchtung took-care.

‘ich râte dir daz beste’ sprach der ungetriuwe Saben,
‘I counsel thee the best’ spoke the unfaithful Saben,

‘des solt ouch du mir volgen, wilt du den lîp behaben.
‘in-that shalt also thou me follow, (if)-wilt thou the body keep.

Berhtunc, ich wil dir râten, und wilt du gerne leben, 403
Berchtung, I will thee counsel, if wilt thou gladly live,

du solt dîn junchêrren und die burc den künegen geben.’
thou shalt thy young-lord and the castle to-the kings give.’

‘nu enwelle got von himele’ sprach Berhtunc von Mêrân:
‘now not-will God of heaven’ spoke Berchtung of Meran:

‘er hât sich gar ze verre ûf die triuwe mîn verlân.’
‘he has himself wholly too far on the faith mine relied.’

Saben sprach ‘die künege zwên eide habent gesworn, 404
Saben spoke ‘the kings two oaths have sworn,

daz si daz velt iht rûmen, diu burc werd ê verlorn.
that they the field not vacate, the castle be before lost.

dich und dînen hêrren und elliu dîniu kint
thee and thy lord and all thy children

diu hæht man an die zinnen und die ûf der bürge sint.’
them hangs one on the battlements and who on the castle are.’

Mit jâmer sprach der alte ‘des muoz ich mich bewegen. 405
With sorrow spoke the old-one ‘of-that must I myself resign.

sô bin ich doch in triuwen und in êren tôt gelegen.’
so am I yet in faith and in honors dead lain.’

der fride niht langer werte, dô reit er wider în
the peace not longer lasted, then rode he back in

und sagete disiu mære dem lieben hêrren sîn.
and told these tidings to-the dear lord his.

406 Swes dô die künege swuoren, des liezens allez wâr.
Whatever then the kings swore, of-that made-they all true.

si lâgen vor der bürge unz in daz vierde jâr.
they lay before the castle until into the fourth year.

dô wart des jungen riuwe und ouch sîn jâmer grôz,
then became the young-one's rue and also his sorrow great,

daz er alsô sterben solte; des verligens in verdrôz.
that he so die should; of-the lying-idle him wearied.

407 Von sorge wart er wîse, als die jungen tuont.
From care became he wise, as the young do.

vil fruo an einem morgen er für Berhtungen stuont.
very early on a morning he before Berchtung stood.

dô sprach vil barmiclîchen Wolf hêr Dietrîch
then spoke very pitifully Wolf sir Dietrich

'mit ruowe erwirbet niemen êr noch künicrîch.'
'with rest wins no-one honor nor kingdom.'

408 'Nu sage an' sprach der alte, 'waz wilt du deich nu tuo?
'Now say on' spoke the old-one, 'what wilt thou that-I now do?

west ich wie ichz erwurbe, dâ hulf ich dir gerne zuo.'
knew I how I-it won, there helped I thee gladly to.'

mit jâmer sprach der Krieche 'got müeze dich bewarn:
with sorrow spoke the Greek 'God may thee guard:

ez ergê swie got welle, ich muoz leider von dir varn.'
it befall as God will, I must alas from thee go.'

409 Mit zorne sprach der alte 'nu enweist du war du solt.
With wrath spoke the old-one 'now not-knowest thou whither thou shalt.

daz du der rede erdenkest, ich wird dir nimmer holt.
that thou of-the speech thinkest, I become to-thee never favorable.

swelch vogel ze fruo fliuget ûz dem neste sîn,
whatever bird too early flies out-of the nest its,

dem mac wol misselingen: als geschiht dir, hêrre mîn.'
to-it may well miscarry: as happens to-thee, lord mine.'

Mit zühten sprach der Krieche 'mir sint mîn vedern lanc 410
With courtesies spoke the Greek 'to-me are my feathers long

und sint alsô gewahsen, daz si mich niht dunken kranc.
and are so grown, that they me not seem weak.

der sterkist und der lengist ich undr iu allen bin:
the strongest and the tallest I among you all am:

als mich diu sorge twinget, ich gewinne ouch lîhte sin.
as me the care constrains, I win also perhaps sense.

Erloube mir die reise. war umbe tuost du daz, 411
Allow me the journey. where for dost thou that,

sol ich bî dir verderben? waz ist dir dester baz?
shall I by thee perish? what is to-thee the better?

ich wolte gerne lœsen dich und dîniu kint,
I would gladly free thee and thy children,

diu durch mich in die sorge und angest komen sint.
who for me into the care and fear come are.

Dô sprach der getriuwe 'wes hâst du dir gedâht, 412
Then spoke the faithful-one 'what hast thou to-thyself thought,

daz du dich underwindest, daz du niht volenden maht?
that thou thyself undertakest, what thou not accomplish mayst?

und daz du dirz gedenkest, dar an tuost unwitziclîch.'
and that thou to-thyself-it thinkest, there on dost unwisely.'

'waz touc et unversuochet?' sprach Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
'what avails just untried?' spoke Wolf sir Dietrich.

413 ‘Ich wil die welt durchrîten und dar zuo elliu lant,
‘I will the world ride-through and there to all lands,

mir werde ûf diser erde eteswâ ein künec bekant,
to-me become on this earth somewhere a king known,

der sô gewaltic heize, des dienst wil ich ouch sîn,
who so mighty is-called, his service will I also be,

daz er mir rehtes helfe an den argen bruodern mîn.
that he me of-right help against the wicked brothers mine.

414 Hilft er mirs betwingen, dar umb wird ich sîn man.
(If)-helps he me-them subdue, there for become I his man.

ich wil ein teil des landes durch sînen willen enphân.’
I will a part of-the land for his sake receive.’

‘weiz got’ sprach der alte, ‘du rîtest manegen tac:
‘knows God’ spoke the old-one, ‘thou ridest many-a day:

den künic weiz ich nindert, der dir gehelfen mac.’
the king know I nowhere, who thee help may.’

415 ‘Swîc’ sprach der Krieche, ‘wie möhte daz geschehen?
‘Be-silent’ spoke the Greek, ‘how might that happen?

ich wil ez niht gelouben, ich wil ez ê besehen.
I will it not believe, I will it before look.

waz touc daz leben dem kinde, ez ensî ouch muotes frî?
what avails the life to-the child, unless-it be also of-spirit free?

ob du indert keinen wizzest, den sage mir wâ der sî.’
if thou anywhere any knowest, him tell me where he be.’

416 ‘Sît du niht wilt erwinden’ sprach Berhtunc von Mêrân,
‘Since thou not wilt desist’ spoke Berchtung of Meran,

‘du wellest helfe suochen, sô weiz ich einen man:
‘thou wilt help seek, so know I a man:

wær er uns niht ze verre, er lôste uns hie mit her.'
were he to-us not too far, he freed us here with host.'

'den selben wil ich suochen, und wære er über mer.
'the same will I seek, if were he over sea.

Den solt du mir zeigen und sîn lant wâ ez lît.' 417
Him shalt thou me show and his land where it lies.'

'daz heizet Lamparten und heizt er Ortnît.
'that is-called Lombardy and is-called he Ortnit.

kein künec mac sich im glîchen, sô mehtic ist sîn her.
no king may himself to-him liken, so mighty is his host.

ein frouwen mit gewalte nam er eim künege über mer.
a lady with force took he from-a king over sea.

Der selben küniginne gehalf im ein getwerc: 418
To-the same queen helped him a dwarf:

im ist vil wol kündic swaz decket tal unt berc.
to-him is very well known whatever covers dale and hill.

swes ouch den künec gelustet, daz muoz benamen ergân:
whatever also the king pleases, that must surely befall:

swâ gegen er sich geneiget, daz mac vor im niht gestân.'
wherever toward he himself inclines, that may before him not stand.'

Mit zühten sprach der Krieche 'nu erloub mir daz ich var. 419
With courtesies spoke the Greek 'now allow me that I go.

ob ichs halt niht bedörfte, doch sô wolte ich dar,
if I-them even not needed, yet so would I thither,

daz ich den künec gesæhe, von dem ich hœr wunder sagen.'
that I the king saw, of whom I hear wonder tell.'

si enwesten aber leider daz in der wurm het hin getragen.
they not-knew however alas that him the worm had away carried.

420 Mit witzen sprach der alte ‘diu reise ist dir ze grôz.
With wits spoke the old-one ‘the journey is for-thee too great.

du vindest nindert strâze noch keine stîge blôz.
thou findest nowhere road nor any path bare.

du kumest ouch harte dicke daz du mir der wârheit gihst:
thou comest also very often that thou to-me the truth avowest:

du muost sehs wochen rîten, daz du lant noch liute sihst.
thou must six weeks ride, that thou land nor people seest.

421 Ez heizt diu Romante, daz lant noch liute enhât.
It is-called the Romante, that land nor people not-has.

du vindest nindert huobe noch acker wol besât.
thou findest nowhere farmstead nor acre well sown.

hebst du dich ûf die strâze, kint, ez geriuwet dich.’
(if)-raisest thou thyself onto the road, child, it rues thee.’

dô sprach aber der junge ‘hêrre meister, trœstet mich.’
then spoke again the young-one ‘lord master, comfort me.’

422 ‘Jâ muoz ich’ sprach der alte ‘dar umb die reise wern.
‘Yea must I’ spoke the old-one ‘there for the journey forbid.

du maht dich ûf der strâze vor hunger niht ernern.
thou mayst thyself on the road from hunger not nourish.

gelîche den vihes herden dâ gênt die wilden leun.’
like the cattle’s herds there go the wild lions.’

‘du maht mir’ sprach der junge ‘von tieren niht gedreun.’
‘thou mayst me’ spoke the young-one ‘with beasts not threaten.’

423 ‘Sît du niht wilt belîben’ sprach Berhtunc von Mêrân,
‘Since thou not wilt remain’ spoke Berchtung of Meran,

‘sô gibe ich dir vil gerne, daz ich dir behalten hân:
‘so give I to-thee very gladly, what I for-thee kept have:

Valken den vil guoten, den wîln dîn vater reit:
Falcon the very good, which formerly thy father rode:

in manegem volcwîge ze sige dar ûf er streit.
in many-a battle to victory there on he fought.

Sînen helm, sîne brünne, sînen schilt und ouch sîn swert, 424
His helmet, his mail-shirt, his shield and also his sword,

daz hân ich dir behalten, ob dîn wille des nu gert.'
that have I for-thee kept, if thy will of-it now desires.'

'den schilt man entriuwen an mîm halse nimer gesiht.
'the shield one in-faith on my neck never sees.

war umb solt ich den füeren? mir wart sîn ampt noch niht.
where for should I it carry? to-me became its office yet not.

Ein schilt kius ich mir selbe' sprach der junge man. 425
A shield choose I for-myself self' spoke the young man.

'ich wil durch übermüete elliu wilde tier bestân.
'I will for arrogance all wild beasts attack.

man vermisset sîn doch lützel, swelhez dâ wirt erslagen.
one misses it yet little, whichever there is slain.

swelch sich wert aller lengist, des sigel wil ich tragen.
whichever itself defends all longest, its seal will I bear.

Ich wil des swern eide, oder ich gelige tôt, 426
I will of-that swear oaths, or I lie dead,

daz ich durch sîne êre immer mêre ûz aller nôt
that I for its honor ever more out-of all distress

wil sîn genôzen helfen und wil in triuwe swern.'
will its peers help and will to-them faith swear.'

mit jâmer sprach der alte 'nu müez dich got mir nern.
with sorrow spoke the old-one 'now may thee God for-me save.

427 Und wilt du niht belîben, vil lieber hêrre mîn,
If wilt thou not remain, very dear lord mine,
ganc balde und nim urloup von der lieben muoter dîn!'
go quickly and take leave from the dear mother thine!'
dô giengen sie dâ beide dâ er sîn muoter vant.
then went they there both where he his mother found.
mit jâmer sprach der alte 'iwer sun wil in diu lant.'
with sorrow spoke the old-one 'your son will into the lands.'

428 'Nu enwelle got von himele' sprach dô diu künigîn.
'Now not-will God of heaven' spoke then the queen.
'er sol vil vaste wallen, liebiu muoter mîn.'
'he shall very hard go-on-pilgrimage, dear mother mine.'
si sprach 'sun unde hêrre, wem lâst du danne mich?'
she spoke 'son and lord, to-whom leavest thou then me?'
'mînem meister Berhtunge wil ich bevelhen dich.'
'to-my master Berchtung will I commend thee.'

429 'Got müeze dir behalten, vil liebez kint, dîn leben.
'God may for-thee keep, very dear child, thy life.
swaz ich dir hân behalten, daz wil ich dir nu geben.
whatever I for-thee have kept, that will I to-thee now give.
nu muoz ich immer weinen mîn leit ze grôzem schaden.'
now must I ever weep my sorrow to great harm.'
si sprach zuo dem jungen 'nu reiche mir mîn laden.'
she spoke to the young-one 'now hand me my chest.'

430 Ir herze wart durchbrünstic, dô si diu kleider vant.
Her heart became burnt-through, when she the clothes found.
si sprach zir lieben kinde 'nu habe dir ditz gewant.'
she spoke to-her dear child 'now have for-thyself this garment.'

swie und si dâ geweinte, sîn ouge wart nie naz:
however and she there wept, his eye became never wet:

daz gewant begunde er schouwen: 'muoter, zwiu'st mir daz?
the garment began he behold: 'mother, to-what-is to-me that?

Ich næm vil michels gerner ein herten halsberc lieht. 431
I would-take very much more-gladly a hard hauberk bright.

gip ez swem du wellest, muoter, ich wil sîn niht.'
give it to-whom thou wilt, mother, I will it not.'

'jâ solt du dran gelouben, sun, ez ist dir guot,
'yea shalt thou therein believe, son, it is to-thee good,

swâ du wilt einic rîten; ze kindisch ist dîn muot.'
wherever thou wilt alone ride; too childish is thy spirit.'

'Jâ bin ich dem gewante gar ein ze grôzer kneht: 432
'Yea am I for-the garment wholly a too great boy:

an lenge und an der wîte ist ez mir nindert reht.'
in length and in the width is it to-me nowise right.'

si sprach 'nu gip mirz widere, tuot ez dir indert wê.
she spoke 'now give me-it back, (if)-does it to-thee anywhere woe.

als liep ich dir ie wurde, lâ sehen wie ez dir stê.'
as dear I to-thee ever became, let see how it to-thee stand.'

Dô volgete er der muoter und nam ez in die hant. 433
Then followed he the mother and took it into the hand.

dô meinte er daz im wære ze wênic daz gewant.
then thought he that to-him were too small the garment.

die wât er an sich sloufte, dô warts im gar ze wît:
the raiment he on himself slipped, then became-it to-him wholly too wide:

er sprach 'nu sage mir, muoter, ist ez guot für keinen strît?'
he spoke 'now tell me, mother, is it good for any battle?'

434 Si sprach ‘ez wære als lange niht gelegen in mîner laden.
She spoke ‘it were so long not lain in my chest.

dir kan fiur noch wazzer noch anders niht geschaden.
thee can fire nor water nor else anything harm.

swâ ez hin gereichet, dâ wirst ouch nimmer wunt,
wherever it thither reaches, there becomest also never wounded,

und bist vor allem wâfen dar inne sicher unde gesunt.
and art from all weapons there in safe and sound.

435 Du hâst über dîn herze der sælden tach geslouft.
Thou hast over thy heart of-the blisses’ roof slipped.

daz sint diu selben kleider, dâ du inne bist getouft:
those are the same clothes, where thou in art baptized:

du solt an got gelouben, sô wirt dir dîn künicrîch.’
thou shalt in God believe, so becomes to-thee thy kingdom.’

‘nu geruoche er mich behüeten’ sprach Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
‘now deign he me guard’ spoke Wolf sir Dietrich.

436 Dô hiez er im gewinnen sîns vater sturmgewant.
Then bade he for-him get his father’s battle-gear.

sîn muoter vil geweinte, dô si im die riemen bant.
his mother much wept, when she to-him the straps bound.

si wâren alle verzwîvelt an dem küenen degen hêr
they were all despairing of the bold thane lordly

und wolten ouch des wænen, si gesæhen in nimmer mêr.
and would also of-that think, they saw him never more.

437 Alsô man dô mit jâmer in der bürge innen wart,
When one then with sorrow in the castle aware became,

daz der junchêrre wolt ûf die senenden vart,
that the young-lord would onto the longing journey,

die alten zuo den jungen mohten weinen niht verlân:
the old to the young might weeping not forgo:

ez trûrte ab niemen als sêre als sîn einlif dienstman.
there mourned however no-one as sorely as his eleven ministerials.

Der alte sprach zem jungen 'nu gedenke an unsriu jâr. 438
The old-one spoke to-the young-one 'now think of our years.

kumst du ze frömden liuten, so vergizzest unser gar.
(if)-comest thou to foreign people, so forgettest-thou us wholly.

in dîner kindes jugende geliebt dir lîhte ein wîp.
in thy child's youth pleases thee perhaps a woman.

dâ von sô hebet dich ringe, und verliesen wir den lîp.'
there from so raise thyself lightly, if lose we the body.'

'Du getrouwest mir vil übele' sprach Wolf Dietrîch. 439
'Thou trustest me very ill' spoke Wolf Dietrich.

'der mir die schœnste gæbe und tûsent künicrîch
'who to-me the fairest gave and thousand kingdoms

und dar zuo lant und bürge, swaz ir in der welte sint,
and there to lands and castles, whatever of-them in the world are,

ich wil nimmer wîp gewinnen, ich lœs dich ê und dîniu kint.'
I will never woman win, I free thee rather and thy children.'

'Des gip mir dîne triuwe' sprach Berhtunc von Mêrân, 440
'Of-that give me thy faith' spoke Berchtung of Meran,

'daz du der niht enbrechest.' dô wart ein eit getân:
'that thou it not breakest.' then was an oath done:

den swuor er ûf sîm swerte. den eit er stæte lie:
it swore he on his sword. the oath he steadfast let:

swie guote state ers hête, den eit gebrach er nie.
however good opportunity he-it had, the oath broke he never.

441 ‘Ich sage dir’ sprach der alte, ‘mîn armuot diu ist starc.
‘I tell thee’ spoke the old-one, ‘my poverty it is strong.

doch hân ich dir behalten goldes drîzic marc,
yet have I for-thee kept of-gold thirty marks,

ob dich got gesendet under eines wirtes dach,
if thee God sends under a host’s roof,

daz du doch des êrsten habest dâ mite gemach.
that thou yet of-the first have there with ease.

442 Nu solt dich niht entrihten, dîn ros ist alze snel.
Now shalt thyself not slacken, thy horse is all-too swift.

an dem satele hanget wînes zwei parel
on the saddle hang of-wine two flasks

und ouch von jegerspise anderhalp ein bulge vol.
and also of hunter’s-food on-the-other-side a bag full.

swenn dir des zerinnet, got dich berâten sol.
whenever to-thee of-it runs-out, God thee provide shall.

443 Ich enmac dir vor der porte ze keinen staten komen.
I may to-thee before the gate to no advantage come.

rît als dich got bewîse, du hâst ein dichs an genomen.
ride as thee God guides, thou hast a thing on taken.

als man dich frâgt der mære, sô du rîtest für daz tor,
as one thee asks of-the tidings, when thou ridest before the gate,

sô sprich “ich binz ein hüeter und sol wachen hînt hie vor.”
so speak “I am-it a guard and shall wake tonight here before.”

444 Welnt si dich lîhte vâhen, sô bist ouch du niht kranc.
(If)-will they thee perhaps catch, so art also thou not weak.

du erwerst wol dînen mantel âne ir aller danc.’
thou defendest well thy mantle without their all consent.’

dô man im sînen Valken ûf den hof gezôch,
when one to-him his Falcon onto the court led,

ein mensche ie daz ander vor grôzem jâmer flôch.
a person ever the other for great sorrow fled.

Vor jâmer mohte niemen den andern sehen an. 445
For sorrow might no-one the other look at.

dô küsten in vil dicke sîn einlif dienstman.
then kissed him very often his eleven ministerials.

si wurfen ûf die porte: ir jâmer wart vil grôz:
they threw up the gate: their sorrow became very great:

als fuor er über die brücke sîner kindelîne blôz.
so went he over the bridge of-his little-children bare.

Dô er alsô balde von der veste reit, 446
When he so quickly from the fortress rode,

im sâhen nâch die sînen, den was von herzen leit.
him looked after the his-own, to-them was from heart loath.

dô kêrte er gegen den vînden einem degene gelîch:
then turned he toward the foes to-a thane alike:

alrêrst wil in die sorge Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
first-of-all will into the care Wolf sir Dietrich.

Wolfdietrich XI

XI · ROUGH ELSE

Wolfdietrich rides through the enemy camp, crosses the wilderness, and abandons his armor when his horse tires. By the sea he sleeps under a linden, and a hairy sea-woman takes his sword and offers him three kingdoms to marry her. He refuses; she sheds her scales and stands transformed in beauty, and when he pleads his oath she asks instead for one of his brothers, whom he promises her. She then shows him a root that restores his strength and his horse's, and points him toward Lombardy.

447 Dô wart ein michel frâgen wer er wære,
Then became a great asking who he were,

und von wanne er rîte. er sprach zen huotæren
and from whence he rode. he spoke to-the guards

'ich hüete vor der bürge, diu was iezuo ûf getân:
'I guard before the castle, it was now up opened:

Wolf Dietrîch wil entrinnen und sîn einlif dienstman.'
Wolf Dietrich will escape and his eleven ministerials.'

448 Dô reit er durch die vînde daz in dâ niemen vienc.
Then rode he through the foes that him there no-one caught.

swer aber im ze nâhen inder an dem wege gienc,
whoever however to-him too near anywhere on the way went,

den lazte er als unschône, daz ern nihtes mêre enbat:
him hurt he so unbeautifully, that he-him nothing more asked:

man truoc in danne tôten, er kam nimmer von der stat.
one carried him then dead, he came never from the spot.

449 Dô reit er vor dem walde die naht unz an den tac.
Then rode he before the wood the night until to the day.

der huote gên den vînden er alters eine phlac.
the watch toward the foes he all alone took-care.

des tages wol zweinzic tôten sant er in in daz her:
in-the day well twenty dead sent he to-them into the host:

dô sis innen wurden, si fluhen âne wer.
when they-of-it aware became, they fled without defense.

'Nu müeze ez gote erbarmen' sprach der ungetriuwe Saben, 450
'Now may it to-God pity' spoke the unfaithful Saben,

'daz wir sô lasterlîchen alle hie gehüetet haben,
'that we so shamefully all here guarded have,

daz uns ist entrunnen Wolf Dietrîch:
that from-us is escaped Wolf Dietrich:

er gewinnet lîhte widere alters ein sîn künicrîch.'
he wins perhaps back all alone his kingdom.'

Dô kêrte er ûf die strâze des andern morgens fruo. 451
Then turned he onto the road of-the second morning early.

er wolte gên Lamparten, dâ rihte ouch er sich zuo.
he would toward Lombardy, there directed also he himself to.

den tac unz an den âbent er vaste für sich reit:
the day until to the evening he hard before himself rode:

vil schiere wart er irre, des muoste im wesen leit.
very soon became he astray, of-that must to-him be loath.

Dô twanc in des der âbent, er moht niht fürbaz. 452
Then constrained him in-that the evening, he might not further.

daz er dar hete gefüeret, ein lützel er des az:
what he thither had carried, a little he of-it ate:

er enmohte von der müede, als manegem noch geschiht.
he not-might from the weariness, as to-many-a-one still happens.

swie wê der slâf im tæte, doch sô slief er allez niht.
however woe the sleep to-him did, yet so slept he all not.

453 Dô machete er ein fiuwer, daz übr al den walt erschein.
Then made he a fire, that over all the wood shone.

die ronen ungefüege truoc er dar alters ein.
the fallen-trees monstrous carried he thither all alone.

do versuochte er vil des wildes durch sînen tumben sin:
then tried he many of-the game for his foolish mind:

vil gern het ers bestanden, deheinz bestuont aber in.
very gladly had he-them attacked, none attacked however him.

454 An dem dritten morgen dô zôch er fürbaz,
On the third morning then drew he further,

swie wê diu reise im tæte, wie selten er vergaz,
however woe the journey to-him did, how seldom he forgot,

er gedâhte an Berhtunge, sînen meister von Mêrân:
he thought of Berchtung, his master of Meran:

er bevalch gote vil dicke sîn einlif dienstman.
he commended to-God very often his eleven ministerials.

455 Unz an den fünften morgen der küene degen reit.
Until to the fifth morning the bold thane rode.

die strâze und ouch die stîge er vil gar vermeit.
the road and also the paths he very wholly shunned.

aller hande wildes sach er vil manege schar.
of-all kinds of-game saw he very many-a troop.

sîn ros begunde müeden, des wart er trûric gar.
his horse began tire, of-that became he sad wholly.

456 Dô muote in harte sêre sîn starkiu arbeit.
Then troubled him very sorely his strong toil.

an allen sînen freuden was im widerseit.
in all his joys was to-him challenged.

in begreif grôziu swære, des enkunde er niht bewarn,
him seized great heaviness, of-that could he not guard,

daz er in der wilde muost âne strâze varn.
that he in the wild must without road go.

'Nu müeze ez gote erbarmen' sprach der Wolf Dieterîch, 457
'Now may it to-God pity' spoke the Wolf Dietrich,

'ich lâze in disem walde allez mîn künicrîch.'
'I leave in this wood all my kingdom.'

dô zôch er abe die brünne und warfs ûf einen ron.
then drew he off the mail-shirt and threw-it onto a fallen-tree.

mit trûriclîchem muote sô schiet er dar von.
with sorrowful spirit so parted he there from.

'Owê' sprach der Krieche 'wie sol ich mich ernern? 458
'Alas' spoke the Greek 'how shall I myself nourish?

ich mac mich alsô blôzer der vînde niht erwern.
I may myself so bare of-the foes not defend.

mînes vater erbe wartet mir niht mêr.
my father's inheritance awaits me not more.

wem sol ich dich nu lâzen?' sprach der künic hêr.
to-whom shall I thee now leave?' spoke the king lordly.

Harte barmiclîche er von dem geserwe flôch 459
Very pitifully he from the armor fled

über ronen und über steine. sîn ros er mit im zôch.
over fallen-trees and over stones. his horse he with him drew.

dô hete er im der müede vil gerne gemachet buoz:
then had he for-it the weariness very gladly made amends:

wol drîer raste lenge gienc er neben im ze fuoz.
well three leagues' length went he beside it on foot.

460 Mit stecken und mit ruoten sluoc er im manegen slac.
With sticks and with rods struck he it many-a blow.

von hunger und von müede daz ros im dâ erlac:
from hunger and from weariness the horse to-him there lay-down:

im mohte niht gehelfen, swaz er im slege sluoc:
to-him might nothing help, whatever he to-it of-blows struck:

sô liep was im sîn Valke, daz er den satel truoc.
so dear was to-him his Falcon, that he the saddle carried.

461 Dô bant er in vil vaste ûf den rucken sîn.
Then bound he it very fast onto the back his.

er kam ûf ein gebirge, dâ lûht im der sunnen schîn.
he came onto a mountain, there shone to-him the sun's shine.

da erhôrte er eine stimme diu vil lûte erschal,
there heard he a voice which very loudly resounded,

daz ir aldâ antwurte beidiu berc unt tal.
that to-it there answered both hill and dale.

462 'Sô ungehiurem ruofe wart nie niht mêre gelîch.
'To-so monstrous call was never anything more like.

ich wæn ditz sî diu helle' sprach Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
I think this be the hell' spoke Wolf sir Dietrich.

'nu hân ich leider niemen, der mir diu mære ervar.
'now have I alas no-one, who for-me the tidings finds-out.

nu ergê mir swie got welle, ich muoz et selbe dar.
now befall me as God will, I must just self thither.

463 Ich wæn wol daz die tiuvel mir hie vil nâhen sint.
I think well that the devils to-me here very near are.

ich hœr Lûcifern schrîen und elliu sîniu kint.'
I hear Lucifer cry and all his children.'

sîn ros daz treip er nidere die lîten hin ze tal:
his horse that drove he down the slopes thither to dale:

vor hunger und vor durste si bêdiu tâten manegen val.
for hunger and for thirst they both did many-a fall.

Mit jâmer sprach der Krieche 'got mir ein stîc bescher, 464
With sorrow spoke the Greek 'God for-me a path grant,

dâ ich den tiuvel vinde! swie kleine ab sî mîn wer,
where I the devil find! however small however be my defense,

man sol mir daz gelouben, ich muoz den tiuvel sehen:
one shall me that believe, I must the devil see:

sol aber ich nu ersterben, daz muoz alhie beschehen.'
shall however I now die, that must here happen.'

Die lîten zôch er nidere, ein wazzer er ersach. 465
The slopes drew he down, a water he saw.

'wâfen' sprach der Krieche, 'wie ein ungefüeger bach!'
'alarm' spoke the Greek, 'how a monstrous brook!'

die ungefüegen helle und die tiuvel dier dâ vant,
the monstrous hell and the devils which-he there found,

die wârn des meres ünde und sluogen an die steinwant.
those were of-the sea waves and struck on the rock-wall.

Mit vallen und mit strûchen sô kam er an den sant 466
With falling and with stumbling so came he onto the sand

ûf die ebenen erde nider an daz lant.
onto the even earth down to the land.

dâ stuont ein grüene linde, dar undr ein anger was:
there stood a green linden, there under a meadow was:

im gienc unz an die gürtel die bluomen und daz gras.
to-him went until to the belt the flowers and the grass.

467 Ez gap gesmac vil süezen die rôsen und der klê.
It gave smell very sweet the roses and the clover.
'ôwol mich' sprach der Krieche, 'swie halt ez mir ergê,
'oh-well me' spoke the Greek, 'however even it to-me befall,
got hât mînem rosse weide alhie beschert:
God has for-my horse pasture here granted:
mir ist vil deste sanfter daz ez sich ernert.
to-me is very the gentler that it itself nourishes.

468 Ez wirt hie von dem anger fürbaz niht gezogen.
It is here from the meadow further not drawn.
nu wil ich ouch hie slâfen ûf mînem satelbogen.
now will I also here sleep on my saddle-bow.
sol ich vor hunger sterben, sô lig ich hie lieber tôt
(if)-shall I for hunger die, so lie I here rather dead
dan ûf der bœsen erde: ditz gras ist rôsen rôt.
than on the evil earth: this grass is rose red.

469 Sît ich die grüenen linden und den anger funden hân,
Since I the green linden and the meadow found have,
(ich enmac vor hungers nœte weder rîten noch gân)
(I may for hunger's distress neither ride nor go)
wâ möhte ich baz ersterben? ez ist hie sô wunniclîch.'
where might I better die? it is here so delightful.'
do entslief in senenden sorgen der Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
then fell-asleep in longing cares the Wolf sir Dietrich.

470 Der durst und ouch der hunger het im nâch benomen den lîp.
The thirst and also the hunger had from-him nearly taken the body.
ûz des meres grunde gienc ein ungehiurez wîp:
out-of the sea's bottom went a monstrous woman:

si truoc an ir lîbe von schuopen eine hût.
she wore on her body of scales a hide.

si sach ouch dem gelîche sam si wære des tiuvels brût.
she looked also to-it like as-if she were the devil's bride.

Mit langem wazzermiese si gar bewahsen was, 471
With long water-moss she wholly overgrown was,

als in dem wazzer wahset vil ungefüegez gras.
as in the water grows very monstrous grass.

ir hiengen von dem kinne die granen unz ûf den fuoz.
to-her hung from the chin the whiskers until onto the foot.

swie ungestalt si wære, si het dannoch senften gruoz.
however misshapen she were, she had yet gentle greeting.

Si was an allen enden vil slîmic unde naz. 472
She was at all ends very slimy and wet.

ir hâr gienc über die versen und dannoch fürbaz.
her hair went over the heels and yet further.

ir was diu ougengruobe wol einer spannen wît,
to-her was the eye-socket well a span wide,

wol zweier vinger tiefe, aldâ daz ouge lît.
well two fingers deep, where the eye lies.

Ir munt was als ein schaffel, ir zene wol spannen lanc, 473
Her mouth was as a tub, her teeth well span long,

ir füeze als ein schûvel: vil unsælic was ir ganc.
her feet as a shovel: very unblessed was her gait.

ir was ouch ir stirne wol einer ellen breit.
to-her was also her forehead well an ell broad.

dô si den degen wacte, daz was im vil leit.
when she the thane woke, that was to-him very loath.

474 Si trat über den Kriechen und zôch im ûz sîn swert.
She stepped over the Greek and drew from-him out his sword.

si sprach 'nu weiz et niemen wes du hâst begert.
she spoke 'now knows just no-one what thou hast desired.

du suochest âventiure' sprach daz wilde wîp:
thou seekest adventure' spoke the wild woman:

'er wær doch harte übele, swer dir nu næme dînen lîp.
'it were yet very ill, whoever from-thee now took thy body.

475 Nu hâst in dîner jugende vil wünneclîchiu lîde.
Now hast in thy youth very delightful limbs.

west ich obe du edel wærest, ich gæb dir gerne fride.'
knew I whether thou noble were, I would-give thee gladly peace.'

sîn swert daz barcs vil schiere, wan daz kund si wol.
his sword that hid-she very soon, for that could she well.

si verbarc sich selbe hinder eines boumes hol.
she hid herself self behind a tree's hollow.

476 Dô der Krieche erwachte und des swertes niht ensach,
When the Greek awoke and the sword not saw,

dô want er sîne hende, vil barmiclîche er sprach
then wrung he his hands, very pitifully he spoke

'weiz got, mir sint diebe hie nâhen bî gewesen.
'knows God, to-me are thieves here near by been.

fund ich noch iht gehiures, sô möhte ich noch wol genesen.'
found I yet anything gentle, so might I yet well survive.'

477 Dô nam er sîne brieve mit jâmer in die hant.
Then took he his letters with sorrow into the hand.

alle sîne swære er dar ane geschriben vant.
all his heaviness he there on written found.

diu frouwe lîse hôrte, unz daz er gar gelas
the lady softly listened, until that he wholly read

allez daz an dem brieve von im geschriben was.
all that on the letter of him written was.

Dô alle sîne swære gelas Wolf Dietrîch, 478
When all his heaviness read Wolf Dietrich,

do gesprach ûz dem boume diu küniginne rîch.
then spoke out-of the tree the queen rich.

mit gremelîchem muote diu küniginne sprach
with grim spirit the queen spoke

'wer hât dir erloubet ditz ligen und den gemach?'
'who has thee allowed this lying and the ease?'

Vil schiere blicte er umbe: dô diu frouwe im wart erkant, 479
Very soon looked he around: when the lady to-him became known,

dô viel im vor vorhten der brief ûz der hant.
then fell to-him for fears the letter out-of the hand.

der Krieche sprach mit vorhten 'waz mac ez dir geschaden?
the Greek spoke with fears 'what may it thee harm?

ich bin mit ungemache an dise stat geladen.
I am with hardship to this place brought.

Du maht mit senften worten mir wol sprechen zuo, 480
Thou mayst with gentle words to-me well speak to,

und lâz mich des geniezen, daz ich dir nihtes tuo.
and let me of-it profit, that I to-thee nothing do.

ist aber diu grüene linde und diser anger dîn?'
is however the green linden and this meadow thine?'

'jâ er ist mîn eigen' sprach diu künigîn.
'yea it is my own' spoke the queen.

481 ‘Daz ich hie hân geslâfen, daz lâzet âne zorn,
‘That I here have slept, that let without wrath,
und helfet mir gerihtes, ich hân mîn swert verlorn.
and help me of-justice, I have my sword lost.
daz wart mir ûz der scheide gezogen dô ich dâ lac.’
that was from-me out-of the scabbard drawn when I there lay.’
si sprach ‘ich hilf dir gerne, swes ich dir gehelfen mac.
she spoke ‘I help thee gladly, in-whatever I thee help may.

482 Und hetest du iemen friunde, dir wurde lîhte baz.
If hadst thou any friends, to-thee would-be perhaps better.
ich sihe wol’ sprach diu frouwe, ‘dir gewirret etewaz.
I see well’ spoke the lady, ‘thee troubles something.
nu sage’ sprach diu frouwe, ‘waz ist aber dîn nôt?
now say’ spoke the lady, ‘what is however thy distress?
du hâst gesundez herze und lîst doch schiere tôt.
thou hast sound heart and liest yet soon dead.

483 Ez ist doch vil übele, ob du verderben solt.
It is yet very ill, if thou perish shouldst.
ich trowet dir wol helfen, wær ich dir anders holt.’
I trusted thee well to-help, were I to-thee otherwise favorable.’
‘mir gewirret an dem herzen noch an dem lîbe niht:
‘me troubles in the heart nor in the body anything:
ez kumt von arbeite, daz man mich als blœden siht.
it comes from toil, that one me so weak sees.

484 Got, sît ich sol ersterben, sô lâz ez schiere sîn!
God, since I shall die, so let it soon be!
iedoch genæse ich lîhte, het ich spîse unde wîn.
yet would-survive I perhaps, had I food and wine.

ze mîner erzenîe hœrt lützel meisterschaft:
to my medicine belongs little mastery:

der durst und ouch der hunger benimt mir mîne kraft.'
the thirst and also the hunger takes-from me my strength.'

'Ich erkenne wol die salben, die dîn herze haben sol. 485
'I know well the salves, which thy heart have shall.

drîzic tûsent ritter die ernerte ich eine wol.'
thirty thousand knights them saved I alone well.'

mit jâmer sprach der Krieche 'sîstu ein gehiure wîp.
with sorrow spoke the Greek '(if)-be-thou a gentle woman.

und ob du an got geloubest, so erner mir mînen lîp.'
and if thou in God believest, so save for-me my body.'

'Mir ist vil unmære, ob du tôter hie gelîst. 486
'To-me is very indifferent, whether thou dead here liest.

mîn helfe frumt dir kleine, du sagest mir wer du sîst.'
my help profits thee little, thou tellest me who thou be.'

'mîn vater was ein Krieche und was ein künic rîch:
'my father was a Greek and was a king rich:

er saz ûf Kunstenopele und hiez Huge Dietrîch.
he sat on Constantinople and was-called Hug Dietrich.

Nu habent mich verstôzen die argen bruoder mîn.' 487
Now have me cast-out the wicked brothers mine.'

'daz habe ich wol gehœret' sprach diu künigîn.
'that have I well heard' spoke the queen.

'alle mîne helde ich von in verlorn hân.
'all my heroes I through them lost have.

si habent mir ouch besezzen mîn einlif dienstman.
they have for-me also besieged my eleven ministerials.

488 Nie mêre ichz überwinde, ligent si ze Kriechen tôt.'
Never more I-it overcome, (if)-lie they in Greece dead.'

si sprach 'wilt du mir volgen, si kument wol ûz der nôt.
she spoke '(if)-wilt thou me follow, they come well out-of the distress.

swaz dir dîne friunde râten, dâ bist unverdorben mite.
whatever to-thee thy friends counsel, there art unruined with.

wil du genesen gerne, sô tuo des ich dich bite.
(if)-wilt thou survive gladly, so do what I thee ask.

489 Daz du mich nemest ze wîbe, ich gib dir driu künicrîch.'
That thou me takest as woman, I give to-thee three kingdoms.'

'nein ich, of mîne triuwe' sprach Wolf Dietrîch.
'no I, on my faith' spoke Wolf Dietrich.

'nu lâ mich alhie sterben, ich enruoch waz mir geschiht:
'now let me here die, I not-care what to-me happens:

des übelen tiuvels muoter kumt an mînen arm niht.
the evil devil's mother comes onto my arm not.

490 Daz ich dir versage sô schiere, daz lâ dir niht wesen zorn.
That I thee refuse so soon, that let to-thee not be wrath.

ich hân dich und alle frouwen unz an mînen tôt versworn.
I have thee and all ladies until to my death forsworn.

ob du begünnest zürnen, wie solte ich mich ernern?
if thou begannest be-angry, how should I myself nourish?

næm aber ich alle frouwen, dannoch muoz ich dich verswern.
took however I all ladies, yet must I thee forswear.

491 Der tiuvel ûz der helle kæm wol zer hôchzît.'
The devil out-of the hell would-come well to-the wedding.'

vor freuden wart ir mündel wol drîer spannen wît.
for joys became her little-mouth well three spans wide.

sus trat si ûf hôher: diu frouwe schœner was.
thus stepped she up higher: the lady fairer was.

si slouft sich ûz den schuopen und warf si ûf daz gras.
she slipped herself out-of the scales and threw them onto the grass.

Si lûhte ûz allen wîben, als diu sunne lieht. 492
She shone out-of all women, as the sun bright.

aller megede schœne was gên ir gar enwiht.
of-all maidens beauty was against her wholly naught.

des hungers und des durstes er durch ir schœne vergaz:
the hunger and the thirst he for her beauty forgot:

'ich wæne' sprach der Krieche 'mir geviel nie frouwe baz.
'I think' spoke the Greek 'to-me pleased never lady better.

Mîn muot ist mir gehœhet, du gevellest mir sô wol. 493
My spirit is to-me raised, thou pleasest me so well.

nu erbarme ez gote von himele, daz ich dich niht nemen sol.
now pity it to-God of heaven, that I thee not take shall.

nu sitze nider, frouwe, durch got und trœste mich.'
now sit down, lady, for God and comfort me.'

si sprach mit süezen worten 'sag an, waz irret dich?'
she spoke with sweet words 'say on, what hinders thee?'

'Ich hân gesworn des eide, frouwe wol getân, 494
'I have sworn of-it oaths, lady well made,

daz ich nimmer wîp gewinne, ich lœse ê mîne man.'
that I never woman win, I free before my men.'

'ich sage dir' sprach diu frouwe 'und wilt du gerne leben,
'I tell thee' spoke the lady 'if wilt thou gladly live,

betwingst du dîne bruoder, du solt mir einen geben.
(if)-subduest thou thy brothers, thou shalt to-me one give.

495 Ob ich dich bæte, hêrre, umb dîn eines lîp,
If I thee asked, lord, for thy one body,

des wil mir got niht gunnen, du nimst ein ander wîp.
that will to-me God not grant, thou takest an other woman.

nu lâ mich dînen bruoder füern an des meres grunt:
now let me thy brother lead to the sea's bottom:

ich mache im tegelîche wol tûsent wunder kunt.
I make to-him daily well thousand wonders known.

496 Swaz daz mere bedecket, daz stêt in mîner hant.
Whatever the sea covers, that stands in my hand.

dar zuo ob dem wâge hân ich wol drîzic lant.
there to above the wave have I well thirty lands.

alle schrâwazen wil ich im ze eigen geben
all sea-goblins will I to-him as own give

und elliu merwunder: wie möhte er schôner leben?'
and all sea-wonders: how might he more-fairly live?'

497 'Entriuwen' sprach der Krieche 'ich gib dir den bruoder mîn.
'In-faith' spoke the Greek 'I give to-thee the brother mine.

des maht du ûf mîn triuwe gar âne zwîvel sîn,
of-that mayst thou on my faith wholly without doubt be,

und mac ich in betwingen, vil schœniu frouwe hêr.'
if may I him subdue, very fair lady lordly.'

dô sprach diu küniginne 'ich bite dich nihtes mêr.
then spoke the queen 'I ask thee nothing more.

498 Ich erkenne eine spîse, diu ist nütze unde guot,
I know a food, that is useful and good,

diu dir an dem lîbe und dem herzen sanfte tuot,
which to-thee on the body and to-the heart gently does,

die du vil sanfte füerest mit dir in der taschen dîn.
which thou very gently carriest with thee in the pouch thine.

si müet ouch dich niht sêre, si ist weder spîs noch wîn.
it troubles also thee not sorely, it is neither food nor wine.

Wilt du mirz loben bî triuwe, so belîbest sorgen frî. 499
(If)-wilt thou me-it promise by faith, so remainest of-cares free.

du gip der spîse niemen, wan der getriuwe sî.
thou give of-the food to-no-one, but who faithful be.

ich sage dir von der wurzen, diu hât solhe meisterschaft:
I tell thee of the root, it has such mastery:

swenn du ir geniuzest, sô hâst du eins lewen kraft.
whenever thou of-it partakest, so hast thou a lion's strength.

Dir ist dar ûf dîn houbet * gelegen. 500
To-thee is there on thy head (lacuna) lain.

ir stêt vil in der welte, man solte ir schône phlegen.'
of-it stands much in the world, one should of-it fairly take-care.'

si fuorte in zuo dem boume, dâ si die wurze ersach.
she led him to the tree, where she the root saw.

si lêrt in daz ers erkande, swa ers immer mêre gesach.
she taught him that he-it knew, wherever he-it ever more saw.

Als er der wurze ein wênic genam in sînen munt, 501
When he of-the root a little took into his mouth,

'ôwol mich' sprach der Krieche, 'nu bin ich aber gesunt.
'oh-well me' spoke the Greek, 'now am I again sound.

mir gewirrt an mînem lîbe niht sô grôz als umbe ein hâr:
me troubles in my body nothing so great as by a hair:

al mîne sterke, frouwe, die hân ich wider gar.
all my strength, lady, that have I back wholly.

502 Ir sult mir, frouwe, râten, sît ir sô getriuwe sît,
You shall me, lady, counsel, since you so faithful be,
wie ich wider ze sîner sterke bringe mîn ravît.'
how I back to its strength bring my steed.'
si sprach 'der selben wurzen sult du im ouch geben ein teil:
she spoke 'of-the same root shalt thou to-it also give a part:
sô gewinnt ez sterke widere und wirt frô unde geil.'
so wins it strength back and becomes glad and frisky.'

503 Ez wart zehant versuochet, sîn ros wart wider starc.
It was forthwith tried, his horse became back strong.
in einem frechen muote vant er aber sîn marc.
in a bold spirit found he again his steed.
swie mager ez aber wære, iedoch truoc ez in dan:
however lean it however were, yet carried it him thence:
dô kam ûz sînen sorgen der helfelôse man.
then came out-of his cares the helpless man.

504 Mit zühten sprach der Krieche 'frowe, ist dir iht bekant,
With courtesies spoke the Greek 'lady, is to-thee anything known,
welhen wec man rîtet in der Lamparten lant?'
which way one rides into the Lombards' land?'
'du vindst deheine strâzen, rît niuwan bî dem mer,
'thou findest no roads, ride only by the sea,
du sihest Lamparten schiere: got dir gelücke dâ bescher.
thou seest Lombardy soon: God to-thee luck there grant.

505 Du solt dich, hêrre, hüeten, daz lant ist âne fride:
Thou shalt thyself, lord, guard, the land is without peace:
dâ vant man ê gerihte bî dem halse und bî der wide.
there found one before justice by the neck and by the withy.

du wirdest nimmer irre' sprach diu küniginne rîch.
thou becomest never astray' spoke the queen rich.
nu ist aber ûz den sorgen der Wolf hêr Dieterîch.
now is again out-of the cares the Wolf sir Dietrich.

Wolfdietrich XII

XII · THE ROBBERS IN THE WOOD

Riding by the sea through the wilderness, Wolfdietrich frees a maiden from fifty robbers, kills twenty-four of them, and leaves her with a clearer. He rides on with no one telling him of Ortnit's death, and another clearer feeds him and shows him the road, along which he rides on through the night toward Lake Garda.

Von dannen er dô kêrte durch den grüenen walt, 506
From thence he then turned through the green wood,
als in diu frouwe lêrte, die stîge manicvalt
as him the lady taught, the paths manifold
bî dem mere vil nâhen durch daz wilde lant.
by the sea very near through the wild land.
die stîge und ouch diu strâze im wârn vil unbekant.
the paths and also the road to-him were very unknown.

Des reit er ofte irre, als ich vernomen hân. 507
Of-that rode he often astray, as I heard have.
an dem vierden morgen dô kam der küene man
on the fourth morning then came the bold man
in eine starke wilde: dâ hôrte er sêre klagen;
into a strong wild: there heard he sorely lament;
dâ was ein maget vil schœne mit gewalte hin getragen.
there was a maid very fair with force away carried.

508 Dô wâren in dem lande fünfzic schâchman:
Then were in the land fifty robbers:
die heten in dem walde schaden vil getân.
they had in the wood harm much done.
ze velde und ûf der strâzen roubten si daz lant:
in field and on the road robbed they the land:
daz was den lantliuten mit schaden wol bekant.
that was to-the country-people with harm well known.

509 Dar kom der degen küene al eine zuo geriten.
Thither came the thane bold all alone to ridden.
owê hie von dem recken mit ellen wart gestriten!
alas here by the warrior with valor was fought!
als in die schâchære zuo in sâhen komen,
when him the robbers to them saw come,
ieglîcher sprach besunder, als wir daz hân vernomen.
each-one spoke separately, as we that have heard.

510 'Dort her vert ein recke, der füert ein harnasch an,
'There hither goes a warrior, he wears an armor on,
daz sult ir wizzen alle, daz selbe wil ich hân.'
that shall you know all, that same will I have.'
dô sprach aber der ander 'er dunkt sich nie sô starc,
then spoke again the other 'he seems himself never so strong,
er muoz mir in der wilde lâzen hie sîn marc.'
he must to-me in the wild leave here his steed.'

511 'Sô gunnet mir des helmes' sprach der dritte dô.
'So grant me the helmet' spoke the third then.
dô sprach ez der vierde 'sô bin ich des swertes frô.'
then spoke it the fourth 'so am I of-the sword glad.'

sus wart dâ geteilet swaz er mohte hân.
thus was there shared whatever he might have.

als si ersach der recke, er îlte durch den tan.
when them saw the warrior, he hastened through the forest.

Gegen den schâchæren wart dem degen ger. 512
Against the robbers became the thane eager.

dô wart vil schiere gezucket swert schilde unde sper.
then was very soon drawn swords shields and spears.

die bî dem fiure sâzen und schreiten dâ die meit,
who by the fire sat and shared there the maid,

der sluoc er vier und zweinzic, als uns ist geseit.
of-them struck he four and twenty, as to-us is said.

Die andern im entrunnen, si wurden aber wunt. 513
The others from-him escaped, they became however wounded.

dô wart diu maget ledic an der selben stunt.
then became the maid free in the same hour.

dô lief si gegen dem recken, danken si im began:
then ran she toward the warrior, thank she him began:

si sprach 'got müeze iu lônen, vil wunderküener man.'
she spoke 'God may you reward, very wondrous-bold man.'

Do erbeizte er zuo der erde der küene degen starc. 514
Then dismounted he to the earth the bold thane strong.

er huop die maget edele für sich ûf daz marc.
he raised the maid noble before himself onto the steed.

dô kêrte er durch die wilde, als uns daz ist bekant,
then turned he through the wild, as to-us that is known,

zuo einem riutære, den er dâ nâhen vant.
to a clearer, whom he there near found.

515 Dem bevalch er die frouwen, als wir vernomen hân.
To-him commended he the lady, as we heard have.

dâ mite kêrte dannen der vil küene man.
there with turned thence the very bold man.

dô sagte im niemen mære, im was ouch unbekant
then told him no-one tidings, to-him was also unknown

wie berihtet wære liute unde ouch lant.
how ordered were people and also land.

516 Swâ er ûf der strâzen für die liute reit,
Wherever he on the road before the people rode,

die wâren sô betrüebet daz in niemen freit.
they were so troubled that them no-one gladdened.

dô frâgete er ouch niemen, sus kam er in daz lant:
then asked he also no-one, thus came he into the land:

Ortnîdes tôt des küneges der was im unbekant.
Ortnit's death the king's that was to-him unknown.

517 An einem morgen früeje do gevienc der küene man
On a morning early then took the bold man

einen wec vil engen, der truoc in in den tan.
a way very narrow, that carried him into the forest.

daz kam im ze sorgen: der walt vil dicke was,
that came to-him to cares: the wood very thick was,

wan dâ was vil tiure beidiu velt unt gras.
for there was very dear both field and grass.

518 Des reit er ofte irre als vil dicke noch geschiht.
Of-that rode he often astray as very often still happens.

der edele fürste küene der het der spîse niht.
the noble prince bold he had of-the food nothing.

swâ er die nahtselde het durch daz lant genomen,
wherever he the night-lodging had through the land taken,

dâ wart er ie berâten, als wir daz hân vernomen.
there was he ever provided, as we that have heard.

Dô reit der küene recke allen den tac, 519
Then rode the bold warrior all the day,

daz er in dem walde vil kleiner spîse phlac.
that he in the wood very little food took-care.

dô ez gienc an den âbent, dô vant der küene man
when it went to the evening, then found the bold man

einen riutære, als ich vernomen hân.
a clearer, as I heard have.

Der half im mit der spîse und frâgte den küenen degen, 520
He helped him with the food and asked the bold thane,

wes er in dem walde des tages het gephlegen,
of-what he in the wood of-the day had taken-care,

daz er alsô spâte wære zuo im komen.
that he so late were to him come.

alrêrst sagt er im mære, als wir daz hân vernomen.
first-of-all told he to-him tidings, as we that have heard.

Er sprach 'ich bin von Kriechen komen in ditze lant, 521
He spoke 'I am from Greece come into this land,

ich wolte ouch gegen Garte. nu tuo mir daz bekant
I would also toward Garda. now make to-me that known

wâ ich die rehten strâze rît von dir aldar.'
where I the right road ride from thee thither.'

er sprach 'vil lieber hêrre, der bewîse ich iuch vil gar.'
he spoke 'very dear lord, to-it guide I you very wholly.'

522 Der riuter der gienc danne mit im in den tan.
The clearer he went then with him into the forest.

er wiste in ûf ein strâze, den ûz erwelten man.
he showed him onto a road, the out chosen man.

dô was ez worden vinster. daz er niht dâ beleip,
then was it become dark. that he not there remained,

des nimt mich immer wunder, waz in von danne treip.
of-that takes me ever wonder, what him from thence drove.

523 Doch kêrte er durch die wilde durch daz gebirge dan.
Yet turned he through the wild through the mountains thence.

gegen dem Gartsêwe gâhen er began.
toward the Garda-lake hasten he began.

jâ reit er in dem walde des nahts vil kumberlîch.
yea rode he in the wood in-the night very troublesomely.

nu ist aber ûz einen sorgen der Wolf hêr Dieterîch.
now is again out-of a care the Wolf sir Dietrich.

Wolfdietrich XIII

XIII · LIEBGART'S LAMENT

At Garda he hears Queen Liebgart lamenting Ortnit, who had praised Wolfdietrich as his only equal. Taking him for her husband, she pours out her poverty and the suit of Count Herman. Wolfdietrich tells her he is a driven-out stranger, vows to avenge her on the worms, and rides off toward the Adige without giving his name.

Den Gartsê hôrte er diezen, vinster was diu naht. 524
The Garda-lake heard he roar, dark was the night.

von den wahtæren hôrte er einen braht
from the watchmen heard he a noise

unde ein küniginne vil jâmerlîchen klagen:
and a queen very woefully lament:

dar begunde er gâhen, ê dan ez wolte tagen.
thither began he hasten, before than it would dawn.

Do erbeizte er von dem rosse und wiste ez durch den tan. 525
Then dismounted he from the horse and led it through the forest.

aber klagen sêre hôrte der küene man.
again lament sorely heard the bold man.

er gedâht 'bist du gevangen, sô hilfet dir mîn lîp.'
he thought 'art thou captive, so helps thee my body.'

jâ klagete Ortnîden sîn vil schœnez wîp.
yea lamented Ortnit his very fair woman.

Dô was im unkunde diu burc und ouch daz lant. 526
Then was to-him unknown the castle and also the land.

dô kam der edle recke ze Garte für gerant.
then came the noble warrior at Garda before running.

sîn ros daz bant er balde, als wir hœren sagen.
his horse that bound he quickly, as we hear tell.

er huop sich zuo der mûre und hôrt die frouwen klagen.
he raised himself to the wall and heard the lady lament.

527 Si klagete jâmerlîche, ir klage diu was grôz.
She lamented woefully, her lament it was great.

'nu bin ich hie ze Garte vil maneger freuden blôz.
'now am I here at Garda of-very many-a joy bare.

himelischer keiser, waz het ich dir getân,
heavenly emperor, what had I to-thee done,

daz du mich hâst gescheiden von mînem lieben man?
that thou me hast parted from my dear husband?

528 Der gewan mich mit nœten verre in der heiden lant.
He won me with distresses far in the heathens' land.

alle mîne mâge sint mir vil unbekant.
all my kinsmen are to-me very unknown.

ich was ein heideninne und er ein kristenman,
I was a heathen-woman and he a Christian-man,

wan ich durch sînen willen den reinen touf gewan.
for I for his sake the pure baptism got.

529 Nu muoz ich mich sîn ânen, daz wil ich klagen Crist,
Now must I myself of-him deprive, that will I lament to-Christ,

der ob aller welte vil gar gewaltec ist.'
who over all world very wholly mighty is.'

hie klaget vil klagelîchen diu küniginne rîch:
here laments very lamentably the queen rich:

daz hôrte bî der mûre Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
that heard by the wall Wolf sir Dietrich.

‘Sît ich verloren habe mînen lieben man, 530
‘Since I lost have my dear husband,

sô wil ich mich ervallen, wan mir got leides gan.’
so will I myself fall-to-death, for to-me God sorrow grants.’

hie wart mit sînem schilte Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
here was with his shield Wolf sir Dietrich.

do behabete ein juncfrouwe die küniginne rîch.
then held a young-lady the queen rich.

Diu was tougenlîche mit ir gegangen dar. 531
She was secretly with her gone thither.

si nam der küniginne mit ganzen triuwen war.
she took of-the queen with whole faith heed.

‘klagt mæziclîchen, frouwe, iuwern lieben man:
‘lament moderately, lady, your dear husband:

jâ lebt noch got der rîche, der iuch wol ergetzen kan.’
yea lives still God the rich, who you well requite can.’

‘Wie möhte ich werden ergetzet des lieben hêrren mîn? 532
‘How might I become requited for-the dear lord mine?

ich wæn daz in der welte iht sô biderbe müge sîn.
I think that in the world anything so worthy may be.

er jach daz in der welte indert wære sîn gelîch,
he avowed that in the world anywhere were his like,

wan einer von Salnecke, heizt Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
but one of Salneck, is-called Wolf sir Dietrich.

Der ist dâ ze Kriechen gar ein gewaltic man. 533
He is there in Greece wholly a mighty man.

im dient gewalticlîchen gevilde und manic tan.
to-him serve mightily fields and many-a forest.

dô Ortnît mîn hêrre ze jungest von mir reit,
when Ortnit my lord at last from me rode,
waz er guoter mære mir von dem recken seit!'
what he of-good tidings to-me of the warrior told!'

534 Alrêrst sprach bî der mûre Wolf hêr Dietrîch
First-of-all spoke by the wall Wolf sir Dietrich
'klaget mæziclîche, küniginne rîch.'
'lament moderately, queen rich.'
do erschamte sich diu werde und wolte danne gân.
then was-ashamed herself the worthy-one and would thence go.
durch aller frouwen güete bat er si stille stân.
for all ladies' goodness bade he her still stand.

535 'Ir sult mich lâzen hœren umb wen ir jâmer traget.
'You shall me let hear about whom you sorrow bear.
wer was der ellensrîche, den ir sô sêre klaget?'
who was the valor-rich-one, whom you so sorely lament?'
si gedâhte, ez wære ir hêrre, Ortnît ir lieber man,
she thought, it were her lord, Ortnit her dear husband,
und hete durch versuochen dise frâge dâ getân.
and had for testing this question there done.

536 Trahene von ir ougen die vielen hin ze tal.
Tears from her eyes they fell thither to dale.
die nazten im die hende vor dem wîten sal.
they wetted to-him the hands before the wide hall.
diu naht diu was niht vinster, si kôs den küenen degen:
the night it was not dark, she saw the bold thane:
dô het diu küniginne sich freuden gar bewegen.
then had the queen herself of-joys wholly renounced.

‘Bist duz, mîn lieber hêrre?’ sprach daz reine wîp. 537
‘Art thou-it, my dear lord?’ spoke the pure woman.

‘waz tet mîn armer dienest wider dînen lîp,
‘what did my poor service against thy body,

daz du mich sô versuochest? nu melde dich enzît,
that thou me so testest? now betray thyself in-time,

und scheide mich von jâmer, hôher künec Ortnît.
and part me from sorrow, high king Ortnit.

Nu muotet mîn ze wîbe der grâve Herman, 538
Now desires me as woman the count Herman,

der bî dînen zîten ie dir was undertân.
who in thy times ever to-thee was subject.

gedenke, künic hêre, wie stât dir daz an,
think, king lordly, how stands to-thee that on,

und scheide mich von nœten, vil tugentlîcher man.
and part me from distresses, very virtuous man.

Nu muoz ich tegelîchen lîden vil grôze nôt, 539
Now must I daily suffer very great distress,

daz mir nu endicliche vil lieber wære der tôt.
that to-me now finally very dearer were the death.

jâ muotet mir ze wîbe, der undr Ortnîden saz:
yea desires me as woman, who under Ortnit sat:

rîcher got von himele, dir sî geklaget daz.
rich God of heaven, to-thee be lamented that.

Sît Ortnît mîn hêrre ze jungest von mir schiet, 540
Since Ortnit my lord at last from me parted,

sît het ich leider niemen, der ihtes mich beriet.
since had I alas no-one, who anything me provided.

des ist mir sorge und jâmer ze allen zîten kunt.
of-that is to-me care and sorrow at all times known.

man gît mir mînes geldes niuwan kupfers hundert pfunt.
one gives me of-my income only of-copper hundred pounds.

541 Dâ muoz ich mich zem jâre mit nœten mit betragen.
There must I myself for-the year with distresses with maintain.

swaz ich und mîne frouwen mit handen mac bejagen,
whatever I and my ladies with hands may win,

daz ist mîn gelt zem jâre, des ich mich neren muoz.
that is my income for-the year, of-which I myself nourish must.

der süeze got von himele, der tuo mir sîn schiere buoz.
the sweet God of heaven, he do to-me of-it soon amends.

542 Nu gedenke, künic hêre, do ich êrste bî dir lac,
Now think, king lordly, when I first by thee lay,

wie rehte tugentlîche dîn küener lîp mîn phlac!
how right virtuously thy bold body of-me took-care!

ich leist durch dînen willen gar eine herte vart:
I performed for thy sake wholly a hard journey:

dar an solt du gedenken, vil edeliu fürsten art.'
there on shalt thou think, very noble princes' kind.'

543 'Ich binz niht iuwer hêrre, ich bin ein vertribner man,
'I am-it not your lord, I am a driven-out man,

der weder lant noch liute noch erbe nie gewan.
who neither land nor people nor inheritance ever won.

gar âne mîne schulde sô bin ich vertriben:
wholly without my guilts so am I driven-out:

mir ist sicherlîchen niht wan schilt und sper beliben.
to-me is surely nothing but shield and spear remained.

Dar zuo mîn ros gesatelt, des muoz ich mich began. 544
There to my horse saddled, with-that must I myself maintain.

ich bin in disem lande gar ein ellender man.
I am in this land wholly a forsaken man.

ich klaget iu gerne, frouwe, mîne grôze nôt:
I would-lament to-you gladly, lady, my great distress:

nu ist iuwer manicvelter umb des edelen hêrren tôt.'
now is yours more-manifold about the noble lord's death.'

'Waz möht ir, ellensrîcher, iurs leides mir geklagen? 545
'What might you, valor-rich-one, of-your sorrow to-me lament?

man hât in manegen landen von mir einen vil ze sagen.
one has in many lands of me a much to say.

man saget in disem lande mînes hêrren tôt:
one tells in this land my lord's death:

des lîde ich hie ze Garte jâmer und grôze nôt.'
of-that suffer I here at Garda sorrow and great distress.'

'Nu sagt mir, küniginne, wie mac ez umbe in stân?' 546
'Now tell me, queen, how may it about him stand?'

'ich sante ûz disem hûse ein wol begarten man,
'I sent out-of this house a well armed man,

der wolte an den wurmen rechen sînen zorn:
he would on the worms avenge his wrath:

dâ von hân ich den lieben hêrren mîn verlorn.'
there from have I the dear lord mine lost.'

Er sprach 'durch âventiure bin ich her komen: 547
He spoke 'for adventure am I hither come:

iuwer klage, frouwe, hân ich wol vernomen:
your lament, lady, have I well heard:

ichn reche iuch an den wurmen, si müezen mich nâch im tragen.
unless-I avenge you on the worms, they must me after him carry.

mich erbarmet harte sêre sus getânez klagen.'
me pities very sorely such made lamenting.'

548 'Daz wil ich widerrâten' sprach frou Liebegart.
'That will I advise-against' spoke lady Liebgart.

'zwelf manne sterke het Ortnît mîn zart:
'twelve men's strength had Ortnit my darling:

den hât der würme einer in den stein getragen.
him has of-the worms one into the stone carried.

ir muget wol hie belîben, lât mich in eine klagen.
you may well here remain, let me him alone lament.

549 Wâ mite het ich verdienet' sprach daz reine wîp
Where with had I deserved' spoke the pure woman

'daz ir durch mînen willen solt wâgen iuwern lîp?
'that you for my sake shall venture your body?

daz geverte ist nâch den würmen vil swinde in den tan:
the journey is after the worms very perilous into the forest:

ich wil iu, degen, râten daz ir hie sult bestân.'
I will you, thane, counsel that you here shall stay.'

550 Dô sprach der riter edele 'des mac niht ergân.
Then spoke the knight noble 'that may not befall.

ich bestân si endiclîchen, vind ich si in dem tan.
I attack them finally, (if)-find I them in the forest.

sît si sich mordes vlîzent, si lâzent mir ir lîp.
since they themselves to-murder apply, they leave to-me their life.

der mære sult ir bîten, vil tugentrîchez wîp.'
of-the tidings shall you wait, very virtue-rich woman.'

Urloup gerte er dannen, si bat in stille stân. 551
Leave desired he thence, she bade him still stand.

'saget mir, riter edele, wie ist iuwer name getân?
'tell me, knight noble, how is your name made?

durch iuwer tugende willen nennt iuch, küener man,
for your virtue's sake name yourself, bold man,

deich got umb iuwer êre dest baz geflêgen kan.'
that-I God for your honor the better beseech can.'

Er sprach 'küniginne, des enmac niht wesen. 552
He spoke 'queen, that may not be.

ich muoz ê dâ ze walde sterben oder genesen.'
I must before there in-the wood die or survive.'

er gie ze sînem rosse, des habe er immer danc:
he went to his horse, for-that have he ever thanks:

gewâpent âne stegreif er in den satel spranc.
armed without stirrup he into the saddle sprang.

Sêre weinende sprach frou Liebgart 553
Sorely weeping spoke lady Liebgart

'owê mînes hêrren, ditz gelîchet sîner vart!
'alas for-my lord, this resembles his journey!

wilt du mich baz versuochen?' sprach aber daz reine wîp.
wilt thou me better test?' spoke again the pure woman.

'got durch sîne güete behalte dînen lîp!'
'God for his goodness keep thy body!'

Ein puneiz ûf dem rosse tet er ûf dem graben 554
A charge on the horse made he on the moat

harte baldeclîche, als wirz vernomen haben.
very boldly, as we-it heard have.

er neic der küniginne: von danne was im gâch.
he bowed to-the queen: from thence was to-him hasty.

im tet diu tugentrîche vil manegen segen nâch.
to-him made the virtue-rich-one very many-a blessing after.

555 Dô kêrte er von der bürge durch den vil tiefen tan
Then turned he from the castle through the very deep forest

her nider gên der Etsche, dâ vant der küene man
hither down toward the Adige, there found the bold man

die rehten lantstrâzen; die reit der helt sâ:
the right highways; them rode the hero at-once:

Wolf Dietrîchs âventiure ist aber einiu dâ.
Wolf Dietrich's adventure is again one there.

Wolfdietrich XIV

XIV · THE COUNTESS IN THE WOOD

At Trient the people beg him to slay the worm that killed Ortnit. In the forest he finds a dead count and his widow, newly delivered of a son; he carries her and the child to a settler, has the boy named Hugdietrich after his own father, covers the count with leaves, and rides after the worm.

556 Ze berge bî der Etsche gâhen er began
To hill by the Adige hasten he began

harte baldiclichen gegen Triente dan.
very boldly toward Trient thence.

dâ sâzen arzliute an der selben stunt:
there sat physicians at the same hour:

dô tâten im die armen ir grôzen jâmer kunt.
then made to-him the poor-ones their great sorrow known.

‘Got willekomen, hêrre, her in ditze lant, 557
‘God welcome, lord, hither into this land,
ob iuch got von himele ze helfe uns hât gesant.
if you God of heaven to help us has sent.
uns hât ein wurm wilder ze leide vil getân:
to-us has a worm wild to sorrow much done:
er hât hie verderbet wol fünf hundert man.
he has here ruined well five hundred men.

Daz sult ir helfen rihten, vil hôch geborner helt. 558
That shall you help right, very high born hero.
ze vogte und ouch ze hêrren uns allen sît erwelt.
as protector and also as lord by-us all be chosen.
er hât uns verderbet den künic Ortnît:
he has for-us ruined the king Ortnit:
der was ein kint der jâre, sîn lop was worden wît.’
he was a child of-the years, his praise was become wide.’

Ez wurden sicherlîchen schilte dar getragen 559
There were surely shields thither carried
mit schatze für den recken, als wir hôrten sagen.
with treasure before the warrior, as we heard tell.
‘iur guot sult ir behalten’ sprach der werde degen:
‘your goods shall you keep’ spoke the worthy thane:
‘ich hân durch gotes willen der reise mich bewegen.’
‘I have for God’s sake of-the journey myself resolved.’

Do beleip der ritter edele unz an den dritten tac. 560
Then remained the knight noble until to the third day.
sîn und sînes rosses vil güetlich man dâ phlac.
of-him and of-his horse very kindly one there took-care.

si dienten im mit vlîze, daz was michel reht:
they served him with diligence, that was great right:

daz tet mit guotem willen manec ritter unde kneht.
that did with good will many-a knight and servant.

561 Eins tages gên der nône (ze ruowe was der mân)
One day toward the nones (at rest was the moon)

dô begunde er frâgen gên dem wilden tan.
then began he ask toward the wild forest.

er bat daz si im tæten des wurmes vart bekant:
he bade that they to-him made the worm's track known:

dô zeigten se im bî dem Mersê zuo der steines want.
then showed they to-him by the Mersee to the rock's wall.

562 Urloup nam dô ze Triende Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
Leave took then at Trient Wolf sir Dietrich.

dô gâhte über die heide, der helt vil lobelîch.
then hastened over the heath, the hero very praiseworthy.

er kêrte ûf eine strâze in den wilden tan:
he turned onto a road into the wild forest:

dâ vant er sicherlîchen einen tôten man.
there found he surely a dead man.

563 Der was dem wurme enpfallen in der selben stunt.
He was from-the worm fallen in the same hour.

er beizte zuo der erde, grôz jâmer wart im kunt.
he dismounted to the earth, great sorrow became to-him known.

er sprach 'owê, recke, dîn kumber ist mir leit.
he spoke 'alas, warrior, thy trouble is to-me loath.

du maht wol edele wesen: sîdîn sint dîniu kleit.
thou mayst well noble be: silken are thy clothes.

Du maht sicherlîchen wol fürsten künne sîn.' 564
Thou mayst surely well of-princes' kin be.'

er vant an sîner hende zwei rîchiu vingerlîn.
he found on his hand two rich little-rings.

stucke von gewande lâgen umbe den kreiz:
pieces of clothing lay around the circle:

bluotic was diu strâze, in begôz ein angestsweiz.
bloody was the road, him drenched a fear-sweat.

Eines wîbes stimme die hôrte er sêre klagen: 565
A woman's voice it heard he sorely lament:

diu was in den zîten mit sorgen umbetragen.
she was in the times with cares surrounded.

diu was ein grævinne: wie kunde ir leider wesen?
she was a countess: how could to-her worse be?

eines degenkindes diu frouwe was genesen.
of-a thane-child the lady was delivered.

Der vor im lac tôter, der was gewesen ir man. 566
Who before him lay dead, he was been her husband.

si hete sich verloufen von den liuten in den tan.
she had herself strayed from the people into the forest.

dar îlte baldiclîchen der degen ûz erkant.
thither hastened boldly the thane out renowned.

si bôt ûz unkreften im ir vil wîzen hant.
she offered out-of weakness to-him her very white hand.

Ir was von unkreften ir sprâche gar gelegen. 567
To-her was from weakness her speech wholly lain.

daz begunde erbarmen den ûz erwelten degen.
that began pity the out chosen thane.

dar nâch in kurzer wîle diu frouwe sich versan:
there after in short while the lady herself recovered:

si begunde zehant frâgen den ritter wol getân.
she began forthwith ask the knight well made.

568 Dô sprach gezogenlîche der fürste vil stolz
Then spoke courteously the prince very proud

'saget mir, frouwe edele, wer brâhte iuch in daz holz?'
'tell me, lady noble, who brought you into the wood?'

'hêrre, mir nam ein der würme den aller liebsten man,
'lord, from-me took one of-the worms the very dearest husband,

den in diser welte dehein frouwe ie gewan.
whom in this world any lady ever got.

569 In einem boumgarten hiut morgen daz geschach.
In an orchard this morning that happened.

dâ von sicherlîchen mîn freude aldâ zerbrach:
there from surely my joy there broke:

er was milte des guotes und gar ein werder man.
he was bountiful of-the goods and wholly a worthy man.

ich stal mich vor den liuten dâ her in disen tan.
I stole myself from the people there hither into this forest.

570 Freude ist mir gezucket, nu hân ich funden nôt'
Joy is from-me snatched, now have I found distress'

sprach diu tugentrîche, 'nu nâhet mir der tôt.'
spoke the virtue-rich-one, 'now nears to-me the death.'

dô sprach der ritter edele 'frowe, ir mugt wol genesen.
then spoke the knight noble 'lady, you may well survive.

ob sîn got geruochet, ich sol iuwer amme wesen.'
if of-it God deigns, I shall your nurse be.'

Dô sprach ûz unkreften diu frouwe lobesam 571
Then spoke out-of weakness the lady praiseworthy

'owê, ritter edele, dâ habe ich gên iu scham.'
'alas, knight noble, there have I toward you shame.'

'schame ist hie zergangen' sprach Wolf hêr Dietrîch,
'shame is here passed' spoke Wolf sir Dietrich,

'jâ hilfe ich iu ûz sorgen, ob ich bin sinnerîch.'
'yea help I you out-of cares, if I am wise.'

Von der steinwende gâhen er began. 572
From the rock-wall hasten he began.

in sînem helme balde wazzer brâhte er dan.
in his helmet quickly water brought he thence.

hie labte sich diu frouwe, daz tuon ich iu bekant:
here refreshed herself the lady, that make I to-you known:

ir half ûz unkreften dâ des fürsten hant.
her helped out-of weakness there the prince's hand.

Von harnesch wart er geblôzet, sîn cursit von im gezogen. 573
Of armor was he bared, his surcoat from him drawn.

si was von des recken helfe unbetrogen.
she was by the warrior's help undeceived.

mit kinde mitalle truoc er si al zehant
with child altogether carried he her all forthwith

zuo einem riutære, den er nâhen bî im vant.
to a clearer, whom he near by him found.

'Phlic mir der frouwen' sprach Wolf hêr Dietrîch 574
'Take-care for-me of-the lady' spoke Wolf sir Dietrich

'mit vil grôzen êren: ich tuon dich guotes rîch.'
'with very great honors: I make thee of-goods rich.'

dô sprach der wirt zem gaste ‘allez daz ich hân,
then spoke the host to-the guest ‘all that I have,

daz si mîner frouwen mit dienste undertân.’
that be to-my lady with service subject.’

575 Dô sprach zem riutære der vil küene man
Then spoke to-the clearer the very bold man

‘wirt, durch dîne triuwe sî dir kunt getân:
‘host, for thy faith be to-thee known made:

du solt daz kindel toufen, tuo sô tugentlîch,
thou shalt the little-child baptize, do so virtuously,

nenn ez nâch mînem vater Huge Dietrîch.’
name it after my father Hug Dietrich.’

576 Ir wart von dem wirte mit êren wol gephlegen.
Of-her was by the host with honors well taken-care.

urloup nam von in beiden dô der werde degen.
leave took from them both then the worthy thane.

wider zuo dem tôten gâhte er al zehant.
back to the dead-one hastened he all forthwith.

sîn ros der edele ritter dannoch gebunden vant.
his horse the noble knight still bound found.

577 Er sprach ‘owê recke, nu riuwet mich dîn leben.
He spoke ‘alas warrior, now rues me thy life.

got ruoche dîner sêle ein ringe wîze geben.’
God deign to-thy soul a light punishment give.’

sus klagete er jâmerlîche des edelen grâven lîp:
thus lamented he woefully the noble count’s body:

er sprach ‘ich vant in nœten hiut dîn schœnez wîp.’
he spoke ‘I found in distresses today thy fair woman.’

Hie brach er über den tôten beidiu loup unt gras. 578
Here broke he over the dead both leaves and grass.

dô gâhte er nâch dem wurme, dem er unwæge was.
then hastened he after the worm, to-whom he hostile was.

diu naht begreif mit krefte den ûz erwelten degen:
the night seized with strength the out chosen thane:

er het sicherlîchen slâfes sich bewegen.
he had surely of-sleep himself renounced.

Dâ mite der degen küene reit et al die naht. 579
There with the thane bold rode just all the night.

er hôrte in dem walde von vogele süezen braht.
he heard in the wood from birds sweet sound.

diu naht was gar vinster, des reit er kumberlîch:
the night was wholly dark, of-that rode he troublesomely:

nu ist aber in sorgen Wolf hêr Dieterîch.
now is again in cares Wolf sir Dietrich.

Wolfdietrich XV

XV · THE HORSE'S GUARD

Wolfdietrich falls asleep on his shield. A dwarf cries out to wake him as the worm comes, but he sleeps on, and his horse breaks its bridle and drives the worm off, wounded nearly to death itself. Waking, he sees the worm's tracks and the horse's blood, thanks God and the horse, prays to live to free his eleven men, and rides after the worm.

580 Er reit durch ein gevelle gegen einer steinwant:
He rode through a fallen-wood toward a rock-wall:

in luste sêre slâfens, daz tuon ich iu bekant.
him pleased sorely of-sleeping, that make I to-you known.

nu im der tac erlûhte, als wir nu haben vernomen,
now to-him the day shone, as we now have heard,

dô was der degen küene ûf eine heiden komen.
then was the thane bold onto a heath come.

581 Da erbeizte er von dem rosse nider ûf daz lant,
There dismounted he from the horse down onto the land,

unde leit sich slâfen in sînes schildes rant.
and laid himself to-sleep in his shield's rim.

dâ slief der degen küene wol ûf den liehten tac.
there slept the thane bold well onto the bright day.

der wurm gienc von dem loche, da er aber der weide phlac.
the worm went from the hole, where he again of-the pasture took-care.

Durch sîne snabelweide gie er von dem neste dan. 582
For his beak-pasture went he from the nest thence.

ein getwerc von dem steine rüefen dô began
a dwarf from the stone call then began

'wachâ, degen mære, jâ ist ez an der zît:
'wake, thane famous, yea is it at the time:

du manest mich grôzer leide umb den künic Ortnît.
thou remindest me of-great sorrows about the king Ortnit.

Der kam durch die würme dâ her in disen tan. 583
He came for the worms there hither into this forest.

hie verlôs ouch sîn leben der ûzerwelte man.
here lost also his life the out-chosen man.

Ortnît der vil edele verlôs hie sînen lîp:
Ortnit the very noble lost here his body:

den weinet noch ze Garte Liebgart sîn schœnez wîp.'
him weeps still at Garda Liebgart his fair woman.'

Dannoch slief underm schilte der wunderküene man. 584
Still slept under-the shield the wondrous-bold man.

der wurm gâhte balde zuo im durch den tan.
the worm hastened quickly to him through the forest.

dannoch slief vil sêre diu edele fürsten art.
still slept very sorely the noble princes' kind.

daz getwerc begund sich roufen bî dem hâre unt bart.
the dwarf began himself tear by the hair and beard.

'Owê, wilt du niht wachen, wunderküene man, 585
'Alas, wilt thou not wake, wondrous-bold man,

sô lebt niemen in der welte der die würme türre bestân.
so lives no-one in the world who the worms dare attack.

owê, wilt du niht wachen, wer sol uns fride geben?
alas, wilt thou not wake, who shall us peace give?
od wer richt nu die armen, verliusest du daz leben?'
or who judges now the poor, (if)-losest thou the life?'

586 Dannoch slief ûf dem schilde der küene degen stolz.
Still slept on the shield the bold thane proud.
der wurm gâhte balde zuo im durch daz holz.
the worm hastened quickly to him through the wood.
daz ros daz brach den zoum und lief den wurm an:
the horse it broke the bridle and ran the worm at:
ez treip in von dem hêrren mit strîte in den tan.
it drove him from the lord with battle into the forest.

587 Swanne ez den wurm wilden getreip verre dan,
Whenever it the worm wild drove far thence,
sô lief ez zuo dem hêrren, als ich vernomen hân,
so ran it to the lord, as I heard have,
und wolte in gerne wecken, daz tuon ich iu bekant:
and would him gladly wake, that make I to-you known:
ez sluoc in mit dem fuoze ûf des schildes rant.
it struck him with the foot on the shield's rim.

588 Ez leit von dem wurme vil ungefüege nôt:
It suffered from the worm very monstrous distress:
daz sult ir gelouben: vil nâch was im der tôt.
that shall you believe: very near was to-it the death.
er begunde im zerren sîn vil schœnez vel:
he began to-it tear its very fair hide:
doch was ez in den zîten vil küene unde snel.
yet was it in the times very bold and swift.

Ez het den wurm grôzen verre dan getriben. 589
It had the worm great far thence driven.

nu was der degen küene al eine hie beliben:
now was the thane bold all alone here remained:

der was nu erwachet; hœrt wie er dô sprach,
he was now awakened; hear how he then spoke,

dô er sîn ros daz guote naz von bluote sach.
when he his horse the good wet from blood saw.

'Wê deich niht hân gewachet' sprach der küene man, 590
'Woe that-I not have waked' spoke the bold man,

'jâ het ich dir geholfen, als du mir hâst getân.
'yea had I thee helped, as thou me hast done.

ich sihez an dînem sweize, du bist gewesen in nôt:
I see-it on thy sweat, thou art been in distress:

wan got und dîn helfe wir wæren bêdiu tôt.
but-for God and thy help we were both dead.

Nu hân ich dîner triuwe und ouch der helfe dîn 591
Now have I of-thy faith and also of-the help thine

genozzen daz ich hiute hân daz leben mîn.
profited that I today have the life mine.

ich sihez an dîner gebære, der wurm ist hie gewesen.
I see-it in thy bearing, the worm is here been.

nu hât uns got geholfen, daz wir sîn genesen.'
now has us God helped, that we are survived.'

Er riht sich von der erde, als ich vernomen hân. 592
He raised himself from the earth, as I heard have.

den zoum den machte er balde und legt in dem rosse an.
the bridle it made he quickly and laid it to-the horse on.

er maz des wurmes füeze, vil eislich was sîn ganc:
he measured the worm's feet, very terrible was his gait:

die klâ vor dem riste wârn dûmellen lanc.
the claws before the instep were thumb-ells long.

593 Dô sprach der ritter edele 'sich, waz sol ditze wesen?
Then spoke the knight noble 'see, what shall this be?

der tiuvel ûz der helle, wer kund dar vor genesen?
the devil out-of the hell, who could there before survive?

wære ich alsô tôte beliben in diseme tan,
were I so dead remained in this forest,

wer hete danne erlœset mîn einlif dienstman?
who had then freed my eleven ministerials?

594 Die liez ich dâ ze Kriechen in vil grôzer nôt.
Them left I there in Greece in very great distress.

si ringent tegelîchen niuwan umbe den tôt.
they wrestle daily only about the death.

hêrre got von himele, lâ mich die zît geleben,
lord God of heaven, let me the time live,

daz ich in trôst mit freuden noch einest müeze geben!'
that I to-them comfort with joys yet once may give!'

595 Dô gurte er sînem rosse vil snelliclichen baz.
Then girthed he his horse very swiftly better.

in einem grimmen muote er dar ûf gesaz.
in a grim spirit he there on sat.

dô kêrte nâch dem wurme der degen lobelîch:
then turned after the worm the thane praiseworthy:

nu wil in die sorgen Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
now will into the cares Wolf sir Dietrich.

Wolfdietrich XVI

XVI · THE WORM'S DEN

At the worm's den in the rock wall Wolfdietrich finds five young worms; the old one is out after food, so he turns back toward the wood after it. There the worm is fighting a lion, the beast he bears on his shield, and he vows to help it. His spear breaks on the worm and his sword shatters in three. He calls on Christ for help, and for his eleven men should he die; here the poem breaks off.

Dô kêrte er gegen der wilde durch daz gebirge dan 596
Then turned he toward the wild through the mountains thence

gên der steinwende, als ich vernomen hân.
toward the rock-wall, as I heard have.

da erbeizte der ritter edele nider ûf daz lant.
there dismounted the knight noble down onto the land.

sîn ros er harte snelle zuo einem boume bant.
his horse he very swiftly to a tree bound.

Dô gienc er gên dem berge, der vil küene degen. 597
Then went he toward the mountain, the very bold thane.

er het vil sicherlîchen strîtes sich bewegen.
he had very surely of-battle himself resolved.

dô er kam zuo dem loche, als ir wol habt vernomen,
when he came to the hole, as you well have heard,

in einem grimmen muote was der helt dar komen.
in a grim spirit was the hero thither come.

'Hêr wirt, sît ir hie heime?' sprach der küene man, 598
'Sir host, are you here at-home?' spoke the bold man,

'jâ wellent iuch die geste mit strîte hie bestân.
'yea will you the guests with battle here attack.

nu wert iuch manlichen' sprach der küene degen.
now defend yourself manfully' spoke the bold thane.
'ir geltet mir die tôten, die vor iu sint gelegen.'
'you repay me the dead, who before you are lain.'

599 Der jungen wâren fünviu, diu grinen den ritter an.
Of-the young were five, they snarled the knight at.
der alt was niht dâ heime, der was nâch spîse gegân.
the old-one was not there at-home, he was after food gone.
'waz solte ich an iu welfern êren hie begân?
'what should I on you whelps of-honors here commit?
jâ wil ich nâch dem alten, der hât uns leide vil getân.'
yea will I after the old-one, he has to-us sorrow much done.'

600 Dô kêrte er von den jungen ûz der steines want
Then turned he from the young out-of the rock's wall
wider gên dem walde: dô hôrte er zehant
back toward the wood: then heard he forthwith
vor im in dem walde ein freislîchen sturm,
before him in the wood a terrible assault,
den vaht ein lewe wilder, daz ander was der wurm.
it fought a lion wild, the other was the worm.

601 Dô fuorte er an dem schilde den lewen von golde rôt.
Then bore he on the shield the lion of gold red.
dô sach er dort den wilden stân in grôzer nôt.
then saw he there the wild-one stand in great distress.
'mac ich dir niht gehelfen, ich wil dir widersagen,
'(if)-may I thee not help, I will thee renounce,
deich dich nie mêre gemâlet an mînem schilte welle tragen.'
that-I thee never more painted on my shield will carry.'

Daz sper ze sîner hende gevienc der küene man. 602
The spear into his hand caught the bold man.
mit einer starken tjoste rant er den wurm an.
with a strong joust ran he the worm at.
daz sper ze manegen stücken vor sîner hende brast:
the spear to many pieces before his hand burst:
er kund sîn niht gewinnen: daz betûrte sêre den gast.
he could him not win: that grieved sorely the guest.

Do erbeizte der ritter edele nider ûf daz lant. 603
Then dismounted the knight noble down onto the land.
sîn ros er harte balde zuo einem boume gebant.
his horse he very quickly to a tree bound.
daz swert ze beiden handen sluoc er ûf den wurm.
the sword with both hands struck he on the worm.
er kund sîn niht gewinnen: der gast huop den sturm.
he could him not win: the guest raised the assault.

Daz swert ze drîen stücken als ein aphel hin gespranc. 604
The sword in three pieces as an apple away sprang.
dô het der ritter edele vil manigen gedanc.
then had the knight noble very many-a thought.
ûf racte er sîne hende 'vil genædiger got,
up stretched he his hands 'very gracious God,
du maht mir wol gehelfen, ich stên hie in grôzer nôt.
thou mayst me well help, I stand here in great distress.

Hilf, got von himele, genædiclîcher Crist, 605
Help, God of heaven, gracious Christ,
hilf an disen zîten, sît du gewaltic bist,
help at these times, since thou mighty art,

und ist daz ich tôter belîbe in diseme tan,
and (if)-is that I dead remain in this forest,

so berât doch dâ zen Kriechen mîn einlif dienstman.
so provide yet there in-the Greeks my eleven ministerials.

606 Die sint ouch verdorben, verliuse ich hie mîn leben.
They are also ruined, (if)-lose I here my life.

süezer Crist von himele, ich hân mich dir ergeben.
sweet Christ of heaven, I have myself to-thee given.

ez stêt an disen zîten umb mich vil kumberlîch.'
it stands at these times about me very troublesomely.'

alrêrste ist in nœten Wolf hêr Dietrîch.
first-of-all is in distresses Wolf sir Dietrich.